

**The government of cattel. Divided into three books. The first, treating of oxen, kine and calves: and how to use bulls, and other cattel, to the yoke or fell. The second, discoursing of the government of horses; with approved medicines against most diseases. The third, discoursing the order of sheep, goats, hogs, and dogs; with true remedies to help the infirmities that befall any of them ... Also, perfect instructions for taking of moals; and likewise for the monthly husbanding of grounds / Gathered by Leonard Mascall.**

### **Contributors**

Mascall, Leonard, -1589

### **Publication/Creation**

London : Printed by William Gilbertson, and John Stafford ..., 1662.

### **Persistent URL**

<https://wellcomecollection.org/works/rrvtx6et>

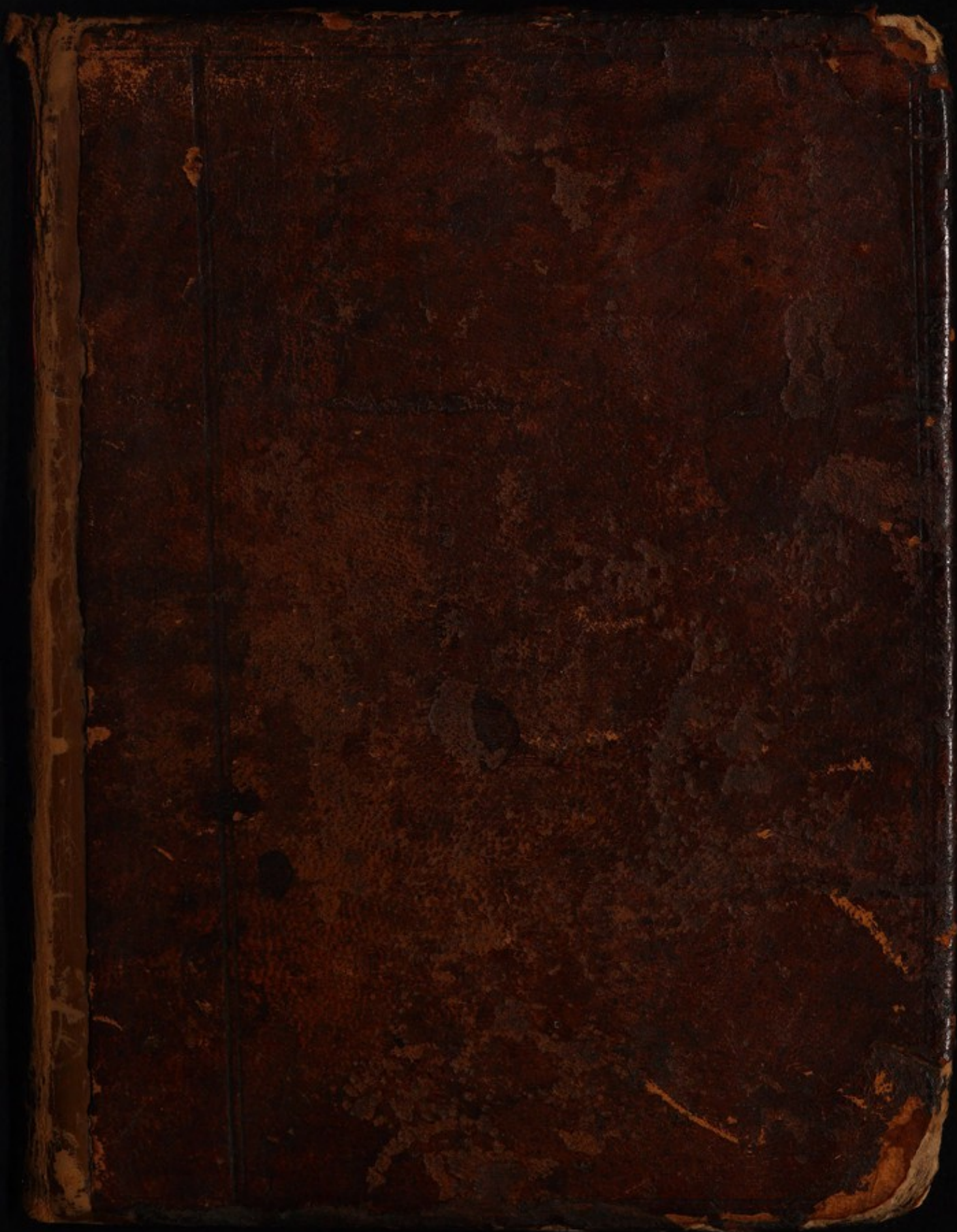
### **License and attribution**

This work has been identified as being free of known restrictions under copyright law, including all related and neighbouring rights and is being made available under the Creative Commons, Public Domain Mark.

You can copy, modify, distribute and perform the work, even for commercial purposes, without asking permission.



Wellcome Collection  
183 Euston Road  
London NW1 2BE UK  
T +44 (0)20 7611 8722  
E [library@wellcomecollection.org](mailto:library@wellcomecollection.org)  
<https://wellcomecollection.org>



MASCAE'S  
GOVERNMENT  
OF  
CATTEL.

1662







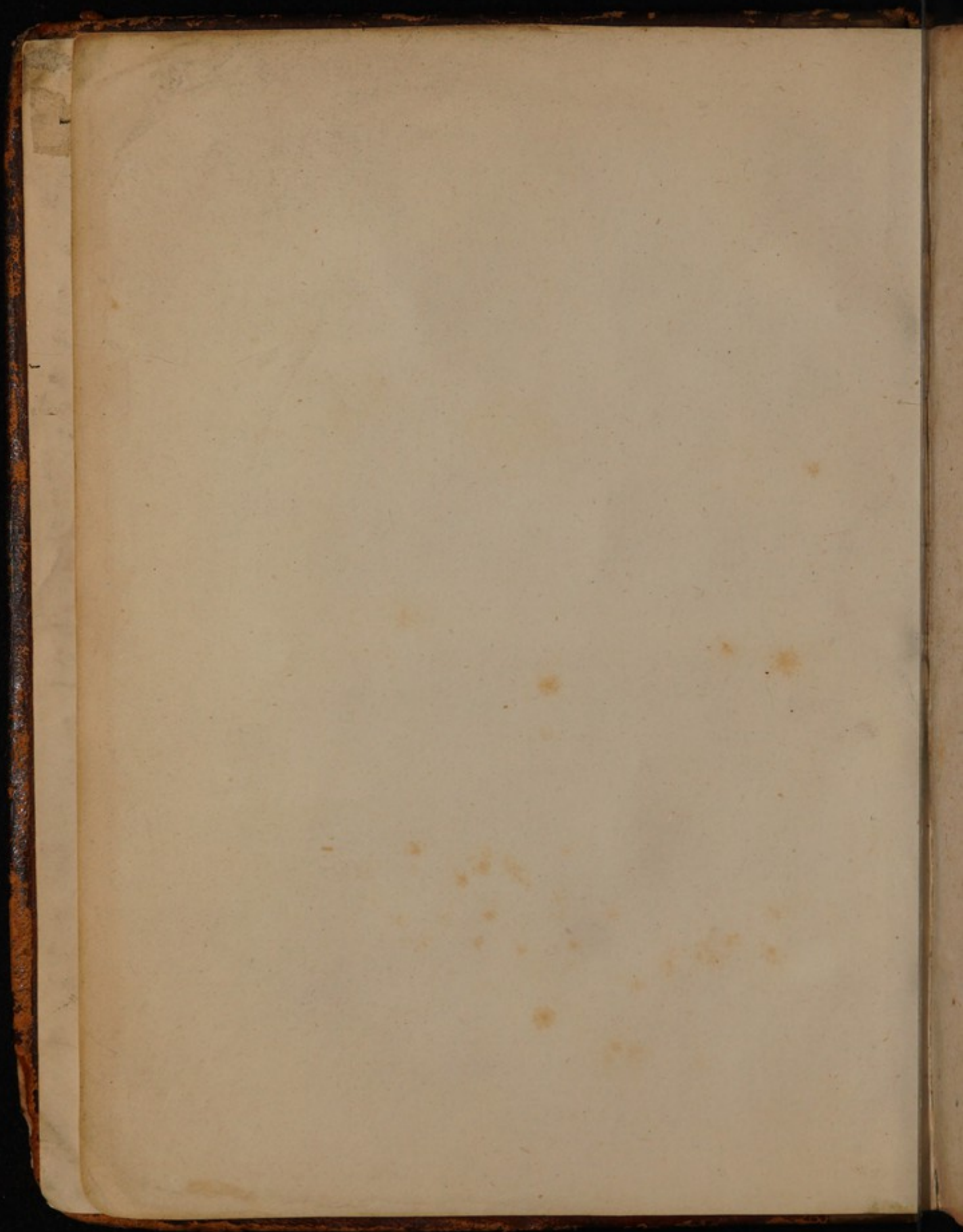
31

35766/A

M.v. Mas

38,074

Christie  
28/2/11  
421







THE GOVERNMENT OF  
**CATTLE**  
*Devided into three Books*  
*The first Treating of*  
*Oxen, kine, & Calves,*  
*& how to use Bulls, & other*  
*Cattell to y<sup>e</sup> yoke or fell.*  
*The second of y<sup>e</sup> Governem<sup>t</sup>*  
*of Horses, with approved*  
*medicines against all diseases.*  
*The third discoursing of*  
*y<sup>e</sup> Order of Sheep, Goats,*  
*Hogs, Dogs, with trew re<sup>m</sup>*  
*medies to helpe the Infir-*  
*mities that befall any of them,*  
*Gathered by*  
**LEONARD MASCAL**  
*Cheaf farier to King James*



38074

The Government of **IM**  
**CATTLE.**

*Divided into three Books.*

The first, Treating of Oxen, Kine,  
and Calves: and how to use Bulls, and other  
Cattel, to the yoke or fell.

The second, Discoursing of the Government  
of Horses; with approved Medicines against  
most Diseases.

The third, Discoursing of the Order of Sheep, Goats,  
Hogs, and Dogs; with true Remedies to help the  
Infirmities that befall any of them.

Also, Perfect instructions for taking of Moals; and likewise  
for the monthly Husbanding of Grounds: and hath been  
already approved, and by long experience entertained a-  
mongst all sorts; especially Husbandmen, who have made  
use thereof, to their great profit and contentment.

---

Gathered by LEONARD MASCAL.  
*Chief farrier to King JAMES.*

---



---

London, Printed for John Stafford, and W. G. and are to  
be sold at the George-yard near Fleet-bridg. 1662.

**MM**  
**CATTLE**  
The Government of

Divided into three Parts

The first, Treating of Oxen, Kine  
and Calves: and how to use Bulls, and other  
Cattle, to the yoke or till.

The second, Discounting of the Government  
of Horses, with approved Medicines against  
most Diseases.

The third, Discounting of the Order of  
Horses, and Dogs; with true Remedies to cure the  
Infirmities that befall any of them.

All these instructions for curing of Horses and Dogs  
for the ready Husbands of Groves, and others  
already approved, and by long experience enlarged  
among all sorts, especially Husbandmen, who have made  
the benefit to their great profit and contentment.



Printed for J. W. Smith and J. N. G. at the  
Wellington Press, Wellington, N. Z.



TO THE RIGHT WOR-  
shipfull, Sir *Edward Montegue*,

Knight, *Leonard Mascall* witheth in-  
crease of Worship, to the honour of  
God, and the benefit of the  
Common-Wealth.

**I**T is written in Histories (Right Worshipfull) that  
the Sons of *Seth*, and *Seneca*, or some other zea-  
lous Philosophers, being desirous to leave some  
thing worth memory unto their posterities, did make  
two pillars, one of Brasse, and another of Earth; wherein  
were graven the principles of the seven Sciences, to the  
end their successors should understand the good wills  
of their predecessors: whereby they did set forth and  
shew all such good knowledge and learning as they  
had found out in their time, to the furtherance of their  
Common wealth. So likewise now, things necessary  
for the same ought not to be deferred, or lightly to be  
regarded or forgotten. And whereas the delights of  
people are of divers kinds, the same is perceived by  
their doings: but as touching their delights, those  
ought chiefly to be regarded which profit most the  
Common-wealth. As (among the rest) the govern-  
ment and preservation of Cattell and such like: where-  
in (for lack of knowledge) oft times the poor man  
loseth his beast. Also, I have known that the disea-  
sed-Cattell of wealthy yeomen, and other poor men,  
somerimes have all perished, whereby whole Parishes  
have been impoverished: which thing hath been a great  
loss unto such Towns, and also hinderance unto the

*The Epistle Dedicatory.*

Common-wealth. Mar. Tul. Cicero was ever desirous to further Countrey and Common-wealth: I would it were so now. Even so our Predecessours, *Aristotle, Virgil, Plato*, and many others in giving us examples therein, have left immortall fame behind them in writing, through the good zeal and love they had to their Countrey and Common-wealth. Which thing likewise (Right Worshipfull) hath moved me of long time to gather and put in writing, the doings of divers and sundry persons, as well strangers, as of our own Countrey-men, to shew the helps for most diseases in Cattel. And forasmuch as I am informed your Worship is desirous to know and understand of the Government of Cattel, and of the fatting of Oxen; to the intent to shew the good will I bear to further all therein, I thought good to set forth the practises of many men, how to help Cattel diseased: which thing ought not to be kept secret, for the lucre of a few, but rather I do communicate this my labour to him that hath delight therein. If any think not well hereof, or despise this my travell, I will friendly desire them with these words: *Qui meliora nōsti, candidus imperti: si non, bis utere mecum.* Which is, If you know any better how to mend it, of your curtesy impart it; if not, take part of this with me. Thus I leave to trouble your Worship any further, desiring you to bear with this my rude style, and to be the defender thereof in Print: and in so doing, I shall think my travell well bestowed, my pains much delighted, and my good will recompensed.

*Your Worships in all duty*

*to be Commanded.*

L. M.



## To the Reader.

**W**Hen I had gathered and collected (gentle Reader) certain medicines how for to help Cattel and to govern them, I considered what benefit, and profit it might be to my Countrey and Common-wealth; especially unto the Husbandmen, and such as have the government of Oxen, Horses, Sheep, and such other Cattel. For, oft-times for want of knowledge, many Cattel being sick, do perish and die: whereas sickness and hurts are incident unto men divers wayes; even so it chanceth unto Cattel. Whereupon I thought it good to take occasion, for the love of my Countrey and Common-wealth, to write somewhat, partly of the Government of our most used Cattel, as Oxen, Kine, Calves, Horses, Sheep, Hogs, and such like: with divers approved Remedies for them; plainly and perfectly set forth, to be understood of the unlearned Husbandman, as of the learned Gentleman: shewing somewhat moreover, for the bones-setting in a Beast: Declaring likewise the order and nature of Hogs, with the use of Dogs, and the cause of their madness, with certain helps against the bitten Cattel; and also to help many Dogs; with divers approved wayes to take Moals in any kind of ground. Which thing ye shall find out in the Tables of the same by Alphabet, and number, divided into three Books. Trusting (gentle Reader) thou wilt take all in good part, as is meant of the Author hereof,

L. M.

To



## *To the Husbandman.*

**T**Hou Husbandman, that fain wouldst know,  
Some Remedies to find,  
How for to help thy sickly Beast,  
To satisfie thy mind:  
Here mayst thou learn plenty thereof,  
Thou needs not farther go:  
But herein search, and thou shalt find  
Such helps to help their wo.  
And when thou wouldst fain Cattell keep,  
For to maintain the Stock:  
Thou must then learn as well the helps,  
As to increase thy Flock.  
For if thou seekest first the Beast,  
And know'st not how to use him:  
When he falls sick, alwayes thou art  
In danger for to lose him.  
For want of knowledge and good skill  
Oftimes it may so fall,  
A man that is full rich in Beasts,  
He may soon lose them all.  
Therefore in this, I counsel thee,  
Seek first to help Disease:  
As great a praise to him that saves,  
As he that can increase.

*L. M.*





*What knowledge a man ought to have,  
that useth to buy and sell Oxen.*

**I** May not easily, nor will, say all that a man ought to follow, or to avoid, in buying of Oxen. But ye shal this understand: Oxen are according to the Region, and Countrey where they are bred: for as there is a diversity of Grounds and Countries, so likewise there are diversities of bodies, and diversities of natural courage; and likewise diversity in pair and boorn of them. For those Oxen in Asia be of one sort, & those in France of another sort; so likewise here in England, of another sort. And yet not so many diversities of Provinces, but as many diversities of the beast: as in Italy, in Capua, there they have white Oxen, and of small body, yet very good to labour in the Plough, & till the ground. Also in the Dutchy of Urben, there are great Oxen both white and red, mighty in body & of great courage. In Tuscane and about Rome, the Oxen are well-set, & thick, & strong-made to labour. Likewise in the Alps & hills of Burgundy they be strong, & can wel indure all labour, & fair likewise withal. But nevertheless, although they do thus differ in divers parts, yet the buyer shal mark & understand herein certain general rules of Oxen, the which Mago of Carthage hath given us, and saith: He that wil buy Oxen, must buy young Oxen, wel quartered, having large & big members, with long horns somewhat black, strong & big: his forehead broad, and his brows wrinkled: his ears rough within, & hairy like velvet; his eyes great & large, his muzzle black, his nostrils crooked within, & very open and wide, the chine of his neck long, thick, and fleshy, the dewlap, or skin that hangeth under his throat, to be

be great in hanging almost down to his knees, his brest round and big, his shoulders large and deep. His belly big compass in falling deep, his ribs to be wide & open, his reines large, his back straight & flat, with a little bending towards the rump: his thighs round, his legs straight & well trust rather somewhat short then long: his knees full and round trust, his hoofs & claws on his feet to be large and broad under foot, his taile long, & well haired: and, to be brief, his body to be thick & short, his colour to be red or black is best. Also, to be gentle and easie to handle & touch, to lead or to occupy. These are the chiefest properties. (if a man would buy) to know a good Drebg: & here shall follow the best way how for to tame him.

The manner and way best for a man,  
to tame his Oxen.

**F**irst, to use it best, is this: ye shall use to handle your Oxen when they are young bullocks & Calves, and also use to tye them and to bind them to the stall, so that hereafter it shal not be painful unto you to tame them, nor yet so dangerous to bzuise them, as when they were old. And yet I would not have them to be tamed before three years, nor after five years: for the one is too weak and tender, and the other too hard and strong to tame those which shall be taken wild and fierce: for ye shal then soon hurt them. Therefore in housing them first, ye shal make your dooz large for them to go in and out, and make a right coming into the house for crushing one another. And also let your stalls be boarded under their feet, and likewise before them; & let the cross-beam over their heads be of seven foot high, to tye up their heads if need be. Ye shal also fasten them first therunto, and within a while after, ye shal use to handle them by the head & hams, and use to water them in the stall: for by coming abroad they will seek to break away, and will not yield so soon to the keeper. Some do yoke them together

gether for two daies abroad; ye shall likewise take good heed that one Ox touch not another with their horns: so within two or three daies that ye see them wax more tame towards the evening you may proue to lead them forth, & to walk them half a miles space or more, and so return again. But first you must see to tye them so straight, that they may not well move their heads; then approach gently, and go before them, not behind them, nor on their sides: and speak them fair, and so accustom them to see and behold their keeper: then rub their heads, and touch their nostrils & muzzels, so that they may know and feel the scent of their keeper: and thus you may use them all. Ye shall also wash & sprinkle them with Wine, to make them more tame & familiar with you, and then put your hand under their bellies, & betwixt their thighs, to the end that when ye do touch them there, they feele not away or strike. And use them thus that ye may at any time take from them flies, mozms, or ticks. When use to be more near their sides, but not behind, for fear of a blow with their feet: and then use to open their jaws, and take forth their tongue, & rub the pallet of their mouth with salt: and use once or twice a year to give them a drink mixt with one pound of salt grease melted, with three pints of Ale or Wine. And by training and using them thus, ye may soon make them tame, so that ye may soon after use them to the yoke in coupling them with some other gentle Ox, and so tye them to some tree, or other thing, & then ye may use them to the Plough. But first use them to some light earth, for the other may soon tire, and so dull them, because their necks being yet but soft and tender, may soon be bruised and gaulled with the bow and yoke, if the earth be very hard, and they as then are but tender and rude. And above all, take heed in taming a Bull, that he hurt you not with his horns or feet. For if ye do not use him orderly at the first, ye shall hardly tame him after, but he will have one ill touch or other: And likewise an old Ox is more hard to tame, doubtfuller then the

# The first Book

4

To yoke a  
young Oxe.

Wearie.

Yoking une-  
quall.

young Oxe. For I have proved (saith he) & had experience thereof at my house: and to frame a young Oxe to the Plough or Cart, ye shall match him best with an old Oxe that is tame, very strong, & gentle, which will hold the young Oxe back if he be too hasty: or pluck him forward, if he be too slow: or, if ye will, ye may make a yoke for three Oxen, & put the young Oxe in the midst, and by that means ye shall make him most hardy Oxe to be tame, & refuse no labour at the length. For the young Oxe (being never so stubborn) in remaining between the two old Oxen they will, (if he be too slack) constrain him to draw, or if he would shoot forward, they will hold him back & stay him: or if he would draw back, they will hold him forward. Also, if he would lye down, the other will hold him up. Thus by policy he may be rid of his stubborn forwardness. Also, yoke him to a wild bullock that hath not laboured before, & so let them go yoked loose together for two or three daies, & so they will wax tame. And a little chastening after will make him indure to labour well: and some young Oxen, after they be made tame and gentle, they will wax wearie, & lie down in the furrow; and when any do so he ought not suddenly to be corrected and raised again by violence, but by some gentle means after a little rest, for he may lie down by some other occasion, as sickness, or faintness, either want of meat and water, which will trouble him more then the blows. When any lie so down by slothfulness, ye shall bind fast his feet that he cannot rise to feed, & let him so lie, & so he shall be constrained through hunger & thirst to leave his wearie slothfulness, which doth seldom happen. Also ye shall not yoke together two beasts of unequal strength and Nature, for the weaker shall still have the worse. Again, those beasts are best to labour that pass on the way without fear of shadows, dogs, waters, or any other thing they see or hear: & those beasts also that eat much & are slow in chewing, for they digest better, and do keep their force and virtue without waxing lean or feeble, more then those which

which are hasty feeders. Also this is counted a great fault in some keepers of Oxen, which will have his Ox rather fat than lean: wherefore to labour the body of a travelling Ox, or other, he ought to be in a mean or good estate, rather than fat, having his muscles or nerves strongly made, not charged with fat, which will but grieve them to labour when they are so. Thus I will leave off their government, & speak hereafter of diseases: as if an Ox have water in his belly, ye shall give him the juice of hemp leaves, mixt with water to drink: or, the leaves of Elder stampt with Ale or Beer, do purge by sedge: or, the root sod in old Wine or Ale and given, is good to void water out of the maw or belly.

The remedies for certain diseases in Oxen,  
Kine, and other Cattel.

**I**t shall be small profit to the Husbandman to give his beast meat, and know not how to help & keep them in health & strength. Wherefore our Ancients did use, to give them quarterly of Lupin peasen, with the seeds of Cypres, by even portions beaten together, & then steeped all one night in water, & set in y open air: which did use them so to keep them safe from sickness. Also often times Cattel will have a sickness which will make them desire to vomit & cough with poverty: the which ye may help, by throwing into his throat fasting, a raw hen egge, shell and all whole. Then, on the morrow, take bruised raisins with the stalks, & mix it with Wine or Ale, and give it: or of common garlick put into his ears. This is not one thing alone to help them, but there are divers others: as to mix salt with their meat. And some do give them of mugwort with Oyl or Wine to drink. Others do give them the roots of leeks beaten with Wine, or the seeds of Firre-tree or Frankincense, & also the seeds of Habin, or Rue, to make them drink it with Wine, or Ale, & some do give them the herb called in English, white Coltsfoot,

in Latin Droſis, mixed with bitter ſitches. Some do giue them a little of a Serpents ſkin beaten with Wine. They do uſe alſo to beat wild Time, or Saborie in ſweet Wine, & ſo giue it, which is counted very good for them. Likewiſe the ſea-Onion, called Squilla in Latin, to be cut ſmall & ſoked in water and giuen to ſwallow it. All theſe or ebery of them when they are miniſtered, ought to be giuen and miniſtered thre daies together, a pint or more at once to a beaſt, which will purge their belly, & take away the diſeaſes, & alſo doth renew them unto ſtrength and health again. And among all medicines, the lees of Oliues to be giuen, is a ſingular good medicine, mixt with as much water as lees. Wherefoze it ſhall not be ill to accuſtome your Cattell thus: ye ſhall firſt ſpizinkle therewith gently their meat, and then put a little thereof into their water, and at length ye may mix in their water a more portion thereof: and ſo giue it unto them, & likewiſe among their meat: ſo thus ye may uſe to keep them continually in health, as they did uſe them in times paſt.

#### The cauſe of Peſtilence in Cattell.

**T**he cauſes of peſtilence, one thing is the chaſing of Cattell: wherefoze ye muſt not chaſe your Cattell much in labour, ſpecially in Summer, for that doth beſides bring unto them the flux of the belly, or elſe an ague. Alſo, ye ſhall neither let hogs nor hens to enter into their ſtalls: for their dung being mixt with your Cattells meat, will breed a Peſtilence at length, & kill them. And eſpecially the dung of hogs doth breed a murren among Cattell (the ſooner) in eating thereof: if remedy be not ſoon had, they will grow to a murren, & die thereof. The remedies are theſe: ye muſt by & by change their layer, and diuide them into many parts, & far off from thence. And alſo ſeparate the whole from the ſick: for one beaſt infected, will poiſon all the reſt in ſhort time. Now when ye haue changed them into other parts, ye muſt put them where no other

other beasts do feed with them to the end they do not infect other therein: & to overcome this pestilent evil is to give them medicines: therefore thus ye may use them; ye shall take of wild Carret, called in Latin Daucus, or wild-Parfnip, or of Groundsill, or of Angelica roots, or the root of the sea-holm, named Eringion in Latin, with fennel-seed, and sprinkle it with sod wine, & fine wheaten meale, with hot water: mix them so together, & give your sick Cattel drinke thereof: then soon after ye shall make a drinke of Cassia Mirrhe, and Frankincense, in like portion mixt with as much blood of the sea-Tortus, if ye can: then put altogether in a quart of old wine, and then squirt it into their nostrils. Ye must minister this medicine three daies together, every day a third part.

We have (saith he) found also a most short medicine & a good, which is the root called in Latin Coniligo, in French Romeel, or Patedelion, in English I take it to be black Elleborie, which is very good for all Cattel. Which root ought to be taken after this manner. Ye must dig him out of the earth with your left hand, before the Sun do rise, for as they say when he is so taken, thereby he hath the more vertue, which ye must use in this sort. First, ye must boze throught a circle of holes with an Awle, or Boorkin of Brass or Latyn, in the flap or broadest part of the beasts ear. But first clip away the hair on both sides thereof, and then boze your holes: so done, then when you see the blood issue forth like a round circle, ye shall then put into the said holes of the foresaid root, cut in small pieces. And when it is within the flesh holes, that beast shall incontinently recover, and wax fresh and lusty again. And shall not fall into the danger of the said venomous disease: For the root will draw forth all the venom at the said holes in his ear. Whereby that part of the ear will rot and fall away, and by the loss thereof, the beast shall escape and be saved. Cornelius Celsus, his counsel is this: ye shall put into their nostrils of Mistletoe leaves stamped with

with wine, but this must be done, as soon as your beasts begin to wax sick, and then to use every beast that is infected, as aforesaid.

For a beast that doth not like, nor well digest his meat.

**W**hen a beast doth not digest his meat, the sign is, the rawness in the stomach: and want of digestion is, when he belcheth often, & his guts make a crawling, his eyes will be charged with drops, his nerves and sinews will be hard and stiffe: which cause is, he doth not use to rub or lick himself. The remedies are these: Ye shall take nine pints of warm water, & thirty Colwort-leaves a little boyled, mix them with some vinegar: & so make him to swallow it down, & all the day after ye shall let him eat nothing but that. Some do tie him in the stall, & lay meat afoze him, so that he cannot eat thereof: & then they take four pound of the tops of lenties, and the tops of wild-olives, and beat them together with a pound of honey. & put thereto four pints of water, and then set it a night in the open air, and on the morrow give it him, and within an hour after they give him wild-tares, or fetches, soaked in water. but no drink: and this ye must do thre daies together, till all the cause be taken away. When if this do not help his digestion, or crawling of his guts and belly, which thing doth trouble him so, that he cannot eat his meat, and it maketh him to weep and complain and mourn, then let him not rest long in a place, and also if he lie on the earth, ye shall remove his head often where his tail was. Also this is a manifest remedy for them: Ye shall bind hard the upper part of his tail next the bulk: so done, ye shall give him then a pint and a half of wine, mixt with a quarter of a pint of oyl of Olive, & make him to swallow it: & then lead him apace the space of a mile & a half. When if the disease go not away, ye shall then anoint your hands with grease, butter, or oyl of Olive, and

drawe forth his dung at his fundament, and make his like-  
wise to runne a good space after. If this profit not, ye shall  
take wilde figges dried, and all to beate them, then mixe  
them with nine times so much warme water, and so geve  
it unto him. If this yet helpe not, ye shall then take two  
pounds of the leaves of Harts, then stampe them and mixe  
them with three pints of warme water, and so geve it with  
a home, but let him bloud first under the tayle, and chase  
him well afoze ye let him bloud, to bleed the better: & when  
he hath bled sufficiently, then stop it in, binding it about  
with the barke of some Tree for closenesse. Also they use  
three ounces of beaten Garlick in a pint of wine or more,  
and then to drinke and make him to run a good while after.

Another. They use also to beat two ounces of salt with  
ten Onions, and then put thereto a little melted honey and  
so put it into the Tewel or Arse gut of the beast: and after  
they chase him a while and make him to run. All these a-  
foresaid have bene assayed against lacke of digestion.

Against the Crowling (called of some) the  
crying of the Guts, and fretting  
thereof in Cattell.

**A**S concerning the crowling and crying of the guts, and  
paine thereof in cattell, which are oftentimes troubled  
therewith, which griefe is appeased and helped by this  
meanes, as when the beast shall suddenly see any thing  
swim, specially a drake on the water, he shall suddenly bee  
healed thereof, and also the drake in sudden beholding the  
beast, the said beast shall be healed thereof. Likewise if any  
drake behold the Horse, the said Horse shall bee suddenly  
whole thereby. And yet at sometimes they can find no me-  
dicine that can helpe. Also the signe of the Trenches, with  
fretting of the guts are these. The flux of the belly, with Trenches,  
great abundance of flegme, the remedies are: take five Ci-  
pres apples, with so many gall nattes, with old Wheat  
the

the wright of both the other two, then beat them well all together, and put it into three pints of red wine, and give the beast by even portions thereof four mornings: and ye shall not forget to put thereunto (if ye can) of Lentle pease, of mirts, and the crops of wild Olive trees. All these have bene said to help the Trenches, and fretting of the guts.

Flux of the  
belly.

The flux of the belly doth increase by little and little, and so at length goeth through the whole body of the Beast: which will soze diminish his strength, and cause him to labour very slow and faintly: When this shall happen, you must keepe your Ox or other beast three dayes from drinke and the first day give them nothing to eat; then after give him the crops of wild Olives, or of reed, or of such like, or the seeds of Lentile pease, or Mirts, but give him as little water as you can, for the Flux of the belly sometimes continueth unto bloud, & then it weakeneth a beast very much, and he will thereof dye, if there be not some remedy found. Wherefore the best is (as aforesaid) to give him no drinke for the space of some or 5. dayes, but to give him the bruised kernels of Raisins steeped all one night in Red wine, or to give him of Gall nuts and of Cipres, mirt and braten together in Red wine, and so given in a morning. Likewise also against the paine of the Guts and flux thereof, some doe take the shoots and tops of the tender Bay-tree, and steep it with so much Sothernwood all a night in three pints of warme water and so give it to the beast fasting.

Another, Also others doe take and bruise a quantity of the ddyed kernels of Grapes, and gives it mirt with three pintes of Red wine, and doe let him drinke no other thing, but (as aforesaid) the tops of Bayes & Sothernwood steeped in warme water, so long as the flux doth continue, or as yee shall see cause.

If the Flux do not soone cease, or the paine of the Guts and belly, ye shall give them but little meat for the space of three or 4. dayes. For his Head being then charged with a waterish humour, he shall (by eating little) aboyd more easily the water out of his eyes, and at his nose, then otherwise.

wise he should doe, and for an extreame and speedy remedy thereof, ye must burne him in the mids of his forehead, with a hot Iron unto the bone, and also slit or race his Eares, and after rub the place twice a day with some Oxe piss, warmed on the fire, and use this medicine until it be whole. And also ye shall anoynt the burnt place of his forehead with Tarre and Oyle: olbe mixt together, which thing is counted a very good and perfect remedy.

If your beast haue the Flux of bloud, some doe use to take a quantity of new Hogges dung, with a handfull of the Masse that groweth about the foot of an Ash tree, and chop it very small with the Hogs dung, and then they mixe it with a quart of good strong Ale or beere, and so give it the beast in the morning with a horne. Another, some take a quick Loch-fish, and put it into his throat, and makes him to swallow it. Another, take also the hearbe called Blood-wort, with the herbe called Shepherds-purse of each a handfull, and then chop them together small, and so mixe them with a quart of Milke of one coloured Cow, and stirre them well together, with some Leaven of browne bread, then do you straine it with the Runnet of milke, and so give it to the beast milke-warme, first and last, eight or 9. dayes together. Another, take three ounces of Faciolia, called in Latine Smilax, in English Kidney-beane, or long Beane, take those which are red, and six drams of Pepper, with a quantity of the seed of Bzome made in fine powder, and so give him thereof twice or thrice a day, in putting three ounces of the said powder into two quarts of Milke. Another, Some do make the Beast to swallow a live Frog, in cutting off one of his Legs, and to put it downe his throat. Another, some other doe take of new Hogges dung mixt with a quart of strong Ale or Beer, and so gives thereof to the beast morning, at none, and at night, the space of three dayes together, often probed. Another, some take five or six small thin slices of the leanest of Partlemas beefe, and let them be layd a while to soake in a quart of strong Ale or beer, & put thereto one handfull of Hogs dung newly made,

then stire it well together, and so make the beast to drinke it evening and morning, the space of two or three dayes, and keep him still in the house, use this, and it will helpe him: often proved. Another. Take a good handfull or more of Knot-grasse, chop it small, then bruse it a little, and mix it with a Pint or more of good Ale or Beere. And if ye can get the Shell stones which is found on tilled lands (and is much like to the Scallop shell) which ye shall burne in the fire, and then make fine powder thereof: then put some of that powder unto your foresaid drinke, and so give it to your beast: This hath bene proved a good remedy. Another. Make a possit of the milke of one coloured Cow, and give it unto your sick beast luke warme. Another. Take a quantity of the fine powder of Bole-armeniack, and mixe it with Ale or beer, and give it to your beast with a horn. Another. Take a quantity of powder of the roots of gallingale finely beaten, and then mixe it with a pint or more of ale or beere, and so give it. Another, Also the roots of the wild Malloes boyled in wine or strong beere, and given to the beast, is good to stop the flux of blood. And so are all these aforementioned good against the bloody flux in Cattell, being ministered in fit and convenient time, will take the more effect to stop the said disease.

Against superfluous Flesh growing on the tongue of some Cattell, which is called of some persons the Barbes.

**S**uch superfluous flesh on the tongue of cattell will hinder the beast oftentimes in eating his meat, being called of some husbands the Barbes, Teates, which doe grow long, like teates nigh the root of his tongue. Wherefore they doe call him, and take forth his Tongue, and clip them away with a paire of sheeres, or cut them with a sharpe knife: And some doe burne them with a hot Iron, which way is counted more painfull unto the beast: Then they rub it with salt and Garlick beaten together, till all the

the flegm be cleane gone, and then they wash all his mouth with Salt and Wine, or salt and Vinegar, and within an houre after ye may give unto him some grasse, or grasse hearbes, or the tender leaves of Trees, so long till they are all whole.

Also if a beast have the Barbes, which (as some doe say) will grow and hang like flesh-pimples under his tongue, which must be clipped off, and then rubbed and chafed with Garlick and salt beaten together, as aforesaid, and wash and rub his mouth gently with soft linnen dipped in warm wine, and bath well those sores under his tongue, and then use him as aforesaid, and he shall doe well.

If the beast have neither barbes nor yet flux, and do not eat his meat well, it shall then be good to beat garlick with Sallet-Dyle, and squirt thereof a mornings into his Nostrils, if ye mixe therewith the juice of an Onyon, it shall make him the more desirous to eat.

#### Against pissing of Blood, or bloody Flux.

If this disease be newly begun of your beast, ye shall take but a Frog, and cut off his left legge, and so put him alive in the beasts mouth; but then you must have ready a handfull of Salt mixed with a pint of good strong Ale, and so soon as ye can after the Frog give the beast to drink, and make him to swallow all down together, for this is counted very good, and also well approved. But if your beast have continued long, then shall ye take of Sharpe Tannets oyle, with the powder made of old Hartlemas beefe mixed and well stirred together, and then give it to the beast: this is also good and well approved, and the juice ofadder given with honied water is also good.

#### If your Cartell have dropping Nostrils.

If the Nostrils of your Beast doe drop, or water runne forth thereat, you shall rub his throat with Salt, and

Saborie mirt together, and also his sawes, and so rub and chafe the said parts with Vine and Garlick mirt together, or to squirt into his nostrils the iuyce of Pimpernell mirt with a little white Wine, and this is good both for the dropping nostrils, and the watry eyes of Cattell.

For an Oxe or Cow that Swelleth through the abundance of Blood.

**I**f an Oxe or Cow doe sometimes swell through abundance of blood, whereby it will swell in their Tongue that it will stop their wind, and they sone perish thereof, if there be not remedy with speed. The remedy is, ye shall first chafe him a little up and downe, and cast him and take forth his Tongue, and prick it with an awle through the great and middle beyne thereof under, and thereat let him bleed well, and he shall mend sone againe: but looke then that the signe be not in the Head, for then it is ill to stop, and sometimes a beast tongue will swell so big that he can hardly take his breath, and ye shall see him ill and hold out his tongue, then if there be not speedy remedy, he dyeth: which remedy is, ye must prick the beyne under his tongue as is aforesaid, and then he shall doe well.

Against the venomd Tongue of a beast, and also his Body.

**T**he tongue of an Oxe or Bullock, sometimes will be swolne or venomd by Eating of some venomous Grasse, or such like, and then he will commonly gape, and eat no meat, but stand holding down his head and mourne. The remedy is, ye shall bruise a white Onyon, and mixe it with a little good Vinegar, then giue it him, and make him to swallow it downe: but first rub his mouth and his tongue withall well, and then giue it him. So done, ye shall pass a whole Egge into his mouth shell and all, and make

him so to swallow it downe, and then he will recouer and doe well againe.

Sometimes a beast will be swolne all his Body, by eating some evill thing and venomous among the Grasse, as the Field-spider, Frogs, Snailles, Elses, or cold hearbes, as Poppy, Dale, Hemlock, and such which will make them to swell. The remedies are, take the iuyce of Plantaine, with the ioyce of wild Carrets, by even portion, and give the beast thereof with a little Vineger. Also, the iuyce of Bugwort mixt with Ale or beere, and give it. Likewise the iuyce of Clebers, or Gole-grease stamp and strained, and given, is a speciall remedy against venome of the Field-spider, and others also. Againe the garden Tanzy, stamp and strained and given with Wine. Also, the seeds of the great Cow-thistle dzyed and made in powder, and given with wine, or the Root thereof boyled in wine and given. Likewise the leaves of Anniseeds boyled in water & given. Againe, the seed of Rocket beaten and given with Ale: or a handfull of Betony leaves stamp and strained with Ale or beer, and given. Likewise, doth Garlick being stamped together with Ale or Beer, and given with Ale. Any of these are good alone to be given to the beast, when he is swolne by eating of any venomous thing: And if ye doe take of some hearbes two parts together, it will then be stronger and take more effect: but my counsell is th's, use them with discretion even as ye shall see cause.

Against the Swelling in a beast by eating of  
a Tine-worme.

If any Ox or other beast have eaten any Tine-worme, which is a small red worme, round and full of Legges, much like a Hog-loose. Which worme in Summer will be creeping among the Grasse. If any beast have eaten such, it will poyson him and he will sodainly swell thereof, so that within 24. houres (if he be not remedied) he will dye thereof. One remedy is, ye shall take a quantity of Stale, and  
put

put therein a quantity of Salt, mix them well together, and so giue it him, and presently after chase him till he stowar, for when they doe stowar, they lightly shall doe well.

Another. Take a good handfull of herb Robart (which smells like a Fox) chop it small, and bruiſe it well, and then mixe it with Ale or beere, and so giue it your beast.

Another. Take of the earth of Ant-hills, and mix it with Vinegar, and so giue it your beast. These are all good against the aforesaid venome of the Tine-worme.

#### Against Costiuenesse in Cattell.

**T**here is also another kind of swelling in Oxen and Hine both through costiuenesse, which is, when they are so hard bound in their bodies through heat, that they cannot dung, which will cause them to swell. The remedy is, to chase and driue him well up and down a good pace: If then he doe not dung, ye must then annoynt your hand with oyle or grease, then rake him and take forth his dung. Some doe giue him of the herb Mercury in drinke, and so doth well: Yet others doe but rake him, and he doth well also.

#### Against the Worme in the Beasts taile.

**T**here will breed in the taile of cattell a certain weame like to an eating Canker, which will breed in the end of his taile, which will cause the beast to become leane, and of ill liking, which place ye shall feel to be some what soft: and a little aboue that place on the Inside of his taile, ye shall slit the skin with a sharpe knife two Inches long done right: So done, then take a quantity of bruised Garlick and Salt mix'd together, and bind it fast to that place, and let it so remain till it doe fall away of it selfe, and so the Beast shall recover, and be well againe.

For

For an Oxe or Cow, having the Feaver.

**O**xen and Iaine both, will sometimes have the Feber, or Ague, which is gotten by some cold or other sickness. The signes are, when his Eyes wax hollow, and are dropping, his Head lumpish and heaue, his Mouth foaming and lathering, and drawing long his breath with paine, and sometimes he will sigh. So when ye shall see such tokens, ye may iudge it to be the feber. The remedy, Ye shall then keepe them a day and a night without meat or drinke, then on the next morning fasting, yee shall draw a little Blood under his tayle. Then about one houre after ye shall giue him thirty small Trunchions of Coleworts sod in Sallet-oyle and Salt-fish water, or Wine, and make him to swallow it; thus you must use him for fife mornings together fasting, and ye shall cast before him the tender branches of Lentile-pease, or the tender crops of Olive-trees, or such like, or else the tender buds of the Vine, and ye must rub or cleanse his lips, and thrice a day ye must giue him cold water for to drinke, and so ye shall keepe him in the Stall till he be whole and sound.

Also, the Feber is gotten of labouring Oxen, by great travaile in hot times, and when he hath that, ye shall see him hang downe his head, his Eyes will inflame and bounse, and his body will be hot, out of all order, which yee shall see by touching his skin. Wherefore they use to let him blood on the beyne of his Forehead, or on the beyne of his Eare, and then they giue him of greene herbes, as Lettuce, and such other cold herbes, and then bath all his body with white Wine, and so they giue him cold water to drinke, and so he will amend.

Against the Cough in Catrell.

**C**attle sometimes will have the Cough by taking of cold or by great travaile, or by eating of some evil thing:

C c

If

If the Cough in an Ox be newly taken, hee may be well, and soon remedied thereof by a Drinke made with Water mixt with Barley-meal. Sometimes they use to give unto the beast of Stitch-wort smally chopt, with husked Beans bruised all together, & so given. They take also of Lentile-pease out of their huskes, and then bruise them small, and mixe them with three pints of warme Water, and give it with a horne. They heale also an old Cough, with two pound of Hyssope steeped in a quart or two of Water, with eight pounds of Lentile-pease smally beaten and mixed together, and so given unto the Beast with a horn. Another, Take the succie therof with Sallet-oyle, or the small roots thereof beaten with Barley-meale and so given, and make him to swallow it. Another, Take the Rotes of Leekes cleane washed, and then beaten with pure Wheat, and so given fasting: this doth heale an old Cough. Another, take of wild Tares out of their huskes, then beate them with as much of husked Barley, and make him soe to swallow it. Another, Hyssope also stamped with Ale or Beere, and given is good likewise, and to give him no other Drinke for the space of eight dayes but Bugwort boyled in water, and so given. Another, Take five leaves of Asarabacca, and stampe it, and then strain it with Wine or good Ale, and so give it with a horne to the Beast. Another, mixe the powder of Lightwort (which growes among stones or Dakes, like a dyed turfe nigh the ground) with Ale or Beere, and give it warme and it will help. Also take Butter, new Ale, stampt Garlick, with Dragon water, and so give it unto the Beast warme. All approved.

To help Impostumes in Beasts.

If a Beast be troubled with an Impostume, or such like sore, the best shall be to open the place with an Iron, and when it is cut, then ye shall crush forth all the ill humour and matter therein. Then scir and wash it cleane with the warme hvine of an Ox. So done, then use such things

things as doe cleane and heale. And take Cherpi (so called in French) mixt with Tar, and Oyle of Olive, plaster wise close the soze therewith. If ye cannot within wash the soze cleane: Ye shall melt the Tallow of an Oxe or Goat, and so pouze it into the wound, and let it runne down all about the bottome thereof. Some sozes, after you have applyed this Medicine, they will gather a fiery heat, and a distilling of humour, which will descend into that place. Therefore to avoyd the same, ye shall wash it with old Urine of men, and then annoynt it with Tar and old Grease mixt.

Against the Impostumation of Wyles, they do use to kill them by laying to of Leaven mixed with the Sea Onyon Squilla, and some Vinegar: And they do also open the soze, and wash it with his own piss made warme: Then they tent it with Lint dipped in Tar, & in the end, ye shall heale it with Tents dipped in Polton tallow, either of Oxe or Goat.

To heale the Closs, or Founder in the feet of Cattell.

**T**he Closs or Foundring in the feet of Cattle, is taken by some cold after a great heat, or by some vehement Travell, which hath stirred the Blood so, that it goeth down to the feet like the Founder of a Horse. When this doth happen in Cattell, it will suddainly dist the Hoofe of a Beast, and ye shall feele it hot, and paineth the Beast so that he will not suffer you to crush that place. But when as the Blood refketh in the Legs above the hoofe, ye shall then but chase him often, & rub him hard to make the Blood retire againe. If that profit him not, ye must launce his Feet gently round on the edge of his Hoofes, with small Rases not deepe. But if the Blood be gone downe into the hoofe, ye must open it then a little (with a sharp knife) in the midst under both of the Clawes. Then lay a Tent thoreunto of Lint mixed with Salt, Pettles, and Vinegar, and make him a Buskin of Bzome, if ye can, for that is more

more wholesome, and let not his feet come into any water till he be whole, but keepe him dry in the stall.

And looke also that the blood doe issue, when ye doe cut him, for if then he doe not bleed, it will grow to some putrification, and so to Impostumation, and then it will be long in healing. Therefore ye must open and cleanse it well, and bind thereto cloathes steeped in Vineger, Salt, and Oyle, and in the end take of old Grease and Deeres suet melted together a like portion, and heale it therewith. If the blood doe fall to the outmost parts of the cloes, yee must then pare the ends thereof to the quicke, and so let him bleed, so that no Impostumation be there, and they will doe well.

#### For Sinewes Risse and Shrinking.

If an Ox, or other beast doe closh or hault through the stiffness of the Sinewes and nerves, yee shall chase his legs, knees and hams, with Salt and Oyle mixed, till they be well. If the Sinewes be Risse about the knee, ye must then bath him with hot vineger, or with Musto sod in running water, or with Millet (which is a graine like Tares) and Linseed; and in all Issues ye must scarifie and race the grieved place, and then put thereon of fresh Butter washed in water and vineger, and in the end anoynt it with Salt butter, mixt with Goats suet.

Also, to boyle Sothernwood in Sallet oyle, or Peates foot oyle and so to anoint therewith. Another, the iuyce of Ribet mixt with Oyle, and therewith anoint. Another, Mustard seed boyled in Oyle, and anoint the sinewes therewith. Another, take of Barley meale, Sallet oyle, Rue, Salt, and Coriander; stamp all these together, and so platfired on, that will comfort both sinewes & nerves.

Another, take water that Cabbage or Coleworts have been sod in, to bath therewith is good. Another, take Linseed and Barly meale, and mixe them well together, and

and then plastered to, is good to mollifie and make soft all hardnesse of the sinewes, nerves and joynts. Another, take the Rootes of Saurian, stampe them, and mixe them with sheeps milke, and then plastered will supple the sinewes prettily. Also horehound beaten with oyle and vinegar, and then plastered, doth the like supple the sinewes and nerves. Some do say, take parrow and harr ow hogges grease, and beate them well together, and them layd to will knit the sinewes together, being cut in sunder.

Against the swelling of the Knees of  
Cattell.

**I**f the knees of Ox or Cow, or other beast be swollen, ye shall first bath him in white vinegar: then take vinegar, linseed, and miller, and sprinkles it with honted water, so mixe them, and bind that to his knees: Or else take a sponge dipt in water pistle it is sod in, and lay that unto his knee. If there be any inflammation of humour, ye shall then lay to leaven and barley meale steeped in warme wine, or in honted water boyled to ripe it, and when it is ripe, ye shall lance it with a razer, and then heale it with lint, salt, and oyle as afoze is said. Cornelius Celsus saith, the Rootes of Flounderbeluce or the sea onion Squilla with salt, or the juce of knotgrasse put into the wound will heale it. Also all diseases commonly in the body, without (wound being new) are healed by rubbing and chafings of the flesh and skinne, but if they be old, ye must cut & burne them, and to heale them with melted butter, or goat-suet poynted thereon.

To heale Scabs or Gals in Cattell.

**I**f your cattell be scabby, ye shall take of garlicke & bruisse it and there with rub and chafe all the sores. Also against scab or gall they take garlicke, Sabor, Brimstone, powder, vinegar, and gall-nuts beaten with the juice of callamint,

Mint, Pip, or Hore-hound, mixt with Soot of the Chimney and so annoynt therewith. And if it grow to some Ulcer or great soze, then to use and rub the place with bruised Malloves, mixt with white Wine, and bind thereof to the place. Also the great Burre-leaves, beaten with Oyle and layd to. All these aforesaid are good.

And for the galling of the Peck with the Poke, and if it swell but one side, ye shall let him blood in the Care of that side; but if he be chafed in the midst of the Pecke, then let him blood in both his Cares, and lay thereto a Plaster made with the Harrow of an Ore, mixed with the Suet of a Bucke, and then melt it together, with some Oyle and Tarre, and therewith ye shall heale it, and it will doe very well.

Also if an Ore be galled and bruised on his Pecke, this is a sufficient Medicine. Ye shall first draw blood at one of his Cares: If not, take of the hearbe called in Latine Avia; in French Aus-oiseauls, beat it with Salt, and so lay it to, and if it doe then allwage the chine of his Pecke, look then upon which side he hangeth or leaneth his head, and let him blood in the contrary side he leaneth, on the Care. But before you do this, ye shall beat his Care well with a twig, and ye shall see it swell, and rise on the veyne. Then launce the said veyne, and let him bleed well thereat: And upon the next morning draw some more blood thereout, and so let him not travell of two dayes after: On the third day ye may travell him a little, and so by little and little ye may use him unto his Taske, and unto his former Journey.

But if he be of neither side galled, and yet his Pecke swollen in the midst thereof: Then ye must let him blood on both his Cares: and if ye let him not blood within nine dayes after the disease hath taken his Peck, it will so inflame, that the Perbes and sinewes will waxe stiffe, and then it will grow to a soze ingendred blood: For which I have found a singular good Medicine: That is, ye shall take Tarre, and the Harrow in an Ore bone, with the Suet

Suet of a Buck, with old Oyle & Olive of each alike portion. Then boyle all together, and so use for to annoynt him when he leaveth his Poke. But if ye shall alwayes wash him with the water where he continually drinketh of, and then let it dry, and then annoynt him with the said Medicine. But if all his Peske be so inflamed that he cannot beare his Poke, the next Remedy is to let him rest, and use to wash his Peske with cold Water, and so rub and chafe it with the Jome of Silver or Litargy. Celsus wil- leth to put on the rest of his Peske that is so inflamed, the aforesaid hearbe called Avia.

For a Beast being Hide-  
bound.

**T**here is a disease in Beasts called in Latine Coriago, in English hide-bound, which doth sore torment and grieve a Beast. This grieve happeneth to a labouring Ox, when he hath bene sore travellled in labour, or sore travelling in Rainy Weather, and thereby come to be hide-bound through poverty. Wherefore yee must take heed when they return from labour being sore chaff of body, and short of breath. Some use therefore to sprinkle them with Wine, & do cast a piece of y<sup>e</sup> fat of a beast down his throat: But if he have this disease already, it shall be good to seeth Bay-leaves in Ale, and to bath him therewith as hot as he can suffer, and suddenly thereupon for to chafe and rub him with Oyle & Wine mixt together, and to plucke and draw his skin on both his sides, and loose it from his ribs: And it is good to be done in a hot Sunny day, that it may dry and sink therein. Another: Some doe put to the Lees of Olives, Wine, and Grease, and annoynt therewith, which Medicine they doe use after they have done rubbing and chafing of the Beast. Also if that a beast like not, and that his Skin doth cleave unto his Bones, y<sup>e</sup> shall bath him all over with Wine, and Oyle & Olive mixed together. Some doe take Mallowes boyled in Wine or Ale,

oz worst mirt with oyle, and so bath him therewith. Also some doe seeth hot graines in Ale, and so bath and rub him therewith once a day for three or foure dayes together, and to geve him the water of boyled water.

#### For the Itch in Cattell.

**T**he Itch oft times in cattell may come for lack of good dressing. Also it may be taken of his fellows, & it may come by ill water and choller in the veins. If a Beast have an Itch, ye shall wash and chafe him with his owne Urine, made warme and mirt with old salt butter, or ye shall anoint him with oyle, rozen, & white wine melted together: Some doe wash it with Pisse, salt, and the juice of Paris gold mirt all together. Use this, and it will help.

#### Against the Lungs of Cattell Infected.

**I**f the Lights or Lungs of a beast be Infected, which is a grieuous disease, for thereby he will wax leane, and pine away, and at length he dries so in his body by a common cough, whereby at the length it will kill him, if he have no remedy. The Remedies are, ye shall pierce one of his Eares with a little bodkin (as is aforesaid for the Murren or Pestilence) and being so pierc'd, ye shall put into the said holes the burnt root of some Hazell tree, then take a quantity of the iuyce of Leekes with so much Sallet oyle, and mix it with a pint and halfe of Wine, and geve it him fasting, and use this nine mornings together, and he shall doe well. Also, if the sicknesse of the Lights be not sore, they doe geve him but the iuyce of Leekes mirt with sweet wine, and then put of the burnt root of Hazell into his eare, as aforesaid.

But ye shall understand, if the beast have continued long therewith, he will then stand much, and eat but little, and therewith he will wax hollow, and thin of body, and sometimes he will cough 20. times in one houre. When he is sore taken

taken and farre gone therewith, and very few doe recover if he be not looked unto. Wherefore the best way is, yee shall divide your Cattell asunder, so many as hee hath accompanied with, & let them bloud a little as aforesaid. Also there be many men that fetter them, which is, to cut the Dew-lap before on the briscket: And therefore also there is Grasse, which some Husbands doe call it Fetter-wozt, or Fetter-grasse, which yee shall take and bruisse a little in a Mortar or dish. Then make the Dew-lap hollow betwixt the skin and the flesh, and put thereof so much as a Hens egge, into the said Dew-lap and then looke unto it, that it fall not forth againe, and he shall amend. This some have probed, and it hath done well.

Also againe, some Cattell will have their Lungs growne to their sides, which is gotten (as some Husbandmen say) by some great Drought, or lacke of water in convenient times. And when he is thus grieved therewith, yee shall heare him hoarse, or have (as it were) a hollow Cough, and will forsake his meat, and his haire on his back will stare upright. Then the help is hard to recover, but to kill him is best. Yet some do give him of the Lungwozt, which lies all the yeare (save in y Spring) in the ground, and they give a handfull of the said Wozts bruised in Ale or Beere, 4. or five mornings together, and no meat after two houres space. Others doe take a quantity of Figs, with a handfull of Flop bruised together, then boyle them a little in a quart of Ale or Beere, then straine it and give it to the beast three or foure mornings, and let him not eat the space of two houres after. And to take a good handfull of Pensis, or Hearts ease, and stamp it with a quart of Ale or Beere, and then straine it and give it to the Beast, three or foure mornings, and then use them as aforesaid. And these are counted speciall good against the said griefe.

Also some Husbands say, this disease growes in a Beast by surfetting and sore chaffing, and then suddenly take cold thereon: To shew if he be long growne, he will then lather sometimes at his mouth, in holding it commonly

open, with a running water at his mouth and nose. The cure therfore: They cut away a round piece of skin in the Gullet or brisk place, and then with their finger and a little Salt, make a hole downward two Inches & more, and then fill the said hole with red Garlick stamped, and plastered thereon, with Pettles stamped with Salt, or with Parrow and Salt mixt together with Vinegar: Then shall ye give him this following. Take of Fenecreeke, or Turnericke, or Lungwort hearb, stamp all these together in a Mortar, and mix them with a pint or more of strong Ale or Beere, and so give it. Use this twice or thrice, or more as ye shall see cause, and it will helpe if it be not too farre gone. Often probed.

Like wise, some doe put into the aforesaid cut place, of Lungwort bruised with a little Salt, and thereof make it like a Tent, and then wraps it all over with fresh Hoggesgrease, and binds it round with a thread, and then roll it in Salt, and so put it down the said hole as farre as it will go, and so stitch up the said hole again, and then give him of Lungwort in Ale to drink. And so hee shall recover, God willing.

#### Against the Biting of a mad Dog.

If a Beast be bitten with any mad Dog, ye shall take Garlick and bruise it, and then put it into a thin Linnen cloath, and then all to rub and chafe the bitten place therewith, and it will do well. Some do squirt into the holes or wash the wound with water and Salt, long mixt befoze together, which is also a good remedy. Another, ye shall wash and rub the bitten place with the May-brod leaves stamped, and also give unto the beast the iuyce thereof, mixt with Ale or Beere. Another, Take the Root of the great Wurte, and bruise that with some Salt, and so lay it to the bitten place, and this will helpe either Man or Beast. Well probed.

Against

Against the Pallet of a Beasts mouth  
inflamed.

**T**here will sometimes both Ox & Cow have the pallet of their mouth inflamed so, that he cannot well eat his meat, which Beast oft times will gibe a sigh, standing and weighing more on y<sup>e</sup> one side then on the other. The remedy is, ye must cast him, & then race him on the pallet of his mouth, and make him there to bleed well. Then ye shall gibe him of red fitches without husks mixt with green leaves, or some other green hearbs, but gibe him no dry meat till he be thorough whole thereof.

## To help the Clowse.

**T**he Clowse is a kind of grieve which doth commonly happen on the necke of labouring Cattell, which doth not so much molest them, as doth the inflammations, because they do not thereby leaue their work. For which thing it shall be sufficient to put & dissolue thereon of Lamp Oyle, and Sape mixt together & so annoynt. This is good, but the best shall be, if ye can to let him rest till he be whole: and ye must looke also that his Pecke doe not then lose his haire, which is sone lost when they labour in the haine, or else sweat. For when his Peck begins once to pill (then feare the other) ye shall then rub it with the powder of old Tyles finely made: and before ye do unyoke, cast of that powder on their necks, and when it is well dyled on, then chafe thereof all over with the aforesaid Oyle, and so ye shall alwayes keep your Oxen in good order from time to time.

Remedies for the Hoofe of a Beast that  
is hurt.

**I**f the Hoof of your beast be hurt at any time, either with Coulter or Share, or any part of her Claws hurt, ye shall  
D D 2 make

make a salve of Pitch, old Grease, mixt with the powder of Brimstone melted together, and with an hot Iron, melt that on the soze Hoofe or Cle. This Medicine is good also when the beast hath been hurt either with stubble or spel of wood, & if there be any little gone in it will draw it forth, but if his foot be hurt farre within the flesh by some sharp Stone or other thing, then ye must open the wound, then scere it with some hot Iron, and then bath it thre dayes together morning and evening with warme Vinegar, and wrap it with a Buskin of Wisme if you can. And if the Beasts leg be hurt with the share, then ye shall lay to it of the hearb called Sea-lettis, or Sea-spurge mixt with Salt called in Graeke Tichimolus, for that is good to heale it, and is also good to heale the hurt in the foot, as well as on the Leg. But first ye must alwayes wash it with hot Urine of men, and then burne ready a fagot of some wood abroad, and as soone as the smoke is out, make the beast tread on hot Embers with his soze feet: then annoynt it with Tarre, and old Grease mixt together. It were good also to wash your beasts feet often with cold water when ye unyoke them, for that shall keepe them from foundring, and then after that to annoynt and chase their pasturns, and betwixt their Claws with old Grease, and they shall doe well.

Also if an Oxe do halt of his foot through taking of some great cold, ye must then wash it with warme Urine, but if it come through the cause of blood, or an Impostume in the foot, then ye shall chase and rub it first well to stir the blood, and then raze the skin with a sharp razor above the Claws, and make it bleed and wash it with a little Urine and Salt, and if it will not so heale but descend upon the foot ye must then open the Top of the Hoofe unto the quicke, and make the bloud thereto come forth then lay his foot as is aforesaid, or make a Buskin that no water or other thing get in to hurt the place, till it be whole.

Likewise if an Oxe be cut or grabelled in the foot, the help is: Ye shall bath him with warme Urine, and then annoynt him with Tarre, and old Grease melted together, and

and there is nothing better to use before ye do unyoke, then to rub and chafe their Feet with old fresh Grease.

If the feet of an Ox do open and chap, so that the horn do crack and cleave, ye shall bath it well first with warme Vinegar and Salt, and Oyle mixt together. Then lap it well for a day or more, and put thereon a Plaster of old Grease and Pitch melted together. And so it will heale again and do well: And when his hoofes are broken, ye shall cover & wrap them with Linnen steeped in Vinegar, Oyle, and Salt; for three dayes still renew it in laying to the said Medicine. Then on the fourth day melt Pitch & old Grease together, and put it thereon with y<sup>e</sup> bark of a Pine Apple tree clean polished: And when it beginneth to heal, ye shall rub it all over with the Soot of the Chimney, & let it heale, but if ye make small account thereof, there will Wormes ingender some in the Soze, and make it fall to a Coldnesse, if ye wash it not on mornings with cold water: So if this will not heale it, ye shall then bruise of Horehound, Leeks, and Salt together, & so lay it thereto, and this will some kill the wormes: And when the Soze is well cleansed, ye shall lay thereon a plaster of Tow, mixt with Pitch, Oyle, and old Grease, and so annoynt it all over with the same, to keepe the flies away, and so it will doe well.

To help the Bruise on the Shoulder  
of a Beast.

Sometimes by long travaile, a labouring Ox in treading on the hard ground, or by some crush against Posts or Gates will be lame on their shoulders, and oftentimes soze bruised: If this happen in any Beast, ye shall then let him bloud on the fore-legs. If he be hurt in the hinder Hips, ye shall then let him bloud on the hinder legs, and then wash and bath it with warme Vinegar, Salt & Oyle mixt together, or bath his shoulder with Pisse and Gallowes boyled together. If these doe not help, then if ye launce it a little, and then lay a plaster of Pitch thereon, it will heale.

## Against stinging with Adders or Snake.

**W**hen any Beast is stung with an Adder, or bitten with a Snake, it will so ranckle, that the beast may sone die thereof, if there be not remedy sone had. Against any biting thereof, ye shall bruiſe the root of the great Bur with Salt, and so lay it to, & it will take away the venome. Another better, which is, take of the roots of the sharp pointed three leaved Graſſe, wch beareth long ſweet leaues, and rough: mixe the ſupce thereof with Wine, & giue it to the beaſt, or caſt it into his mouth, & beat the leaues with Salt and lay it to the ſore: If ye cannot haue the green hearb, bruiſe the ſeed with Wine & giue it him, or bruiſe ſtalks and roots, and then mix it with Beale and Salt, & honied water plaſterwiſe laid thereon. Another, ye ſhall take ſixe pound of the tender crops of an Aſh-tree well beaten, & then mixt with 3. pints of Sallet-oyle in ſo much Wine, then ſtrain it and giue it the beaſt. Alſo take of the ſaid Aſh-tree crops, and beat them with Salt, & lay it to the venommed place. If a beaſt be ſtung, ye ſhall rub the place with the Oyle of a Scorpiſe (wch ye ſhall haue at the Apothecaries) or giue him Hope mixt with Vinegar, & waſh the place with Bur-leaues ſod in water, or green ſtampt with Sale and laid to.

## The Ringing of the Field-spider.

**I**f a beaſt be ſtung with the Field-spider, it will ſoon cauſe Inflammation, and grow to an Impoſtume, if there be not ſpædy remedy. A beaſt being ſtung wth the Field-spider, or bitten with Ants, albe it they be but ſmall wormes, yet their venom is great, & will put the beaſt to great danger, & therefore ſome do hold, in picking that place with a laten naule, and then mix Hope & Vinegar, and chaſe the place therewith. Alſo ſome ſay if the Field-spider be taken & put in Oyle-olive, and ſo die therein & rot, if a beaſt be ſtung of him, anoynt it with the Oyle, and it will helpe, & ſo like of other

other venemous wo2mes put to Dyle. But if you have none other, so that the wound shew faire, and without danger, ye shall but take of bruised Cummin mixed with tarre and so anoynt therewith: and plaister it thereon also, and it will take away the danger thereof. But if it doe grow inward to an Impostume, then it shall be best to burn it with the Tarre and Dyle, and so it heales. Some lays a live Spider in clay earth, and when it is dry, hangs it about the beasts neck, and by (they say) it preserves the beast from being stung therewith. Againe, some do stampe Wozme-wood or Sothernwood with vinegar, and claps it on the venomed place, & it helps. And so take beaten camemile with hony & lay it to, doth the like. Also take of houseleke, stamp it with Ale and give it to drinke, or the water of a Lilly root, bruised and strained in water and vinegar, and so give it to the beast.

#### Remedies against the diseases of the Eyes.

**T**he Eye of a beast is tender, & is a principall member, as soon may be hurt many wayes. The griefes thereof are commonly healed with hony, but when they doe inflame and swell, then they mix of the meale of pure Wheat with honey water and lay it to. Also if an Eye have the haw in the eye, ye shall heale it with the salt of y<sup>e</sup> mountain, or Spanish salt, or Sal Armoniaek, or Sal Capodocce: any of these beaten into a fine powder, and blown (with a quill thre mo2nings) into his eye. Likewise the powder of the root called in Greeke, Silphion, in English, Bellstoz of Spaine, mixt with ten times so much Sal Armoniaek, well beaten together, and then blow thereof into his eye, and it destroyes the haw. Also the said root beaten with the oyle of Mastick tree, and there with anoynt the Eye. Likewise for the Haw, or sore Eye, some make a round rouler of Sal Armoniaek, mixt with some honey, and laves it round about his eye, and anoynt thereon all round about with tarre resolved with Dyle olive, for feare of Wexs coming to his Eye.

eye, or to annoynt his eye with the Oyle of Camomile.

Also the leaves and stalks of Crowfoot, to be bruised and laid to the eye, doth take away the Paw or Web, & is good against a lash on the eye.

Stroke in the  
eye.

Again, if a Beast be stricken on the eye, ye shall take of the juyce of Centoꝝ herb, & mixe it with a little Honey, and therewith annoynt his eye, and lay it also plaster-wise thereon. Doe this against night, for feare of Bees troubling the Beast: Also if the eye of your beast chance to be stricken, ye shall take y<sup>e</sup> crumbs of Wheaten bread, or other, and then soke it a little in Rose-water, or Vinegar, and so lay it to his eye, and it will helpe. But if it swell or inflame, then the best is to take Sothernwood, and bruise it with a little Vinegar and lay it to. Also the juyce of Dimpernell is good against all griefes of the eyes, or to be mixed with other things.

Eyes inflamed.

Also against the watering of Beasts eyes, as sometimes they will runne with water. The remedy therfore; they use to lay on the brows or eye-lids, the meal of dried Barly, tempered with water & Honey. Also the seeds of wild Parsnips, or the juyce of wild Daisies mixed with honey, and so annoynt: which is also good against any pain in the eyes, then annoynt it all over with Tar, and Oyle mixt as aforesaid, for feare of Bees coming to the honey, and troubling the beast. And also for the Web in the eye, ye shall take of the white Salt, and wrap it in a linnen cloath & then rake it under the embers, and burn it, and then take and beat it to small powder, and with a Goose-quill blow thereof into the eye, and then hold your hand thereon a while, and yee shall see it water, and thereupon amend. Also the juyce of Dragons to annoynt the eye, is good against the Web in the eye, and the juyce of the wild Lettice doth the like. Also for a sore eye in a beast you shall spurt Beere therein, or chew the leaves of ground Ivy, & drop it into his eye, and the juyce thereof in like manner, mixt with a little powder of Ginger.

Web in the  
eye.

If a Beast chance to swallow an Horse-leech  
Worm in the water.

**I**f any Beast doe swallow downe an Horse-leech in his  
Drinke, it will molest and trouble him greatly. For the  
said horse-leech will commonly stay in his throat, and there  
suck blood, and so will inflame the place in causing his  
throat bowle to swell, whereby he will sore trouble the  
beast in letting the passage of his meat, so that he cannot  
swallow, nor take his wind. If the lye too farre within,  
that one cannot take it forth with his hand: He must then  
put a quill or some Cane into the beasts throat, filled with  
hot Oyle and let it go downe, and squirt Oyle, and so soon  
as the Oyle doth touch but the worm, she will fall off. He  
may also get her off, by letting the fume of the pumasse un-  
to her (which is in Jaly a stinking worme, like a Tyke)  
which as soon as she feeleth the fume she will fall off. But  
if she do hold and stay in the stomach and intrals, then ye  
must give the Beast hot Vinegar, which will kill her, and  
this will serve as well for other Cattell.

For the Dew-bolne in Cattell.

**T**he Dew-bolne in Ox, or Cow, or other beast, is swell-  
ling his body as much as the skinned may hold, which  
swelling is very dangerous to some for bursting: it is got-  
ten by eating of the tryfole grasse in a deawy morning (as  
some say) which grasse maketh him so to swell, as though  
he would burst. The remedy is: some do chase and drive  
him softly up and downe to make him to dung. If that  
doe not help, then ye must rake him and take forth his  
dung. If that will not serve, then they strike a hole with  
a knife or bodkin, to the hollow part of his back above his  
flanke, and so thereat let out the wind by a feather or quill,  
and so he will recover againe: But beware ye strike him  
not so deepe that ye pierce his guts. Also to give him Rue,  
or garden Tansey, stampd with wine and Ale to drinke, is

very good for the same, or give him a quart of verjuice.

This disease cometh to a beast that is greedy, and is put into a pasture of such rank grasse, in eating so greedily thereof, that his sides will swell as big as his back-bone: and sometimes the one will swell more then the other, and yet few dye thereof: and when a beast is so, he may not be hastily driven nor laboured till he be asswaged, for it is but a substance of winde within his body. Therefore it is good to drive him softly, and suffer him not to lye: some do strike him (as aforesaid) so deepe, till the wind doe come forth, for the wind doth remaine betwixt his body, and the great paunch and his bowels.

Wherefore it is a bill to put an hungry beast into such pasture, after a dew or raine, for the said grasse is then so sweet and windy withall, that it filleth them full of winde, and when they be swolne, some beasts will stand still, some will lye downe: but if you can raise him, stir him up and downe to make him dung: for if he doe once dung, he is past danger for that time: but if he lye and will not rise, ye shall strike him in with a sharpe knife or bodkin, three inches deepe or more: If that will not serue, thrust him so deepe till winde come forth. When doe some put a quill into the hole, or a feather that the wind may come forth thereat the better: and when you shall see him well flaked, ye may then lay a little Tarre thereon to keepe off the flies and he shall doe well againe in short space.

Against the stinging of a Hornet, Waspe,  
or Breefe-flie.

If your Ox or Cow be stung with waspe or hornet, the remedy is, ye shall temper Ceruse, or red lead in water, and then rub the stung place therewith: it is good also to sprinkle the place where the beast hath fed, with the decoction of bay leaves sod in water. Also how to make that the breefe-flie shall not annoy, & bite cattell when they labour, which

which is, ye shall rub the Beast with the decoction aforesaid mentioned. Also if any be stung or bit therewith, ye shall rub and wet that place all over with the froth and spittle of the said beast, and that will help. Likewise take the juice of Mallows, and rub and anoint the place therewith and it will help: or to anoint the beast with Sallet oyle, which will make that the fly will not touch the beast, where he is so anoynted.

#### How to kill Lice or Ticks on Cattell.

If your Oxen or Kine, or ether Cattell be lowlye, which cometh sometime by some sickness or surfeit in taking cold after a great wet or Raine: Sometimes by great poverty, whereby so long as they are vexed with Lice, so long they will not prosper. The remedies are: ye shall take the decoction of Wild-Olive mixt with Salt, then rub chafe the Beast all over therewith. Another, Take of quick silver killed in Oyle-olive and mixt well together, and therewith annoynt. Another, Take the roots of white Elebozy, otherwise called Priesting powder, and mixe of that powder with Oyle, and therewith. Another, Take of Bearesfoot hearbe, stamp it and then straine it with Vinegar, then mixe therewith. Another: Take Garlick and stamp it, and mixe it with Penneroyall, then giue it y<sup>e</sup> Beast with Ale or Beere, and let him bee chafed a while after. Another: Take the seed of Stabesacre dried, and beaten into fine Powder, then mix it with Oyle of fresh grease, & anoynt the beast therewith. All these before-mentioned are good to kill both lice and Ticks: for so long as your Cattell are troubled therewith they will prosper smally although you feed them well, yet a good Pasture may do much hereunto, but it will bee long ere they recover. And some doe lift Ashes on their backs, and then Raine killeth them.

Ce 2

Against

Against any swelling in Oxe or Cow, by eating of  
some venenous hearbs.

**A** Beast by chance sometime will haue a swelling in all  
his body, which may come by eating of some vene-  
mous hearbe, or such like, as of the ground-thistle, called in  
Latine Camelion, or of henbane, hemlock, or toadstole. If  
he haue eaten any of these, they will make him to swell,  
that he will leaue his meat. The remedy is, ye shall chop  
very smal a good handfull of Wormwood, then stir it with a  
good quart of Ale or beere, & so giue it to the beast: if once  
giuen do small profit, giue it him againe twice or thrice:  
and some doe then stir him up and down a good while after.  
Others do keep him in the house an hour or two after, & so  
he hath done wel again. Also Peugh is a bil for cattel to eat.

Against the Swelling of Cattell by eating of greene  
Coine.

**I**f your Cattell do chance through negligent Keepers to  
break into your cozne, and eate thereof when it is nigh  
ripe (as in the time of harbest) of Barly, Rye, or Wheat it  
will make them mightily to swell, by lping and sprouting  
in their malues, which thing will put them in danger of  
death, if they haue not some remedy. The help is, some doe  
use to dribe them up and downe till they see them allwage  
thereof, and so they recover: and some doe throw a new  
layd Egge, shell and all into the beasts mouth and breaks  
it in his mouth, and makes him to swallow it with Ale.  
Againe, some other doe take a handfull of the tops of Pet-  
tles, beaten well and then strained with wine, or honied  
water, and so giuen. Also, to take of Anniseeds bruised and  
giuen in wine or strong ale, or to take a handfull of the leaues  
of Aron, or Cuckospit, mixt with salt and vineger, and gi-  
uen. Likewise take of Juniper leaues or greene berries,  
stamp and straine them with Wine, and then giue it the  
beast. All these aforesaid, haue been proued good remedies  
against such Swellings; or take Soot, and the hard row  
of

of a red Herring, beat them, and giue it the beaſt in Ale or Beere.

To helpe the Garget in the Throat of a beaſt.

If the Garget be in the Throat of a beaſt, it will trouble him ſore, which is commonly taken by ſome great drought for want of water, and it will cauſe a ſwelling vnder the Soules or ſides thereof. The remedy is ye ſhall caſt him, then cut and ſlea the ſkin on both ſides ſo far as any ſwelling doth appeare. So done, then take of the whitest ſifted Aſhes that ye can, and mixe them with the grounds of ſtale old piſſe, and ſtirre them both well together: Then alſo waſh the fleſhy ſore therewith: Some do boyle it on a ſice, and then waſh therewith: both the wayes are good. Then ye ſhall cloſe up the ſkinne againe, and annoynt it with Tar and Oyle mixt. Alſo ye may lay thereon a plaſter of Pettles bruised and mixt with Salt, and ſo it will heale it Or a plaſter of Pitch likewise.

To helpe the Garget on the tongue.

The Garget on the tongue of the Beaſt, ore or colu, is a certaine ſwelling vnder the root of the tongue, which cauſes his head and face to ſwell, and to froth alſo at the mouth, he will then forſake his Deat in often gulping in his Throat. The remedy is, ye muſt caſt him on ſome ſtraw for bruſing, and then take forth his Tongue, and with the point of a ſharpe knife ſlit along the middle veine vnder an Inch right from the root of his Tongue, and there will come forth blacke bloud and water, which cometh from the Gall. Then ye ſhall rub the place with Salt and Vinegar mixt, and ſo he will recover and doe well againe. After probed.

To help the Blaine of the  
Tongue.

**T**he blain of the Tongue which will come to some cattell, is a certain bladder growing aboue on the root of his tongue against the pipe, which grieue at length in swelling will stop the wind, and commeth at first by some great chafing and heat of the Stomack: whereby (as some doe iudge) it doth still grow and increase by more heat. For commonly it commeth in Summer, and not in Winter. For when the Beast is hot, and hath bene chaff, then if there be any, it will rise and swell full of wind and Water, so when it is full and bigge withall, it will stop the Beasts wind, which ye shall perceiue by his gaping and holding forth his tongue, and foaming at his mouth. If then there be not speedy remedy he will suddenly fall and dye. The remedy is, to cast him, and take forth his Tongue, and slit the Bladder, or breake it thereon, then softly wash it with Vinegar and a little Salt, so he shall do well againe.

This Blain on the Root of the tongue commeth by great chafing and fast driuing, and for want of water they take a heat, and so riseth the blaine; which Cattell will suddenly die thereof, specially fat Cattell, and they will soonest haue the Blaine. Some Beasts will haue many under the Tongue: Therefore ye must prick them with an Aule, if ye haue no other Toole, and then chafe them so with your hand that ye break them all. For the breaking doth helpe as aforesaid. Then pisse thereon if ye haue no other thing, and so he shall doe well. Often proued.

Against the Garget comming by any push, or  
other stroke.

**W**hereas the Garget breedeth in Cattell upon some bruise, or some push, ye shall cut a hole where the bruises, & make it hollow to the bottom thereof: Some do  
but

but cut and raze the skinne so farre as the bruise goeth, and make and have ready of beaten Garlick, and the Tops of the sharp Pettles, with some rusty Bacon on the outside, put all well together, then put it into the same hole: then shall ye bath it twice a day as followeth. Take the grounds of Ale or Beer, and the Soot of a Chimney, of white sifted Ashes of black Sope if ye can, mix all these well together, and stir it well over the fire, and make it warme: Then bath and wash the soze place therewith: Well proved. Another way: Some do cut an hole on the upper side of the bruise, or soze, and then make it hollow: then they take of Gols grease and black Sope, with a little Tarre, and then boyle them all together in a Pan, and powze it boyling hot into the hole. Use this once a day, and this will heale it. Often proved.

Against the Garget in the  
Maw.

**T**he Garget in the maw of Cattell is an evil thing, which is gotten when they covet to eat of Crabs or Acorns lying under Trees. Which thing sometimes they will swallow some whole without breaking or chewing, which fruit lyeth whole in their Paw, and will not digest. But in continuance of time they will grow and sprout in their Palves (as some say) which thing will cause the beast to swell, and seeme as though something did sticke and trouble his Gullet and throat: and those beasts that have eaten much thereof, and lie in their Palves undigested, are like to die thereof if remedy be not sone found. The remedy is, ye shall take a good quantity of whole mustard-seed, and mixe it with wine or strong Ale, & give it to the Beast. Another, Chop & then bruise small a good handful of Camomile, and then mix it with Wine, & give it the beast: Another, Take a handful of Juniper crops or berries cut them, and then all to bruise them smal: Then mix it with Wine, and give it.

Another.

Another. Take Penny royall, Rocket, Garden mint, of each in like quantity, stampe them together, then put a pint of Wine or Ale, and let it stand close covered all night; on the morrow straine it, & then give it the beast. Another. Take a good handfull of the Rots and leaves of Auens, wash them and then lay them to soke all a night in Wine, or strong Ale, then on the morrow stamp them, and then straine them, and so give it the Beast. All these remedies are found good to digest, and also for the cleansing of the Paw.

To help an Oxe or other Beast that have  
lost their Guide.

**I**f an Oxe, or other Beast by chance doe lose his Guide, as sometimes a Beast, by some occasion his guide will fall from him out of his mouth & then he will mourn, and have no stomach to eate, because the Meate which he hath already eaten will not digest. The remedy is, some do use to take part of the guide out of another beasts mouth, which is of like Nature: as if it be a Cow that do want her guide, to take some of the guide of another Cow and give it her to swallow downe, & by that meanes she will do well again: and so the like of other Beasts. Also again, some do take a handfull of the hearbe called Tudwort, which they bruise small and put a quantity of fat thereunto, and so convey it into the Beasts mouth to swallow that hath lost his guide, and so he will amend. Again, some take a peece of Leaven, and put that into the Beasts mouth as aforesaid, and so hee will thereby recover again: Also when a beast hath lost his Guide cleane, ye may give him some of a Wall mist with Urine & make him swallow it. Or ye shall take the crum of Bread, and mire it with a little Salt, and therewithall to rub and chafe the tongue of the beast; but if he have so remained long, whereby he is farre spent & wasted, then ye shall take forth his tongue and prick the veine there under with an Ayle in two or three places, & so it will bleed, and thereby he will recover againe and do well. Often proved.

To

To help Calves that have the Wormes.

**C**alves will oft times have Wormes in their bellies, which will annoy them much, and at length kill them: And when they are so troubled therewith, ye shall see some run up and downe, not to stand or abide long in a place, and some will lye down, shake and quiver, and straightway up againe and about: And some will hold their heads oft toward their sides, and those Wormes in Calves doe breed of an ill digesting of their Meate: wherefore ye must often see unto them that they come not into the foresaid danger: But when any Calves have them, to help thereof, ye shall take lumpin pease half raw, and bruise them, & then make them into small pieces, and cast of those into his throat, and make them to swallow them, so many as ye shall see good. Do this a mornings, and it will kill them. Another, Take Sothernwood or Wormewood, and bruise thereof with dry figs and with fetches, and make the like paste thereof and cast them into his Throat. Another, Take one part of old Grease, with three parts of Hyssop, then mix and beat them all well together, and then give it as the other aforesaid. Another, Take of the succie of Dogehound beaten & stamp with a quantity of leek blades and so made in Pellets, and given. Another, take of wormseed and bruise it well, and give it in wine; and so give the powder of sabin mixt with wine or ale; if those wormes be in the mawes of calves, then ye shall give them of the oyle of Sabine mixt with a little new milke, and that will kill them being in the maw of any beast. Also weaning of calves, sometimes will breed Wormes when they come to grasse, soone after they be weaned. Which thing ye shall perceive when they are troubled therewith, for they will then tremble and shake, and sometimes lye and spawle on the ground. The remedy is; Ye shall then take a quantity of the soot of a chimney, with the like quantity of sowre leaven, and a little tarre; then stirre and mix all these together well, in a pint

of new milk from the Cow, and to give unto each calfe a portion thereof. Use this for foure mornings together: A pint of Milk will serue foure calves at a time. Also some do give them of Tanners owle to drinke, and so thereby they recover and doe well.

#### Wormes in Cattell.

**I**f your cattell be troubled with wormes, ye shall stamp a good handfull of wormwood then straine it with Ale or Beere, and give it to the beast with a horn. Another, Take a handfull of Bor leaves, cut them, and stamp them, & give them with Ale or Wine: Or take the powder thereof, and mix it with new milk, and so give it. Another, Take of the hearb called Prickmadame, which groweth on Houses or Walls, a handfull: Then beat the leaves and tops thereof and so mix it with Ale or Beere, and so give it with a horn. Another, Stamp a good handfull of Mugwort, then straine it with Ale and give it. Or take a handfull of Red Pettles, which carrieth the red flower, called Archangell, stamp and straine thereof into ale or beere, and then give it. Another, take a handfull of Woodlodge, or wild sage: bruise it, then straine it with ale, and so give it. Another, take and stamp of garden crosse, straine therof into Ale or Beere, & so give it. Another, Take and stamp Garlick, and mixe it with milke or Ale, and so give it. All these are speciall good against Wormes in Cattell.

Against paine in the feet of Cattell, called of some Husbands the Foule.

**S**ometimes cattell wil have a disease betwixt their cleasles called the Foule: which grieve sometimes wilbe in the forefeet, and sometimes in the hinderfeet. Which grieve will commonly swell, & make the beast to halt. The remedy is, we must halt him, & the hind his foure feet together: Then take a Rope of Haire, or some other hard twist rope and draw it up and down betwixenys cleasle till ye make it bleed

bleed well. Then take some Tarre, and mire it with some hony, and Grease, and lay to thereof. Then put a Buskin, or such like thing on his foot, to keep it from dirt, and then ye may put him into some cleane pasture till he be whole, or keepe him in the house, and he will be whole in two or thre dayes againe.

There will breed also (as some Husbands say) a like grieve and swelling betwixt the Clæs of Cattell, call'd the *Uloome*, that will grow to a bunch, and so to Ripenesse, and at length it will breake, and it will bee in the mi<sup>st</sup> of his Clæs, & so it will make him halt so much, that he cannot well goe. When ye shall see it so big, ye shall then lance it, and so let forth the corrupt matter: then annoynt it with Tar and fresh Grease mirt, and then keep his feet cleane for two or thre dayes, and it will be well againe.

To helpe a Beast that pisseth  
bloud.

**S**ome do take a Loch fish quicke, and put it downe the Beasts throat. If that help not, ye shall take of bloudwort Hearb, of Sherheards purse, or Knotgrasse, of each a like quantity, stampe them all together; then straine them with a quart of the milke of one coloured Cow, and put thereunto a little Runnet made of the said milke, and mire therewith the Leaven of browne bread, then straine them altogether, and so give it with a Horn. Use this morning and evening eight or Ninedayes, and it will help. Or give him of the powder of y<sup>e</sup> rinds of Pomegranets, or the powder of Husks of Acornes in red wine, and it will also help. Likewise the shell bones that lye in arable Lands (as aforesaid) first burnt, and then beaten into fine powder, and put into the Runnet of milk, and so stirred well together, and so given the Beast. Use this thre or foure dayes morning and evening, and he will doe well.

To helpe the shewt of Blood in  
Cattell.

**T**he shewt of Blood commonly is to those beasts which have been evil kept, and then to be put to feed in good pasture those will so feed that they will soon wax fat, and so increase in blood that they will cast their blood at their mouthes. The remedy is, when ye shall see any so, ye shall cut off the tops of both their Eares, and then with a small sticke ye shall all to beat them, and that will cause them to bleed the more, and thereupon he will amend: some let blood on the necke, which is very good if ye can find well the veyne; and some let blood on the veyn under the Eye; All these are very good against the said shewt of Blood. Also some doe take of the hearbe Tormentill, stamp and strained with Ale or beere, and so given, which have been proved also very good against the same.

The Warnell-wormes in  
Cattell.

**S**ome cattell will have certain worms sticking within their skin on their backs, called of some Husbandmen Warnell-wormes, which worms come commonly unto beasts that are poore and leane by great poverty, which worms will stick as on their backs along on both sides thereof, a foot deepe or more, which are evil for the sale of the skin, if it be then taken. Also yee shall perceive them within the skin of the beast like small knots or knobs, and they will shew and appear over the skin like black spots. The remedy is, some do pick them forth with the point of an awle, yet some husbands say, as the beast doth grow in fatnesse, those Warnell-wormes will weare away, and his skin will be againe as sound as any others.

Also some cattel will have a disease run in divers parts of their bodys and legs, called of some husbands, the warts bred.

breed. The remedy is this, yee must cast him and bind his foure feet together, and with a hot iron (if the waribreed be long) seare them off hard by the body, but if it be but beginning, and is but flat and low, then ye shall but lay the hote iron thereon, and seare it but to the skin, then anoint it with tarre and fresh grease mixed, and so it will heale for ever.

#### Against the Gout in Cattell.

**C**ertaine cattell will have (as some husbands do say) a grieffe in their feet somtimes, which they call the Gout and commonly it will be on their hinder feet, which thing will cause the beast to goe very stiffe behind. For which grieffe I could never find any person that could helpe it, but the best is. for to bathe his feet in cold water, and then to put him into good pasture and make him fat, and so sell him.

#### Against loosnesse of Teeth in Cattell.

**Y**e shall understand when the teeth of any beast is lose, so long he cannot well eate his meat, which somtimes commeth through the feeblenesse and weaknes of the beast, and sometimes by a cold rheume gotten by lying in some cold and wet place, or by eating of much watery grasse. The remedy is, yee shall cast him, and draw blood on his gummies, and so he will amend: some doe rub and anoynt his gummies (after his blood letting) with Strong Sack and so he doth amend. Also some doe slit his tayle underneath his rump, and bind thereto a little bruised Garlick, and so he will recouer and doe well againe.

#### Against Milting of a Beast.

**T**he milting of an Ox, Cow, or other beast is called of Husbandmen when he will suddenly lye downe if yee stop ne ver so little being at plough or Cart. Which grieffe is gotten by some blow or soze stripe (with Goade or such

like) on the Beast side: which makes him to faint and fall downe. When any shall so lye downe, yee shall not raise him up suddenly again, but ye shall then turne him, and lay him on the other side, and so let him rest a while, and so he will recover againe: When if ye can bruise of the barke of an Ash, and straine it with Ale, and so give it him to drinke, and he shall do well.

To helpe any Beast that cannot Pisse.

**T**hey use to give an Ore that cannot pisse, warm water mixt with branne, which is good to make him pisse: also take and stampe of Sowthistle, and then heat it with ale or beere, and so give it to the Beast. Another, take and bruise a handfull of Anniseeds. Another, take and bruise of Cardus benedictus, then straine it with White wine, and so give it to the Beast. Any one of these aforesaid is good to be given a beast when he cannot pisse, to provoke him therunto.

Against the flowing of the Gall in Cattell.

**T**he flowing of the Gall in Ore or other beast, the chief occasion thereof some Husbands cannot well tell, except it should bee the abundance of choller, increasing by great travell in hot times, and so thereby filling the Gall with choller, and thereupon it flowes all over the body and so increaseth the Yellows or jaundice. The remedies, are, some take of gulwort hearb, which is bitter, and then stamp a handfull thereof, and so straine it with a quart of Ale, and so give it unto the beast two or three mornings. Another, ye may also give the juice of Wormwood or Sothernwood stampd and strained with Ale, so give it as the other. Another, take the inner Greene barke of Elder a handfull & soke it all one night in Beere or Ale in a vessell close covered: then strain it in the morning, & so give it the beast. Another, some do give the juice of Bugwort mixt with ho-

nted water, with a little saffron, and so giben. All these as  
foresaid are vny good agaiust the flowing of the gall, and  
also for the Jaundise. Another for y same take the yolk of  
an egge and mix it with some hard soot, powder of pepper  
and honey, and put the Egge-shell and all down his throat,  
then geve him a little Chamber-lye, and he shall do well.

Qd. Willie.

To helpe a Beast that is goared.

**I**f any beast chance to be stricken and goared with some  
of his fellowes, for feare some Gargell come thereof, or  
some Impostume do grow and breed thereof. The remedy,  
yee shall take Ashes finely sifted, and mixe them with the  
grounds of Ale or beere, and make it thick like a batter, and  
so lay it thereon, use this and it will heale it. Another, some  
do take unto the said grounds or dregs of Ale of unquench-  
ed lime finely beaten, and so mixe it well together, and lay  
it thereto. Another, some put in stead of Ashes, red Earth or  
Maker, mixt likewise together as aforesaid, and so lay it to  
plasterwise. Another, likewise a plaster of Pitch is also  
good to be layd thereon. And the other aforesaid are all ve-  
ry good to heale a beast that is goared or hurt.

Against the turning disease in Cattell.

**T**here is a certaine disease comes to some cattel called  
of Husbandmen the turning disease, which disease in  
eating their meat will cause them to turne about, and let  
their feeding soze: and also those cattell which are troubled  
with this disease are alwaies in danger to fall into pits and  
ditches and such like. The cause is, there lies a bladder  
under the scull in the forehead of the beast, which is between  
the braine and the Brain-pan, which bladder must be taken  
forth, or hee will never amend, but in the end he will dye  
thereof. The remedy is, yee must cast him, and bind his  
foure feet together, and then yee shall feele all ober softly  
with your thumbe thrusting thereon, and where yee find  
the softest place, a little there above yee shall cut  
the

the skin oberthwart foure Inches, and so likewise beneath the soft place. Then also in the midst ye shall cut the skin downwards betwene the two oberthwart cuts, and flea those skinnes on both sides; then turne them up and pinne them with pinnes; then take a sharpe knife, and cut the Brain-pan thereunder two inches broad, and three inches long, but beware your knife goe no deeper then the thickenesse of the braine-pan for piercing the braine, for if ye doe so the beast will dye. Then yee shall take away that cut bone, and ye shall see a bladder thereunder, two inches or more long, of water; which bladder ye shall take away, and see that ye hurt not his braine. So done then ye shall lay downe againe the cut skinne, as before, and sew them fast together; then bind a linnen-cloath three or foure fold, dipt in fresh grease and tarre, and laid thereon, which will keep it from wind and cold, for the space of ten or twelue dayes, which skin will so grow againe, as that he shall be well. And thereupon I have seene (saith my Autho<sup>r</sup>) many recover and doe well. But (for the more certaintie) when a beast is troubled with this disease being fat, or having any reasonable flesh on him, is to kill him, and so there is but small losse. The like disease ye shall have in yong sheepe, which is spoken of in this place.

Things good for Sinewes, and to knit  
Bones.

**W**hen as there shall chauce any bones of your cattell to be broken, ye shall take of the hearb called in Latin Aron, in English, Cuckowspit, stampe thereof with barley-meale, and a litle honey, and so plaister-wise lay it to. Another, take of the hearb called in Latine, Symphytum, in English, Tumpheoy, bruise of the Leaves and root, with a litle hony, and lay it to plaister-wise. Another, take of Parrow and stampe it with swines grease, and plaster-wise lay it to, which will knit not bones onely, but sinewes also. Another, take the tender buds of the Ash-tree, stampe them with

with shel/nailes, or black Snailles, and so lay it to, or take the powder made of the Barke of an Ash-tree, mingle and beat it with the leaves of Cumphorie, and then lay it to. Another. Seeth the barke of an Elm-tree in running water, then bruisse it, and lay it to. All these aforesaid are good to comfort sinewes and for knitting of bones.

To breed Calves, and to Geld  
them.

If ye will breed calves to make young buls, take no calfe that is elibed within the prime which is counted the five dayes after the change, for those will not prove well, as some Husband say. For likewise also any Calfe (or other) then calbed, is not good for to keepe, but to eate, or sell, & among a hundred calves two shalbe sufficient for to make buls, as for all the rest, it shall be best to geld them sone after they are calbed, or at two yeares of Age, and then to lay upon the sores the Ashes of Ninetwigs burnt, & mixt with litherge And on the third day after, ye may melt of Tar, and mingle of the said Ashes therewith, and anoynt therewith for feare of swelling. Also y manner of gelding of calves Mago doth counsel and say, that calves would be gelded when they are young and tender, and not with any yron but with a cloven hazel sticke, and so pressed together, and then raze the end by little and little till it be consumed. This he taketh to be the best way of gelding when they are young and tender, for this kind of way is done without wound.

For when a calfe is somewhat big, he would better tarry unto two yeares, then to geld him at one yeare, which to geld them is best in Autumne when the Moon is in decreasing, and the signe from the place, yee shall then cast him, and travell his feet together, and before ye touch him with yron, yee must take up his Stones, then take two straight lathes, like Rulers of wood, made like to a paire of barnacles or tongs. Then take up the stones with the Perbes and strings that the Stones doe hang by, then close your  
G g tongs

Horse gelt,  
or Bull.

tongs under betwixt his body and his stones, close them hard together (leaving the stones on the outside thereof) some Gelders make them of yron for the more strength, Then slit the purse first of one cod, and put forth the stone thereat, and cut him off within hard by the said Tongs, and close up the perbes: and so likewise take forth the other stone, and then some do feare it for bleeding too much, and anoint it with fresh grease, and let him goe, but see to cut them in such sort, that ye leave the ends of the string joyning to y<sup>e</sup> said nerves, for thereby ye shall not lose much of his blood, and shal not be at al feminine, nor yet very stout of his members, in leaving still the forme of the male, although the force of ingendring be taken away, the which he will not suddenly lose by and by after he is gelded, for when a horse or bull is gelded, they will (if ye suffer them) rober incontinently, and certainly ingender, but ye shall not suffer any so for to doe for feare least they dye of the bloody flux: but after ye have thus dressed him, ye shall anoint him with fresh grease. Some doe annoynt a ter he is cut, with the ashes of the tender Vine branches, mixed with the scumme of silber, then ye shall give them no drinke for the space of foure dayes, but to eate of greene hearbs, and give him but little therof, for ye shall nourish him as though he were sick, in giving him the crops of trees and greene hearbs. The least danger in gelding an old Beast, is a Boare, all other beasts are more dangerous, being gelded when they are old.

A kind of gelding.  
Some doe use a kind of gelding young calves, or foales (as I have heard) under nine dayes: As soone as the stones descend downe into the cod, they will by & by take him, and knitt softly the purse of his cod, betwixt the stones and his body with a shoemaker's thread, and as the foale doth grow and increase, the stones will consume and weare away which kind of gelding (as I have learned) they doe use in the North parts.

Aristotle saith, it is jeopardy in gelding all kind of cattell being old, except Carabe: and likewise it is best gelding

ding in the increase of the Moone, for it will make them grow faire, larger and bigger then those which are gelded in the wane of the Moone, so that ye geld or splay in a good signe. Also in cutting or letting bloud, these Signes are counted most dangerous, if the Moone have power ober them: as Taurus, Leo, Gemini, Virgo, and the latter part of Libra, and Scorpio, and also the two signes governed under Saturne, as Capricorne and Aquarius; the rest are all good, as Aries, Cancer, Sagitarius, and Pisces, so that the Moone be not in them.

And ye shall note, that if the signe be comming within a day of the cut place, it shall not then be so good to cut without a more danger, as when the signe is once past the place. For a greene wound being newly cut, the signe comming nigh unto it, will cause it to bleed a fresh, being but little moved, or else to grow and breed to some impostumation of bloud or rather humours, which hath been often sene among Cattell, whereby they have dyed thereof, but to geld your Calves when they are but young is counted best. As when they are of six or eight weeks old, for else (as some husbands say) they will not commonly prove so faire nor so good to weane. If any Calse doe swell (after he is new gelded, some doe use to burne one of his stones to powder and so beat it small, and cast it thereon, and some doe mixe it with Beates foot oyle, and so annoint the sore place therewith.

#### The Charge to Keeper and Governour of Cattell.

**T**he keeper and governour of Cattell must alwayes be diligent to foresee that his cattell have meat in due season, and that his stals be cleanly kept, and that no Poultry Hennes, Ducks, or Hogges doe use at any time the said stals; for the feathers of poultry are unwholsome for cattell, and so also the dung breeds the Murren in cattell, as some doe sudge, and the dung also of Hogges doth them no

The labour-  
ring Oxe.

Bull to la-  
bour.

Kine put to  
Bull to la-  
bour.

good, and likewise the lice of Hogs will make them mungie and scabby. Also the keeper ought to rub them daily that labour, and to kembre them with a Card, which will make them the lustier, and to wash their feet with cold water when they labour not, will doe well. Wee shall also know the force and age of an Oxe in visiting his mouth; for he will cast his two foremost teeth within ten moneths of his first yeare, and within six weekes after that, he will cast the two next teeth unto them, & about the end of three yeares hee will change and cast them all. And when they are growne all full up againe, they will be then equall white and long. But when the Oxe beginneth to wax old, they will returne and wax crooked and blacke, and likewise un-equall. Also for Oxen to labour, the blacke Oxe and the red Oxe are best, and the brown or grezeled Oxe are next; the white Oxe is worst of all colours. An Oxe will serue well to labour till he be tenne yeares, not after so good, for he will afterwards wax dull, weake and feeble, wherfore then it were best to feed him and so to sell him. An Oxe will liue well fiftene or sixteen yeares. Also wild Oxen are better to beare a burthen then to labour, for they are neuer so free nor so strong to draw and labour, as the tame Oxen are. Likewise it is not good to labour with any Bull among your Oxen, for he will be stubborn and tullen, and lobes to be a master over the rest, whereby hee will but trouble them. Therefore it shall be alwayes best to keepe the Bulls lusty and fat alwayes to cower your kine, so shall ye still haue faire Calves and large withall; one good and lusty Bull is sufficient for threescore kine.

Also kine to be put to the Bull the best and chiefeest time is in May June and Iuly then the kine should be put to the bull before they be put into any good pasture; for some do say a leane Cow will take & sooner be with calfe then a fat Cow. If a Cow with make desire the Bull, if she be milked incontinent before she will not then take nor yet desire the Bull if she haue no Bull, and leese her make; she will desire the bull about a moneth after again; thus some haue

And also they say the best time to put the Bull with the  
kine is all the month of July : for then the kine will bring  
their calves in V. in the beginning & spring of herbes and  
grasse ; ye need not then constrain her then to take the bull ;  
for the abundance of herbes will provoke and put her in  
heat so that ye shall not then constrain her. A Cow will  
go with calfe ten moneths if a cow refuse or the bull will  
not cover her, ye shall make them have an appetite as it is  
spoken of among horses and mares, as is afore rehearsed :  
And then ye shall diminish her pasture, to the end that the  
abundance of grasse do not make her barren, for a cow be-  
ing fat, will smally desire the bull : & when she hath taken,  
ye may judge by refusing the bull : and also to know whe-  
ther ye shal have a cow calfe or a bull calfe, ye shal under-  
stand, if the bull descend from her on the right side of her.

more then the left, is to judge a Bull calfe: and likewise the contrary, if he descend on the left side. Or if the Cow in descending and lying downe on the right side, is to judge she hath a bull calfe, and if she lye downe on the left side, is to judge a cow calfe. And when yee shall judge she hath taken by refusing the bull, which thing doth not alwayes happen true, for although she hath taken, yet many kine be not satisfied, or some brut beasts will have a voluptuous desire aboue nature, as well as other creatures.

Also to nourish young kine and Calves, in Countries where there is great store of pasture, they may nourish their calves all the yeare. But where there is small store of pasture it will scant suffice them from two yeares to .2. yeares. And ye shall nourish your calves of their Dammes for one yeares space; but that yeare these kine must not be charged with any kind of labour. Also when a cow hath calbed some husbands will after the calfe hath suckt three weekes take away a teat, and milke it cleane; the next weeke another teat, and so the third. Thus they will have milke plenty, and yet many kine will keep milke enough to serve for her calfe. If a Cow passe ten yeares, she is not then so good to bring Calves as before. If a young Cow calve before three yeares, ye shall take away the calfe, and milke her first three dayes together, because she will not then be charged with too much milke. Then milke her no more but let the Calfe have all the rest. If ye will dry up her milke, yee shall annoint her udder all over with Tarre. Kine desire not so much to drinke of the River water as of Pond water, because the water of the river is more cold then the Pond water. Which river water being so cold will chill her within and make her in danger to cast her calfe, if God worke not the contrary. Notwithstanding among all great cattell, the Cow will lightly abide the most cold ayre. Wherefore they commonly let them lye without the doores all the winter in most places and Countries.

The

The government of Cattell, and the ordering of Kine  
with their Calves.

**S**tephanus saith, to order Cattell, and to nourish Kine  
orderly and well, the Husbandman must see himselfe,  
or else have some trusty and skilfull man to look and often  
resort unto his cattell, as Oxen or Kine in the stall or with-  
out, and to feed, or to see that they have sufficient meat and  
water daily at convenient times, morning and evening, and  
to see when any beast is sickly, to help him with medicine :  
and to make their stalls for Cattell to lye in, to set it East  
and West, with windows and doores towards the South,  
and close toward the North, for that is very sharpe and  
cold in the Winter for Cattell : and to strow of beaten  
Salt all over the boards or stones under them, because  
(they say) it is a manifest thing to keepe their bodies in  
health : and they doe strow some Sand or grabell under  
their Cattell on the planks for sliding, whereby they may  
stand the better without sliding, and also to see them to  
have Litter at evening after their labour.

And when yee shall put them forth in the Spring with  
your Kine, yee shall separate the young sucking Calves  
as soone as they have sucked their Dammes, you shall put  
them into some severall house or other place, where they  
shall remain all the day : and when ye will have them suck  
yee shall let them forth to their dammes, and let them  
suck but Evening and Morning, and so shut them up a-  
gaine in the house ; for by this order the Calves shall  
ware more faire, and also sooner fat then coming still with  
their Dammes. Also when a Cow hath calbed, if she be  
not then well kept (although shee be a good Nurse) she  
shall not be able to nourish well her Calf : therefore  
they doe use to give Kine with Calf, of the greene hearbe  
called Mellilot ; they stampe it with some Honey, and lay  
it all night to soake in Milke, and so give it her like a me-  
dicine ; for that is counted marvellous good for a Cow with  
Calf

calfe or other beast. Likewise againe, they do stamp Bease with wine, and so geve it them, and let the Farmers wife as soone as your Calves be taken up, put the milke apart, that Butter and chesse may be made thereof without any wast, and see to alwaies that your Chesse be well and close gathered, in pressing forth clean all the whey (for whey remaining in the curds, will make the chesse war softe, and aire will make it full of holes) and likewise that your pots be well scalded, and clean washed, with other your vessels therunto belonging: or else vessels with chesse-fats, and such like will make your Chesse war softe also. And also that your women servants touch no butter nor chesse having their moneths terms on them, for that is very unwholsome. Noeober, when as ye shall see a labouring Dre that labourerth daily, bate no part of his flesh, but remaines still fat and in good liking, which is no good signe, for he is full of flegme.

Therefore ye shall every eight day open h's mouth, and wash it with his owne pisse, & thereby ye shall draw forth much flegm thereat, which otherwise he would still swallow down. Which flegm oft times will molest and grieve him to eate his meat: For the abundance of flegme doth cause him to have the Catar or Rheume, which ye shall perceive when hee is troubled therewith, by watering of his eyes, for they will seeme very watry: and when they drop water, he will hang downe his Eares. Then ye shall take him & wash his mouth with Wine bruised in white wine, and thereupon rub his mouth with Garlick and fine salt mixt together: so done, then wash his mouth again as before. Some do cleanse the said flegme, with Bay-leaves beaten with the bark of Pomegranates and so mixt with Wine, wash therewith. And other some doe squirt Wine mixt with myrrh into their nostrils: but for the Rheume or Catar, if his eyes do inflame, ye shall but let him blood on the veyne under his Tongue, and so ye shall remedy it.

To

To help the Cow of the Whether'd.

**T**o helpe a Cow that is whetherd, that is, when she hath newly calved, and hath not cast her cleaning, she will die of it shortly after, to make her boyd and cast the same, ye shal take a good quantity of the juice of Wallows, and mixe it with Ale or wine & give it, which is good to repulse the later birth, after the cow hath calved. Another, Take Mugwort, stamp and strain it with Ale, and so give it, which will both cleanse the later birth, & also bring forth the dead calfe within her. Another, Take of Nitolochia, bruiſe it and mix it with Birch and pepper, and then give it with whitewine or strong ale, which doth cast forth the later burthen. Another, stamp a good handfull of Penitoyall, and straine it with ale, and so give it, which will put forth the latter burthen. Another, bruiſe a good handfull of Betony leaves, strained with honied water, and then give it, which doth drive forth the second birth. Also take of Syler mountaine, stamp it, and then strain it with wine and so give it, which is good to cleanse, & drive forth the later burthen. Also they doe use to give when a Cow is whethered, of smoaked barley, which barley is but singed in the straw, and so given, and she will eat thereof. Any one of these aforesaid is good against the said disease: if ye shall see knots in the mouth, then judge she hath not cleaned of her birth: then must ye take them from her, or she will dye.

To help a Beas prickd with a Thorne.

**Y**e shal take a beetle fly, cald of some, a Thumhard, which creepeth commonly on Horse dung, or other dung, At his belly, but kill him not, and lay it to the cut place, where the thorne went in. If any thing will help, this will do it, but some what painfull a while. Another, take the black snail that beareth no shell, bruiſe it and lay it to. Another, shabe the eets of red Roses, & put thereto of black sope, & so lay it to. Another, take Cgrimony, Rue, Barigolds of each a like quantity, stamp them all together mixt with a little salt, and so lay it to. Another, take of the root of Warbery tree, bruiſe  
 h h  
 it

it and lay it to, which will draw forth either thorne or Iron out of the bone.

How to visit and oversee your Cattell from time to time.

**Y**e must often oversee and visit your troupes of Cattell against any infirmity that may dayly hap, and to chuse and to take forth the old Cattell from the young, so must ye likewise take your kine which are barren from the other, because they will beare no more, and yet occupy the place of the bearing kine. Which barren kine ye must either fat them or occupy them to the plough, for they may as well endure labour and travel as the young Dre, because being barren, they are as light. They delight to be in sundry places, in Winter nigh the Sea, and in Sommer to be in thicke shady Woods, and they love more the pasture on mountaines, then on the plaines, and also their hoeses will better indure in Forrest and grasse woods, or in places of Clay, or marish grounds then in hard and stony places.

Things good to purge Cattell.

**T**he powder of ix. or x. leaves of Laurell, or the green leafe thereof beaten and strained with a pint of honied water mixt with a little salt, then strained and given to the beast in the morning: this will purge somewhat strong.

Also the leaves of the alder bruised and sod in water, then strained and so given, doth purge both Choller and flegme downward: And also it doth cleanse water out of the stomack. Also the berries of alder stampt & strained with Ale or beere doth the like. Or the inner rinde which is green, taken and stampt with wine, & so let it stand cold all a night, and then strain it in the morning, & giue it warm. Or likewise the low alder called Danfwort, which will doe the like, and in all points it will purge both choller and flegme, as wel as the other alder: and (as some do judge) it is good to be given to Cattell in the time of plague, or murrain among Beasts.

Like

likewise ye may take of spurge, which gibeth like milk: take a good handfull thereof, stamp it and then straine it with a pint or more of water and Vinegar in like portion, and so giue it: this will purge both choller and flegme. Also xx. or xxx. of the seeds thereof sod in honied water mixt with a little Salt, then bruisse them and so giue it, which doth purge more stronger.

Another: Ye may take a good handfull of Centoꝝy, of the Topps, leaues, & flowers, boyle it in a quart of Ale or beer, till a quart be wasted, then straine it, and giue it warme: this ye may minister at all times (if the signe do serue) and it will gently parge both choller and flegm, but chiefly choller, and keepe him in the house, if it be cold 6 houres after.

Another: Ye shall take a handfull of the roots of Polipodium (which is the ferne that groweth on the Dike) chop it small, and then bruisse it, and mix it with a quart of honied water, and so giue it warme. In summer ye may take likewise a good handfull of the branches, and use it as the other aforesaid: This doth purge both Choller and flegme, but chiefly flegme.

Another, ye shall take a good handfull of the crops of broom being green, then bruisse it, and put unto it a pint or more of honied water, or strong Ale, & let it rest so all night, then on the morrow strain it and giue it warme. If ye will make it more strong, ye may put into it two Drams of the seed made into powder, and then it will work more strong.

Another: Take of Sene of Alexandria, with a peniwort of Anniseeds, then boyle them in a quart or more of Ale, till a quarter thereof be wasted: Then strain it, and so giue it warme, this doth purge very gently. Also the sene Romana that is here growing in many Gardens (as at Lambeth house) take 3 drams of the seed made into powder, with the powder of Anniseed, & then mix it with a pint of strong ale, and so giue warme, & this will purge more strong. Another, take sixe drammes of the root of flowerdeluce made into powder, and mixe it with a pint or more of honied water, and so giue it warme. The more proportion ye giue of all

these aforesaid the stronger they will be to worke. Wherefore ye must use them with discretion; And as ye shall see cause, for ye may as well give too much as too little: and the best is, when ye do give them any drinke to purge, to keep them in winter warm after a day and a night, and so they shall do well, God willing. The best signes to give them drinke in, is Scorpio and Pisces.

To make a stall or Frame to give your cattell drinke  
when ye shall see any cause.

**C**olumella saith, it shall be necessary for good husbands to make a stall or frame to give your beasts drinke in when ye shall see need: which ye shall make like unto those that the Farriers or Smiths use for shewing their unruly horses. Which fashion yeshall make thus: ye shall first pitch your foure corner posts fast in the ground, and then planck it in the bottome: then shall ye planck the sides with foure strong barres of a side, well and fast made to the four corner posts, which posts must be at least 7. foot high, then crosse those barres on the outsidies with three crosse bars, and let the entrance be foure wide, so that the beast may easily enter in, and there set with sixe barres behind. So when the beast is in, hee cannot retire nor returne on neither side thereof, nor yet stirre backward nor forward. Also ye must have two barres before, and a strong crosse barre thereon, and as they tye their Horses with their halters, so must ye tye up their hoozes, that ye may give them drinke more easie: Thus being tyed his head fast unto the barre within, his feet shall not then straine without the stall, but rest within on the plancks. And to order him that he shall not offend with his body, ye must bind his body downe to the barres, to make him that he shall not stirre no way to hurt himselfe, but shall be at commandment to receive the Medicine: And this order ye may use for all your great cattell, and thereby keep them in health from time to time.

How

## How to fat an Oxe.

**S**tephanus saith, ye may fat an Oxe soone with fetches, pease, boyled barley, or beans husked and bruised: & ye may also fat an Oxe well with hay, but not to give him as ye give unto a Horse: If ye give him in Sommer of the tender branches of trees, it will refresh him: if ye give an Oxe only acorns, it will refresh him: if ye give an Oxe only acorns, it will make him scabby, ye may labour him in faire times once or twice a week in gentle grounds, and to labour him now & then a little for exercise, it will make him have a better stomack to his meat, and let him eat nothing but Barley & Hay, and sometimes a little hearbs, or vine branches, or other tender branches that he loveth, so it shall be in good order; Also to fat an Oxe, ye shall give him ground beans, dyed barley, or Elme leaves, but specially going in the Sunne doth make him like well and to wash him twice or thrice a week with warm water: also coleworts to boile with bran doth make them have soluble bellies, and it doth nourish as much as doth Barley. Likewise chaffe mixed with ground beanes, is good sometimes: your oxen are lesse subject to diseases then your horses, yet to preserve and keepe them in health, our Elders did use to purge them every quarter thre daves together, one with Lupin pease, another with the graine of Cypres, beaten in like quantitie, steeped all one night before in a pint or a pint and a halfe of water, and so given. Others doe give other things, according to the use of the Countrey.

Againe, if any Oxe do wax weake and feeble in labour, they doe use to give him once a moneth of fetches beaten and steeped in water, and mixt with beaten branne: and to keepe an Oxe from being weary, they do use now and then to rub his horne with Turpentine, mixt with oyle of Olive. But see that yee touch no other part of his head but his hornes; for if ye so do, it will at length hurt his sight. Also there will sometimes a rising come over the heart of an

Dr, shewing thereby as though he would vomit, to help the same, yee shall rub and chafe his mouzell and mouth with bruised Garlick, or else with beaten Leeks, and then force him to swallow it downe.

Against the Collicke in Cattell.

**Y**e shall giue chiefly for the same unto your Dr of bruised garlick with wine, or bruised leeks mixt with a pint of wine, and also against the Gurling or Rumbling in the belly, and noise in his guts, which ye shall understand when he complaineth thereof: ye shall often see him lye downe, and suddenly to rise up again, because he cannot for a paine rest long in a place: To help the same, some do use to put into his drinke the oyle of Puts: Others doe giue him of Onyons boyled in sweet wine, and some do giue of Myrrh, with the powder of Bayes steep'd in wine, and also they do prick his skin all about y<sup>e</sup> claes of his feet, or to prick under his taile, so long till it begin to bleed, and so he shall amend.

Times best to stop Laxes.

**T**he chiefest times to stop Fluxe or Laxe, is when the Moone, or Signe is in Taurus, Virgo, or Capricorne, then to giue your beast drinks to stop it shall doe best: but to purge by drinks, as afoze is mentioned, that is when the Signe is chiefly in Scorpio and Pisces. Also it is not good to purge or let blood (without great need) in the change of the Moone, neither when there is any evil aspect of one planet unto another, nor in the signes of Capricorne and Aquarius, for they are the two houses of Saturne and Mars. Thus if all these rules aforesaid be obserbed and kept, things will worke the better, and your Cattell the better be preserved.

The forme and quality of a Bull.

**F**oasmuch as I haue somewhat spoken afoze of Dren, I will here take opportunity to speak somewhat of the Bull

Bull, and his forme, which is, those Bulls which ought to be prayſed, they ought to have long and great members, and alſo to be gentle and of a meane age, the black and the red Bulls are the beſt. The reſt ye muſt conſider to have all things in him as in an Oxe, for there is no difference betwixt a good Bull and a good Oxe, ſave that the Bull ought to have a quicker looke, and his horns to be more ſhorter: Likewiſe his neck more fleſhy, inſomuch as it is the greateſt part of his body, and the ſtrongeſt, to the proportion of the reſt, his belly long, ſlender and ſtraight, whereby hee may the more eaſie cover the laine. Thus much for the Bull, and his proportion.

The forme and quality of a faire Cow.

Columella ſaith, a Cow of eſtimation ought to be large and long bodied, and alſo to be gentle, having a large and deep belly, a broad forehead, and blacke open Eyes, with faire and blacke poliſhed Hornes: her Eares rough and hayzie, her jawes well ſhut, the ſkinne of her tayle great, the Clawes and Hornes of her feet ſmall, her Leggs ſhort and thick, her breaſt deep, all the reſt like unto the male, and ſpecially to be young: For when a Cow ſhall paſſe ten yeares, ſhe may not ſo well beare Calves.

Alſo Stephanus ſaith, the Farmer having good underſtanding ſhall alwayes eſteem the Cow of a meane ſtature, and being but foure or five yeares old: the brown colour mixt with white Spots, is good with the red and the blacke. and to have a large deep belly, broad forehead, blacke eyes, and great cleane Hornes and blacke, her Eares rough, her jawes narrow ſet, her Muzzle great, her hayre ſomewhat crumpled, her hooves little and ſmally cloven, her leggs ſhort, her chynge thicke and round, her Udderen large and deepe, having but foure teats, her neck long and thick, her breaſt large, and deep hanging, her feet broad and thicke. Theſe are the chiefeſt points belonging to a faire Cow.

How to keepe a Cow that is great bellied  
with Calfe.

**S**tephanus saith, ye must keepe your kine with calfe from dangers from the tenth moneth. for when she wareth great bellied, and also in winter, if she be then with calfe, ye shall nourish her in the stall from the eight moneth because of extreme cold, and then to giue her of good meat, it shal do well; but in summer ye shall giue her the branches or tender brouse of trees, such as ye can get, and use her not after two moneths to fast, but let her feed in mornings in the fields, and so to milke her, and to giue her also in the evening fresh forrage, when she cometh to the house. And likewise in the morning before she goeth to the field, and when she hath calved, ye shall keepe back the calfe when she goeth to the field, and so use her still as yee shall see cause. And when to Geld, as aforesaid is mentioned; some doe use to geld when the calves are young, and some lets them run a yeare or more before they geld, which is counted more dangerous. Therefore as most doe use, to geld under the Dam is best: then after their gelding, ye must keepe them well in good pastures, that they may be the more readier and stronger to labour at three yeares. They doe use also to labour their barren kine after nine yeares, when as they bring no more Calves. Therefore they are put unto the use of drawing in the yoke as Oxen are. Also if the calves be not gelded within one yeare, they will not be great; if there grow an Impostume after gelding, burne his stones to Ashes, and cast that powder thereon and it will helpe.

Geld Calves

Kine to labour.

Geld Calves

How to buy leane Kine, or Cattell.

**F**itzharbert saith, and if a man buy leane kine or Oxen to feed, ye must see they be young, for the younger they be, the sooner they wil feed: and look well that their haire stare not, but that they doe use to lick themselves: and see also they be whole mouthed, in wanting none of their teeth. For although he haue the Gout, and broken both of taylor and pizell,

pizell, yet will he feed: but an Oxre having the gout will not be driven farre: ye shall choose him with a broad rib, and a thick hide, and not to be loose skinned, nor yet stick hard to the ribbes or sides, for then they will not feed so well. And those husbands that doe meane to thrive, must have both Kine and Oxen, horse, mares, and young cattell, and to reare every yeare some Calves and Foales, or else he shall be constrained to buy. If ye buy Oxen for the Plough, see they be young and not gouty, nor yet broken haire of tayle or pizell. Againe, if ye buy Kine to the palle ye must see they be young, and having such properties as afoze are mentioned, also gentle to milke, and likewise to nourish up their Calves.

#### How to buy fat or leane Cattell.

**A**lso in buying either Oxen or Kine to fat, yet shall first handle them, and see if they be soft on the crop behind the shoulder, and also upon the hindermost rib, and upon the huckle bone, and upon the nath by his tayle, and to see likewise if your Oxre have a great cod: and a Cow to have a big nabel, for that is a good signe she would be well calloved; ye must take heed also where ye buy any leane cattell or fat, and of whom, and where they were bred; for if ye buy from a better ground then you have your selfe, those cattell will not so well like with you: yet shall also looke if there be no manner of sicknesse among those cattell in the quarter or Parish where ye intend to buy. For if there be either Murren or long saugh, or other infected disease, it is great jeopardy buying any beast comming from thence; for one beast will soon take sicknesse of another, which sicknesse will perhaps continue ten or twelve yeares, or more, ere it will appeare on him. If any beast chance to be sick, ye shall separate them from the rest of his company. These and such like rules the buyer ought alwaies to have respect unto and take heed thereof.

Against the Murren or Plague among  
Cattell.

**A**S for the Murren or Plague among Cattell, there be meanes enough (saith hee) that can helpe the same, being taken betimes. Which disease commeth of an infection of y<sup>e</sup> bloud, & it appeareth commonly first in the head, for then his head will swell, and his eyes waxe great, and they will runne of water. And when he doth once froth at the mouth, he is then past remedy, and shortly after he will dye, and yet when they are thus sicke they will eate. The remedies are: We shall slea the beast that is so dead, and bury him in a deepe pit and cover him well with earth, that no dogs can come to the carrion: For so many beasts as doe smell thereof are like to be infected with y<sup>e</sup> same disease, and forthwith ye shall have the skin straight to the Tanner, carry it not home, for fear of more peril may fall thereof. There is a common use, & done of a great charity, which is, they will put the beasts skin on a pole and then set it in a hedge fast bound to a stake by the highway side, that every man riding by, may perceiue thereby where y<sup>e</sup> sicknesse of cattell is, and also in what Towne-ship: and they hold an opinion it will thereby cease the rather, which I do scarcely beleue. But a Beast having the murren, being slay'd it will appear betwene the flesh and the skin for it will be as though it were full of frothy bubbles like blisters, some blackish, some blew, and some yellow, which will commonly bee in a fat Beast, an inch thick and more deepe in the flesh.

There have bene some beasts that have died of the murren (as I have bene credibly told) he that sleayed him dyed soon after, and he that went with it to the Tanner and the horse that carried it, and the Tanner that tan'd it, all those dyed soon thereupon, which was thought it was by the infection of the stinking skinned, but being true, it was a marvellous infection. Wherefore it was thought good of some to bury them whole, for feare of a further inconvenience:

ence : this is thought good of some, to take a small cord and bind it hard about his neck ; then on the farther side ye shal feele a great beyne, and with a launcet ye shal strike thereon, and let him bleed a pint or more, and so likewise on the other side of his neck. Then take away the cord and it will suddenly stanch, but if the signe be there he is in more danger of bleeding still. If he so do, ye shall clap to bruised netles and salt, or wild tansey bruised and layd to : and some therefore doe give them drincks. Thus must you serue all your cattell that are infected, or being together in one pasture ; so doing, ye shall avoid the greater danger in this disease. For the murren, it is taken by venommed grasse, by company, and paysoned water, and by hunger.

The Rearing of Calves for increase.

**I**t shall be good for husbandmen to reare yearly so many calves as they can conveniently keep to maintain their stock, and chiefly those calves that do fall between Candlemasse and May, for in that season, their milke may best be spared, and by that time there will be sufficient grasse to weane them, and in Winter following they will be strong enough to save themselves among the Cattell, having now and then some small helpe, and also the Dammes by June shall be the readier again to take y<sup>e</sup> Bull, and to bring other calves in the time aforesaid : and if a cow tarry til after May ere she calve, the calfe will be too weak in the winter following, and the damme will not be so ready to take Bull againe, but thereby oft times go barren. Also to rear a calfe after Michaelmas, and to keep the dam at hard meat, as they do in some Countries, it would be too costly all the Winter : and a Cow abroad will give more milke with a little grasse, then with fodder lying in the close house, or fed with hay and straw remaining in the stall : for the dry and hard meat doth diminish more milke a great deale then grasse. As for those husbands that have but small pasture or none at all, must doe as they may, and in my mind, it were

farre better for them to sell their calves then to reare them, whereby they may save the milke to a more profit for the keeping of his house, and the Cow then will the rather go to the Bull againe.

Also if the husband do go with an Oxe plough it shall be then meet to reare two Oxe Calves, & two calves yearely, to hold up his flock, if he can so doe, and it will be the more profit: Also it is better to weane calves at grasse then at hard meat, if they were at grasse before: and those that can have severall pastures for their Kine and Calves, shall do well, and reare with lesse cost then others. The weaning Calves with hay and water will make them have great belies, because they stir not so well therewith as with grasse, and they will the rather rot when they come to grasse. And againe in winter they would be put in houses, rather then to remain abroad, and to give them hay but on nights, and to pasture them in the day time. And thus being used, they shall be much better to handle when they shall be Kine or Oxen to serve to any other purpose.

The losse of Calf, Lamb, or Foale, which is the least losse.

**Y**e shall understand, the least hurt for the husbandman is his cow to cast her calfe, then his Cowe to cast her Lamb, or mare her Colt, because the calfe will suck so much milk as he is worth, before he shall be able to be killed. And of the ewes milk, there cometh no profit but the Lamb, yet in some countries they wean their Lambs, & milk their ewes which is a hindrance for them to take the Lam in due season. But thereby oft times goeth many ewes barren because they are brought so low with milking. Also if the mare cast her foale, that is thrice so great a losse as the other two, for if that foale come of a good breed, which is a most necessary thing for every man to provide for himselfe and as much charge will a bad mare cost in keeping as a good mare & with good keeping the foale will be in short time ready to sell for so much money as the Lamb and calfe is worth,

What

What Cattell is most meet to go in one  
Pasture together.

**Y**e shall understand, it is not so good nor so profitable to have cattell all of one sort in a pasture together, as to have all Oxen, or all horses in a pasture together, nor yet sheep alone, except they pasture on high grounds, for they will not feed even, but over-run, and leave many tufts of grasse here & there untouched in divers places of the pasture: except it be greatly layd with cattell. Wherefore ye shall perceive that horses will agree well with other cattell in one pasture together, for there is some grasse that horses will eat, and beasts will not, and lightly a horse will cōbet to feed after other Cattell. Also a horse loves to feed on low grounds, as places, & hollow places. But horses & sheep will not so well agree together, except it be for the sheep to feed on the upper grounds: for a sheep will feed on a bare pasture, and eat the sweetest grasse, and so will a horse likewise, but hee must have it longer. Yet (as some doe say) a horse will eate as nigh the ground as the sheep, but he cannot therewith fill his belly so soon. To one hundred of cattell in a Pasture, ye may have twenty horses, if it be a low ground. But if there be plenty of grasse, then ye may put therein an hundred sheep more: and so likewise to the rate of the goodnesse of the pasture, more or lesse in cattell, and after this order, you may eate your pastures even with Cattell, & leave but few tufts of grasse uneaten. Also if it be a high ground, ye may then put in more sheep, and lesse of other Cattell. For many Kine and draught Oxen will eate a ground, much barer then fatting Oxen or Kine. And ye may al'o give a milch Cow, as well too much meat as too little: For too much meat will make her soon fat, and then she will the rather take the Bull: And she being fat will give lesser milke then a leane Cow: for the fatnesse stoppeth the pores of the Veines which should convey the milke to the uddorne: Wherefore a meane pasture, is alwayes best to keep your milch Kine in, and

to have them in a good meane estate, neither too fat nor too leane. Also if a Cow be fat when she shall calve, she is in more danger then being leane, and the calfe (she being fat) shall be the lesse of stature. As for your draught Oxen, yee cannot give them too much meat, except it be the after grasse of a low mowed Meddow. For that will cause them to have the Gyzie, and then he may not so well away with labour. Likewise, if there be very much grasse in a close, the Cattell will feed the worse thereof, for better is a good sweet bit from the Earth, then a large and deep grasse. For whereas it is so long, the beasts will bite off the tops thereof, and no more, for that is the sweetest. And the other grasse shall remaine still on the ground and so rot, for no beast will eat thereof, but horses only in Winter. For they will feed on foggy grasse and such like. Also ye shall understand that Horses and Cattell may not well be foddered in Winter all together, but put apart, for the beasts with their hooves will goze both horses and sheep. Wherefore it is the more danger so to feed them together: It is best therefore to make standing racks and cratches, and to cast their meat therein, which staves ought to be set somewhat nigh together, for pulling and spoiling their fodder too much at once under their feet. It were rather better to change their places every day where yee feed them, which should make them to gather it up more cleane, and not to trample so much under their feet. Thus much as concerning the pasturing of Cattell together in Pastures, as also the Foddering of them together in Winter.

A very good Order for the fattening of Oxen  
in the Stall.

**W**hensoever you intend to fat Oxen in the Stall, being in Summer, or Winter, to set them up: If yee take them from grasse in Summer, they will hardly fall to eating of Hay, of a good while after, but  
when

when ye then take them up, keepe them so without meat and water one day and a night, and so they will by extreame hunger forget the grasse the rather, and then at the first give them a little hay at once, whereby they may eat it up cleane, and thereby war still hungry. We must also take them up into a stall on a dry day, for if ye stall them wet, they will have as (some Grassiers say) Wernell wezmes on their backs, which will commonly come unto them by famine & poverty, and will hurt the skin: And also it will make him be lowlie. We shall therefore use to kemb them with a Willow card, or Horse-comb, as some do, for the labouring Oxen so to be used, but not for the fattening one, as some judge: nor yet shall you let them go forth of the stall at any time, not so much as to drink: For then they will desire the more to be abroad, and the licking of them will hinder (as they say) their fattening. But ye shall so provide that they may have water brought them in Cowles, or else to come through their stalls as some do use: Which is to set a wooden trough along through their stalls, and with a pipe of lead, and a cock at the end thereof, coming from a conduit or cistern, and thereby fill the said trough twice a day with fresh water, morning and evening, and at every time before to cleanse the trough of all the old water, and so to give them fresh, for after they have once drank their fill of the fresh Water, they will lightly have no more thereof, for they will blow thereon, and after loath to drink any more thereof, until they have fresh. For an ore or a cow is a beast that doth love to feed sweet and cleanly. Also you shall lay your Troughs and somewhat aslope, so that the water may run all forth at the end thereof, in taking forth a pin to let out the said water: and then wash the trough cleane, and so give them fresh. Thus you may use them daily morning and evening, so long as ye fat them.

And first in the morning, ye shall take away all their old hay, and cleanse their water-trough, and then give them fresh water, and then a little fresh hay again, & so at none,  
and

and likewise at night : and thus to vse them to be fed from time to time. Also it shalbe best to place & set their trough on the further side their crib, nigh unto the wall and to set it two foot hie and moze, and their racks likewise would stand of a good heighe, as of foure foot or moze, and to bee made almost as broad beneath as aboue, for feare of tangling their hoznes therein, and the rack-staves set not passing foure inches asunder : Yet some do vse to feed them on the ground with a Rake, but that is thought to be moze dusty and moze wastfull of Hay. They do also give them sometimes for change, of Wheat or Barley chaffe. With the gurgine thereof, for that after it (they say) will make them to drinke well. But the hay is only the chiefeft fodder, and will make the hard flesh.

Likewise their standards and posts to fasten them by, would be made round and smooth, of the bignesse of thirteen Inches about and seven foot long, and set foure foot wide one post from another. Ye must see likewise they be set fast and strong, both aboue and beneath : And ye shall also harole your Oxen in the stall all of the one side of your standards or posts, for feare of their hoznes, the one Ox to hurt the other, and ye shall fasten them unto the Posts with a bow-with, made Shackle-wise. Sliding aboue and beneath his Pecke on the Standard, so that the one side of the necke shall be alwayes close unto the said Standard or post. By which order of tying so, they shall not at any time, bow their heads so well to licke them. For in licking them (as is said) it doth hinder their feeding in the fasting. And also if ye tye them as plow Oxen be, with a sole and a Withe, which is made like a Poke-bow, which would be too long a tye from the Standard, and then will then both lick themselves and strike each other with their hoznes : Wherefore the other way of haroling and tying is best. Some make a light cradle of Wood, & put it about their neckes, wch will keep their heads from turning backe to licke themselves in any part of their bodies, but it is not so easie to lie down. Other doe also lincare them with their owne dung, and then

then cast alhes thereon, which will save them from licking. And also for the cleansing and farming of them, they use morning and evening to shobell downe their tang, and to see from time to time that they be clean kept; for that is a furtherance to their fattening and liking. And as for the littering of them, they doe not litter at all but let them lye on sair dry planks, and in their owne dung. Yet some are of this opinion, that to litter them somewhat under the seere part of their bodies shall not be hurtfull to them: and further, their keeper must from time to time looke unto them, and marke if they doe eat and drinke as they should do; for sometimes there will grow diseases amongst them in their mouths, as the Barbes and such like, which will much hinder their feeding, and so pair, if they be not looked unto in time and have helpe.

Some doe use also to make holes behind them, and set therein Earthen pots even with the ground, to keepe their pisse in, and so cover them with small boards or planks, with which pisse they doe use to wash the bodies of those Apple-trees which are given to be worme-eaten, or canker-eaten, for they say that will save them. They use also to cast the said pisse among their roots in the garden, for that will also kill or cause the wormes to bote, and save the roots from being eaten. Thus much for the ordering and fattening of the Oxen in the stall.

You shall take roots of great Sedge, which Sedge beareth long leaves with white streaks therein, much like to a white and green lace, and grows in some gardens like to a quitch grass, and the roots are much like to a quitch grass but they are more greater then they, and will runne in the ground like the quitch called Garum in Latine, and it is thought to be a kind thereof. Take a handfull of the said roots, beate them, and boyle them in a quart of good Ale, then straine it, so give it like warme three or foure mornings and they will amende. But let them neither eat nor drinke the space of two or three houres after.

## The nature of the Shrove mouse.

**T**he Shrove-mouse is an ill beast, and doth trouble and hurt mens cattell in many places; for her teeth are venomous, for where she biteth any beast, it will soon rankle and swell, that if they have some helpe, they will dye thereof. The remedies are, those medicines which are used against venoming of other cattell be also good for this.

There is also a common saying among Husbandmen that if any beast be House-crope, that is, when she runneth over the back of any beast, he shall suddenly wax lame, and commonly in the hinder parts, so that he shall not be able to rise nor goe, nor draw his Legs after him. Wherein I have heard no remedy, but these, One is, you shall have him to a Wyar growing at both ends, and draw that beast under it through and so he will recover: some doe beat him with the said Wyar. Also among husbandmen this is counted most chiefe and often approb'd, that is to say, he shall often tolle and turne the lame beast, and turne him over and over, now on the one side, and then on another, every way up and do one, which (as they say) is a present helpe.

Another, some doe teach to bore a hole in any tree, Chine or other, and put therein a live Shrove-mouse, and pin it close and let her dye therein: Then when any beast is House-crope, you shall beat the beast with a twig of the same tree, and so he shall recover againe. Another, if your beast be bitten with the said Mouse it will swell and inflame, and then they doe help it in pricking the place with a bodkin or awle of latten, and then to chafe it thereon with Dope and vineger mixed together, and that will helpe it. Another, some doe take a Shrove-mouse alive, and put her into a glasse of sallet oyle, and therein let her dye; and when any beast is bitten with her, then anoint the bitten place with the said oyle, and so he will amend; but touch no other place with the oyle.

## To helpe the Tetter on Cattell.

**T**he tetter is an unseemly scurbinels or scab growing on the skin or outward part of a beast. Some are broad and some will grow long and hang like a cluster of grapes or like a wen with kernels and knobs somewhat hard. It is supposed they doe increase by wet and poverty, and some think it doth increase of some venommed humour, or by some prick or bruise, or such like. It is not grievous to the beast, but unseemly. The remedies are, they help the running or broad tetter, by searing it round about with a hot iron, and then to lay Tarre thereon: Some doe but lay Tarre only thereon. And for the long tetter, that hangeth down like a cluster of grapes or bunch, they doe seare it off with a hot Iron and then lay Tarre thereupon, and so it will go away. Also they say, that when the beast doth wax fat and lusty by grasse it will so weare away by little and little again; for they have it commonly in Winter, and not in Summer.

## Another for the same.

**Y**e shall mix Oypiment with Tarre, and put thereto of grey sope, all alike quantity, and heat it and then anoint therewith so often as ye shall see cause, and this will heale it. If the tetter hang long, some doe knit them about with haire, and by such means they will consume and fall away.

## Against faintnesse in a labouring Oxe.

**T**hose Oxen that are labouring all the winter at plow, toward the Spring they will wax faint and poore, and full of lice, and with small labour they will lie down: Therefore to keep them still in good plight and lusty, ye shall give them before their watering, to every Ox a good handfull of Barley in the straw, and then after let them drinke: which will alwayes keep them lusty and strong. And also

kenne your oxen with a horse-comb or card, it will delight them the more being fat oxen. Yet some will say, a fattings Ox must not be touched or rubbed on the back.

For a Cow lacking milke, having new Calved.

**W**hen ye hath a Cow that hath newly calved, and lacking milke through poverty, to cause her milke to increase you shall boyl of Anniseeds in good ale, or wine, then straine it and give it milke-warne. Another, take a handfull of the leaves of the Hedge-bine called Bziony, then boyl it in ale or wine, and straine it and so give it hot. Another, also the leaves of Coleworts boyled in water, or to give her them raw, will doe the like, and it is also good against the weathering of a Cow. Another, you shall give her of sod Barley and fennel-seed sod together, and let her eat the same; or greene fennell chopt and mixed with sod barley and so given. Also, the herbe Nigilromana stamped and strained with ale or wine, and so given three or foure mornings. All these are very good and approved, to increase milke in a Cow.

To helpe the Love.

**T**he Love is a disease which breedeth in the claws of a beast, and cometh (as some husbands say) by treading in the ordure and dung of christened folks, which burneth them so betwixt the claws that it will make them to halt. The cure for this disease is, You shall take a piece of a twisted ropes end, and rub and chafe him betwixt the claws therewith, so that you make it to bleed well: When you have so done, take a reasonable quantity of good Tarre, and mixe therewith a convenient quantity of good fresh grease, and anoint the sore place therewith twice or thrice, and it will sone be whole againe. This hath been often proved.

Against

Against the Goring of a Beast.

**I**f any beast be gozed, ye shall take Rozen, fresh grease, and wax, each alike, then boyl them altogether in a pot of earth and then keepe it : and when as you shall have any need to use thereof, make a tent of linnen or flax well anointed with the said oymntment, and so put it down to the bottome of the wound and so use the same, and it will soone heale him ; or powze into the wound boiling butter.

For the neck of an Oxe that is swolne.

**T**o heale the neck of an Oxe that is swolne with the poke or otherwise, you shall take tallow, and melt it in a pot, and as hot as he may suffer, powze it upon the swolne place ; use this once a day, and it will heale him in short space without other thing.

For a Spraine or stroke.

**A**gainst a spraine or stroke, you shall take of butter, black sope, and hemlock hearb, with a quantity of salt, then boyle them altogether, and all to bath the spraine or stroke therewith, as hot as he may well suffer and it will helpe. If it be in his legs, ye shall put unto (the things as foresaid) the grounds of beere and ale, and wash it therewith : and then wrap it about with a haire rope dypt in chamberly, and he shall doe well.

To helpe the Shoulder-bone of any beast  
being out of joynt.

**I**f the shoulder-bone of any beast be out of joynt, you shall well perceiue it, by feeling it lye downe and inward

to ward his body, so that you may easily put your two fingers betwixt these two Bones, and also hee will still trip upon the same foot. To helpe the same, you shall first cast him, and bind his other three Legs together, then make one to draw forth that legge straight, then put one of your hands on the point of his shoulder where the bone went out, and put your other hand on the inside neare his body, and thrust up the bone that is fallen out, into his right place againe, fast to the other bone: If you shall see then it be not come home fast and close, you must thrust up your fist betwixt the said shoulder and his body, and put it up more close, or else with some troncheon of wood, and therewith put it up more closer. Then being right, and put up very straight and close together, you shall make two wooden picks of one length, and make two holes crosse under the skin, just over the midst of the said joynt, and put your two picks crosse there under the skin. Then take of whipcord or strong packcord, and wrap it under the said ends of your picks round, and therewith draw up the skin on a lumpe together: so done, fasten your thread, and let it so remaine till it fall away of it selfe, and he shall doe well againe: and if it be an Ore, you may labour him again within two dayes after. And if that the fles be then busie, you may anoint the place with some Tarre.

For the Neck being out of joynt.

**I**f the Neck of any beaſt be out of joynt, he will still hold and bow his head on the contrary ſide that the bone is out. To helpe the ſame, firſt you ſhall feele the bone if you can that is out: ſo done, then you ſhall make one to hold ſtraight his head with a halter, and let another ſet his hand on the place where the bone went out, and then doe you on the other ſide thruſt in the joynt that is out into his place againe. And ſo let the beaſts head be tyed unto a ſtringle, ſo bend on the ſame ſide that the bone went out,

out, and so let his head be kept for the space of nine dayes, untill the flesh have growne, and fast settled upon the joynt againe.

For another joynt of a Beast that is out.

**W**hen as any other joynt of a beast is out, first you shall search and feele for the bone that is out: That done, marke on what side he is, or went out; so done, let one pluck and hold out that limbe straight; then set one of your hands on the place or bone where it went out, and with your other hand thrust in the bone that is out, the same way he went out, and so keepe it still nine dayes after and he shall doe well.

For any Bone that is broken, or Limbe out of joynt.

**T**o helpe any bone of a beast that is broken, yee must cast and bind his Legs, and then feele softly how the bones doe lye, then shall yee cause that limbe to be holden out straight, and with your two hands ye shall stroke softly up and downe, and then softly put each Bone into his right place againe. When in holding the limbe straight, feele if all the said bones be well bolstered round about, and then splinted thereon and well wrapped, and so to remaine for the space of nine dayes, and give him to drinke of Comphorie herbe stamped with milke or ale, for that will helpe to knit the bones the sooner. The barke of Ash beaten with wine and so plaistered, will close and knit bones together. Also the Elm inner barke laid in running water, and so bath the places therewith, doth knit the broken bones.

Also Plinie saith, the rootes of Rocket boyled in water, and plaistered to will draw and knit broken bones. And Dioscorides saith, wild Betony newly stamped and plaistered to, will likewise draw and knit broken bones. Thus much for a beastes shoulder out of joynt, and for the setting

of broken bones. Also. hazell tailles, and the sciers of red docks made into powder, and giben to drinke, will knit broken bones.

Against swelling in a beast in any outw ard part.

**T**ake a good quantity of the iuyce of Clebers, and put thereunto the grounds of ale or beere, and a quantity of fresh grease or Peatsfoot oyl, then boyl them together. For a Horse take tallow in stead of grease: for a Cye or Cow take grease. and if you put thereunto of an eye gall, it will be the better, and being warm bind it to the place.

To know if a beast be Sound or not.

**Y**ou shall goe to your beasts in the morning, which are in the house, before they haue meat or drinke, and behold the tops of their nose; if there be standing peatles like drops of dew water, he is then sound of body, but if hee be dry on the top of his nose, that beast is not then in health.

Against the Rotting of a beast by drinking ill water, or often for lack of water.

**I**f any beast be rotten of his body, you shall slit the skull in the upper part of his deaw-lap, two fingers straight downward, then open the sides a finger breadth and a finger length straight downe. Then take nine greene leaves of Bugwort, and bind them with a thread together, and put it downe into the wound, and let another thread hang downe without, that you may thereby draw it up and downe the wound, every two or three dayes once or twice. Use this the space of fifteen or sixteen dayes; and within a while you shall see it swell, and at length it will petrifie and stinke, runne and rot away, skin and all. Some will swell before they runne of matter, which in a voiding so much

much corruption, cleanse the beast, and make him whole againe : and give him the succ of Sacrifice in drinke.

For a beast that hath the Haw,

**A** Py beast that hath a Haw in his eye, you shall sone perceiue it by holding his head aside, and winking with his eye, for it will run of water. The cure is, ye must hold him fast by the head, and with a strong double thread put therewith a needle in the midst of the upper eye-lid, and tye it unto his horne, then take your needle again with a long thread, and put it throught the gristle of the haw, and with a sharpe knife cut the skin finely round, and so pluck out the haw ; then lay a fine linnen cloth about the top of your fore-finger, and put your finger round about his eye within, and take out the blood, then wash it with beere or ale, and cast in a good deale of salt, and wash it then again, and stroke it downe with your hand, and so let him go, and he will amend againe.

A Drinke for Cattel.

**W**hensoever you shall see a beast not like of his body, and dry in the morning on his nose, it should seme he is not in health ; therefore when ye house them, or pasture them, ye shall to help them give them a drinke as followeth. Take of long pepper, anniseeds, comminsed, licorice, bay-berries, of each a quantity ; then beat them unto fine powder, and boyle them in strong Ale, and put thereto butter, to make it more soluble, or the herbe Mercury, and some treacle, and being milk warme, give unto each beast the quantity of a wine pint, and they shall amend. Ye may boyle with your Ale other hearbs both to comfort and purge, as yee shall see cause in any beast, as before is rehearsed in purging of Cattel.

To fasten Teeth in a beast.

**F**irst, you shall prick his gums beneath on both sides, within and without, and the gums above with the point of a knife; then take a whetstone or rough pibble, or flat stone, and rub the gums therewith, and make them bleed: so done, chase them well with Salt and so they will fasten againe; or rub them with sage and salt.

For the Garget under the Eare.

**T**he swelling or Garget in a beast cometh commonly with cold in winter, or by eating evil meat, which will breed a garget under their jaws or cheeks. The remedy, You shall take blew hard clay, and boyle so much as a bowle in chamberlie, till it be consumed and molten, then all very scalding hot, bath the swolne place therewith, and alway stroke it downward; use this thre or foure times a day till it assuage, and this will helpe it.

Or take blew clay with a pint or more of milke, of barrow hogs grease, then boyle them together till all the clay be consumed; then as hot as you may, scald the garget or soze therewith; use this twice or thrice, and it will helpe. Often proved.

Leanness of Kine, or other, to helpe.

**W**hen as you shall see any beast not like, but seeme Leane, you shall make a drinke and give it your beast, fasting. Which is, take of long pepper, of madder, of the barke of Walnut-tree, and Turmerick, with some bayes, of each a like portion; beat them into fine powders, and put it into a pint of Ale luke warme, and so give it and your beast shall doe well, God willing.

A good way to geld or cut a Calfe.

**Y**e shall cause one to hold downe his fore-part, or legs, then bind his hinder feet with some cord, halfe a yard a sunner, let his feet be bound, and let him that holds it hold both his knees upon the cord, nigh to his legs, and so cut him gently, and anoynt his flanks with some fresh grease, then rub his reynes with cold water mixed with salt, and he shall doe well.

Against Hide-bound in Oxe or Cow.

**T**ake a penitwoorth of good treacle, a penitwoorth of long pepper, as much of graines, beat them into fine powder, and mix them with the treacle; then take an handfull of horehound chopt small, with the powder of licorice, then mix all together, and boyle them in a pint of good verjuice, and so warme it, and give on mornings unto your beasts, and this will helpe. Another, take and stampe the leaves of flower-de-luce, then straine it with good Ale, and so give it warme.

A medicine for all kind of griepe in Cattel.

**T**ake a penitwoorth of treacle, a handfull of hemp-seed, a portion of Ibie-leaves and Elder-leaves, of Feth.r. few, as much as a tennis ball of Rome, and so much of bay-salt: put thereto of chamberlie and a little foot, then stirre these all well together, and make it warme, and so give to each beast three good spoonfuls thereof: And lastly, before they goe from your hand, you shall give to each beast a little farre. Some doe give them in drinke the dried flowers of woznwood mixt with some salt. Thus they use their sheep and other cattel against all diseases; it is commended to all wage any paine in cattel or to drive away any hurtfull disease in them in eyther head or body.

## Against any beast Bitten or Venomed.

If any beast be wounded or bit in any outward place, as the legs, udder, or paps, or in any other outward place ye shall take a rotten egge, and mix with foot, and some bay salt, then beat them well together, and plaister or anoynt the venomed place with a clout and a sticke, and it will helpe. Well proved.

An approved Drinke for a beast, Oxe, or Cow, that hath the Rot in his body, or the like.

Take a handfull of Sage, another of Mercury, another of tansie, and halfe so much of Cardus Benedictus, chop them all small together, and then seeth them in a quart of ale, with a pint of verjuice, and some Licorice: seeth it till the halfe be wasted; then take it off the fire, and put therein a quantity of the powder of long pepper, and powder of bayes and a piece of butter, and being luke-warme, so give it with a dish to the beast, but first pluck forth his tongue, and so powze it into his mouth, by holding still up his head, till all be given him; then rub his mouth above, and tongue with some bay-salt, and rub his backe with salt likewise, and he shall doe well, and let him not eat or drinke the night before this drinke is given, nor let him not eate of thre houres after this drinke is given.

## Signes when a beast oft Belcheth.

The cause when a beast doth Belch, or breake wind oft upward, is a signe of crudity or raw humours in the stomack undigested, with a noise in his guts, no stomack or tast, sinking sinewes, his eyes heavy, not chewing his quid, nor licking him with his tongue. The remedies are, take nine pints of warme water, and boyle a little therein 30. branches or stalks of coleworts with some vineger and  
so

so gibe it to the beaſt, and all that day let him receiue nothing but the ſame. Some keep him in the ſtall, and not to paſture abroad, till he haue taken off the buds or bzanches of Lentilcus and wild Olive trees foure pounds, mixt and beaten with a pound of hony, putting thereto foure pints of water; then ſet it all night in the aire, then with a horn put it downe his thzoat, and about an houre after gibe him to eat foure pound of Drobe or ſkep'd fine tares; gibe him no drink; uſe this thre dayes till the griefe be taken away. If this help him not, but that his belly is inflamed with paine in his entrals and guts, ſo that he can ſcantly feed, but groan and complain, nor tarry long in a place but lye downe, often wagging his tayle and his head, this is a preſent remedy. Bind his taile next his rump and gibe him a quart of Wine or ſtrong Ale with a quantity of Oyle, and then drive him a thouſand or five hundred paces. If then the pain depart not, pare all about the hooves of his feet and anoint your hands, and ſo take him, and ſo chaſe him after. If it profit not, gibe him dry figs of a Wilding tree, with nine times ſo much warme water. If this yet helpe not, take two pound of the leaves of wild mints, mixed with thre quarts of warme water, and ſo gibe it him with a horn, and let him blood under the tayle; and after the bleeding ſtop it with the bark of ſome tree: then make him run till his tongue hang out. But beſore ye let him blood, gibe him this medicine: Take thre ounces of beaten garlick, mixed with a pint of wine or ſtrong ale, or ſomewhat more and upon this drinke chaſe him and make him run. Some doe take two ounces of ſalt, with ten onyons, and mix all with ſome ſod honey, and ſo they put it in his belly, ſo they chaſe and make him run after, and he ſhall do well.

To helpe Cartel that be Sick, and will not feed  
in Paſture.

**T**ake Horehound, Camomile, Betony, Cinquefoile,  
Pentropall, and Agrimony, of each a like, bruise them  
and

and boyle them in a quart of good Ale till the halfe, with a bzyled stick of Licorise; then straine it, and put thereto three pentworth of good treacle, stirre it well together, and giue it fasting, and walk your beast a good while after, and he shall doe well. Often probed.

To know if Oxe or Cow be sound or whole  
of Body.

**Y**e shall gripe or pinch him with your hand on the back or withers behind the fore-shoulder; If he be sound, he will not shrink; but if hee be not sound he will then shrink with his back, and be ready to fall. Often probed.

Against the Blood in beasts.

**S**ome cattel are troubled with the blood in their backs, which will make him to go as if he drew his head aside, or after him. The cure, We shal sit the length of two joynts under his tayle, and so let him bleed well; if he doe bleed too much, you shall knitt his tayl next the body, and then bind unto it salt and nettles bzyled, and it will do well.

If an Oxe pisse Blood.

**A**gainst pissing of blood ye shall keepe him from water foure and twenty houres; and then giue him a dishfull of the curds of runnet in a quart of milke, and let him not drinke of foure houres after.

Against the sicknesse of the Lungs.

**T**he sicknesse of the Lungs is perceived by rising up, and shaking off the dew-lap: You shall help him by fettering after this sort. Take Bearfoot and beaten Garlick and wrap it in butter, then cut his dewlap two inches beneath his sticking place, then open it round with your finger, or with a stick on both sides and beneath; then put in

in your stiffe: you shall cut your dewlap foure fingers above the bottome therof; then must you tye a strong thread to your stiffe to plucke it up and downe as you shall see cause in every third day and it will rot the sooner. If the humour do not rot then change your stiffe, and put in new and he shall do well.

Against the Pantafie in a beast.

**I**f an Ore or other beast have the Pantafie, he will shake much, and quiver in the flanks, and pant. The cure, Wee shall give him some Runnet, Scot, and chamberly mixt together.

Against swelling by eating the Tine-worme.

**Y**ou shall give him wine, salt and treacle. For a stroke in the Eye lay thereto the juyce of smallage, fennell, and the white of an Egge.

The garget or swelling in a brast cometh sometimes on the bone of the eyelid which will be like a botch or bile. The cure, Cut the skin round about the Eye, and againe about that cut another skin betwixt that and his lips; if it do come to his lips, it is incurable. The cure, take wine and salt sod together, and wash the place evening and morning till the swelling go away; then scrape off all the scales and filth, then anoint the place with nerbe-oye and honey boyled together, and that will both skin and heale it.

A practise against the Murren in Cattell.

**T**ake the roots of Angelica, the Sea-thistle, mixed with Fennel-seed, take of new wine, wheat-flower, boyle them and so give it: sprinkle the beast also with hot water, and he shall recover.

When Horse, bullock or other beast is sick, then take Bear-foot herb; for a bullocke, they put it into his dewlap,

for

Husband-  
men to have  
alway ready

for a Horse in his breast, for swine or sheep through the eare, wherein you shall make a hole with a latten bodkin, and the said root of Bear-foot put through the hole of the eare: And to make a perfume take powder of Brimstone, unslaked lime, garlick, wild Marjoram, and coriander laid on coals so they may receive the fume thereof, which will heal them. You shall alwayes have ready for your cattel, of fenecreek one pound, of licorice halfe a pound, of grains one pound, of turmericke half a pound, of bay-berries a quarter of a pound, of long pepper one pound, of treacle of Jeane one pound, of anniseeds one pound, of cummin halfe a pound, of madder halfe a pound, of ozpiment halfe a pound, which groweth in many woods.

Against Belching or eill liking in cattel. Take pelitory of Spaine, herb grace, fetherfew, sage, horehound, of each alike, of bay salt, three pints of strong new Ale to the value of the rest, let all boyl together two or three walms then straine it, and give to each beast a good part thereof a mornings fasting warme, and then let them not drinke till the afternoone. If this helpe not, he will groane and remove from place to place: Then shall you bend his tayl close or nigh the rump and give him a quart of wine mixed with a pint of good Sallet oyle, then drive him apace a mile and a halfe: Then take him, anointing your hands with oyle or grease. Where in some let him blood under the tail nigh the rump.

There is a disease in beasts, which some husbands call the Tayl. To help it you shall seale softly the softest place under his tail, and make a slit thereon two inches long, open it, and lay thereto salt and garlick; stampe and bind it fast thereunto with a cloth, and it will help it.

For the Chollick in the belly of beasts, it is sone put away by beholding a Goose or a Duck on the water swimming.

Against  
the Lask.

If any of your beasts have the Lask, you shall helpe them in giving of them the powder of Sloes mixed with some cold verjuice or water.

Against

Against the bloody flux. The cure: Some do not use to let them drink in thre days and thre nights, and then they give him the stones of grapes and raisins beaten into powder, two pound, with a quart of slow wine fasting and so use them. If then they mend not, they use to burn their fore-head through the skin to the bone, and cut their ears, and wash the wound with Oxe piss till it be whole. The cuts are to be healed with oyl and pitch heat and plaistered. If calves have a lask, take sweet milk and put runnet therein, so that the calf may well drink thereof luke-warm, and it will stay it: Elm leaves be ill.

If a bullock have the cough ye shall give him a pint of barley meal with the yolk of an egg and raisins boyled with a pint of white wine, then strain it and give it fasting to the beast. Also take grains and powder, and mix it with slow, and fryed beans and meal tares, stir all together and give it like a mash to the beast.

Against an old cough take two bound of Hops steep in thre pints of water, then bruised and mixt with slow and so make him to swallow it, and after pour the water (that the Hops was steep in and sod in) into his throat,

If calves have the cough ye shall beat contort to powder, and so give it with ale. If they have the Ague, ye shall perceive it by the watering of their eyes, and heaviness in their head which they will hang down; and also dribbling at their mouth, their veins beating with a great heat over all their bodies. The cure: Let them fast a day and a night the next day betimes let them blood under the tail; then within one hour after give to them thirty colewort leaves and stalks, sod with oyl, water and salt.

To heal the kibes, ye shall cut them forth as nigh as ye can and let them bleed well. Then take verdigrease and the yolk of a new laid egg well beaten and stamp, so bind it to the grief, and it will help and heal it.

Ye shall bath them with stale beer or old, sod with Ivy leaves and so make it with the combs of honey, and dyed cammomele mixt together.

If Oxen or Bullocks feet be near worn ye shall wash them with warm Oxe piss, then burn a few small brushes, and when the flame is done ye shall let the beast stand and walk on the embers a pretty while, then anoint his hoofs with tarr and oyl mixed with hogs grease. In so doing they will never lightly halt after.

If ye wash their feet, and then their pasterns, and also rub between their clees with swines grease, it will aboid scabs and such like. Also scabs and such like are healed and gotten away in rubbing and chafing them with stamp garlick.

If any vein be cut and so bleed, lay his own dung thereon or else clay to bruised nettles and salt, and it will stop.

A common medicine for all diseases in cattel: Take the root of the sea-onion the popler root, and common salt, of each a like; lay it a while in water, then stamp them, and so give it unto your cattel until they be well. Give it to them in the Spring for the space of forty days, which will preserve them from the plague, or all other sickness for that year.

And if beasts be sick ye shall give them madder, long pepper, the bark of a walnut tree, with fetterfew: stamp these and strain it, and give it with some treacle to drink fasting and they shall do well.

For sick beasts that will not feed in pasture, or drink.

**T**ake liberwort, night shade, cneck-sopl, verbine, egrimony, and centory, of each a like; boyl all these in a quart of good Ale then stamp and strain it, and put to three peny-worth of treacle of Zean, and milk warm: give thereof to your sick beasts fasting, and drive them up and down a good space, and they shall do well.

To heal a beast cut with a bill.

**T**Ake of Turpentine, barrow, hogs grease, honey and tar, but the tar must lie next the cloath, and boll the other a little. and lay it on the cloath, to make it cleave fast, you may shift it once in two days, and this will heal it. For a sheep ye may lay on a plaister of pitch, and it will heal it.

FINIS

G 2

The

The Table of the principal things  
in this Book by Alphabet  
as followeth.

<b>A</b>	<b>A</b>	Common medicine for cattel	90
Gue in Calves.		Crowling in the guts to help	16
<b>B</b>	<b>B</b>	Costiveness in cattel to help	17
Barber under the tongue of cat-		Cough in a beast to help	92
rel to help,	12	Cut with weapon on a breast	
Beasts sick to help		Cows udder swelled	
Belching signes thereof	85	Cow in make	
Byles on cattel to heal		Cow to help of the weather	
Biting with a mad dog	26	Cow with her form & quality	
Blain on the tongue to help	38		63
Bloud in beasts	44.86	Cow with calf how to be kept	94
Bloud pissing to help	13	Cow new calved, scant of milk	
Bloudy flux	13	to help	76
Bones loose, things good to knit		Cow with calf how to use	21
	80	<b>D</b>	
Bruise on the shoulder to help	29	Dropping Nostrills in cattel to	
Buls, how to make tame	3	help	13
Buls put to labour		Drink for cattel	82
Bul, of his form and quality	63	Deawboln in catel for to help	35
<b>C</b>		Diseases of all sorts to help	
Calves having the lask		<b>E</b>	
Calves haying worms to help	41	Edder stinging to help	
Cattel sick		Eye grieved to heal	31
Calves how to breed	49	Eye having the haw	
Calves how to nourish		Eyes stricken to help	
Calves how to rear		Eyes inflamed to help	
Cattel to be looked unto	58	Eyes having the web	
Cattel in pasturing together	69	<b>F</b>	
Cattel how to fodder,		Faintness of oxen that labor	79
Charge to the keeper of cattel	51	Farming of Oxen	
Closh in the feet to help		Fatting of an Ox	61
Closh in the Neck to heal	27	Fatting in the stall	71
Ghollick in cattel to help	62	Fever in cattel to help	17
		Field-spider stinging to help.	
		Flesh	

## The Table:

Flesh superfluous under the tongue	Lean or fat cattel to buy	65
Flowing of the gall to help	45 Lean Kine or beasts to help	82
Flux of the belly to stay.	Lice on cattel to kill	35
Flux of blood to help	Looking often to cattel is good	
Foddering of cattel	Losse of calves least hurt	68
Founder in the feet of cattel	16 Lungs of cattel infected to help	85
Foul, a disease in the foot	42 Long grown in cattel to help	
G		
Galling of cattel to help	M	
Gall flowing to help	Maw of beasts grieved to help	
Garget to help	37 Milking of a beast to help	45
Garget on the tongue to help	37 Milch Kine to feed	
Garget by some stroke given	33 Medicines to have ready	
Garget in the Maw	39 Milk scant in a Cow to help	
Gelding of calves	83 Murren among cattel to help	
Gelding another way	86 88	
Goaring of a beast to help	77 Mouth of a beast inflamed	27
Goaring another	N	
Green corn hurtfull to cattel	Neck galled to help	
Government of cattel	Neck bruised to heal	
Gout in the feet to help	45 Neck swolen to heal	77
H		
Haw in the eyes to help	81 Neck having the clowse	
Herbs venemous for cattel to	Neck out of joynt to help	78
eat. Hidebound to help	88.84 Nostrils of cattel dropping to help	
Hoof hurt to heal	27	
Hoof chapt to heal	O	
Horner, or other fly stinging	Oxen how to sell	
Horsleech worm drunk to help	Oxen how to buy	
I		
Impostumes to help	18 Oxen how for to tame	
Inflamations in the mouth	Oxen diseased to help	
Joynt being out to help	78 Oxen for to labour	
Joynt being out, another	79 Oxe or Cow be sound to know	
Itch on cattel to help	24 Oxe feet worn to help	
K		
Keeper of cattel his charge	Oxen labouring, and yet fat	
Kine diseased to help	Oxen how to fat	
Kibes to help	Oxen being faint to help	
Kine put to pull	Oxen stall fed	
Kine put to labour	P	
Kine how to nourish and feed	Pasturing against tillage	
Knees of beast swolen to help	21 Panting in an Oxe or Cow	
L		
Laxes in beasts to stop	62 Pestilence and the cause	
Lean cattel how to buy	65 Pissing of blood to help	
	65 Pissing of blood, another	
	Pissing, good things to provoke	
	Pors to keep Oxe pisse	56
	Pricking with a thorn	57
	Purging things for cattel	58
	Quide	

## The Table:

<b>Q</b>		Swelling in cattle by venomous	
Quide of a beast lost, to help	48	Herbs	36
<b>R</b>		Swelling by eating green Corn	36
Rearing of calves for increase		<b>T</b>	
Rotting in a beast, to help	80	Tetter on cattle to help	75
<b>S</b>		Another for the same	75
Scabs in cattel, to help	21	The tail, a grief	
Sinews shrunk or broke to help		Teeth loose to help	45
Sinews stiff to help	20	Tine-worm eaten to help	
Sick beasts to help		Tine-blain on the tongue to help	
Sinews, good things to knit them	48	Trenches in the guts to help	
Sinews, another to knit		Turning disease to help	47
Shrove mouse and her nature	74	<b>V</b>	
Shoulder bruised to help		Enomed tongue to help	14
Shoulder out of joint to help	77	Vein cut to help	
Strain or stroak to help	78	Vomiting of a beast to help	
Stroke in the Eye		<b>W</b>	
Stall-fed Oxen		Warrenall worm in the	
Stall to give cattel drinks in	60	back of cattle	44
Stinging of Adder or Snake	30	Water in the belly of cattle to	
Stinging of the field Spider	30	help	
Stinging with Horner or Wasp	34	Water meet for cattle to drink	
Sound beasts to know	80	Weary bread, a disease	
Swelling through blood to help	14	Weathering in a Cow to help	57
Swetling by eating a tine-worm	15	Worm in the tail to help	61
Swelling in any one part	80	Worms in Calves to help	
Swelling by drinking a Horse-		Worms in other Cattel to help	
leech	33	Worms betwixt the clees to	
		help.	

**FINIS.**

THE  
SECOND BOOK  
Intreating of  
The GOVERNMENT  
OF  
HORSES  
WITH

The approved Remedies against  
most Diseases.

Very profitable for all men, having  
a Charge and Government therof, and  
chiefly for Husbandmen: with divers o-  
ther remedies practised in this Land.

---

Gathered by LEONARD MASCAL.

---

*Although the Learned have reveal'd  
The helps for Horse great store,  
Yet practisers therein again,  
Have found for them much more.*

---

LONDON,

Printed for John Stafford, and are to be sold at his  
House in George-yard near Fleet-bridge. 1661.

THE  
SECOND BOOK  
OF  
HORSES

The approved Remedies against  
Stiff Joints.

Very profitable for all men, having  
a Charge and Government thereof, and  
chiefly for Husbandmen, in the division  
of their remedies practised in this Land.

By Leonard Mascall.

Albion, the famous horse doctor,  
the best for these great years,  
let practice in this manner again,  
these found for their much more.

LONDON.

Printed for John Sturges, and are to be sold at his  
House in George-yard near Fleet Bridge, 1661.



## An Instruction for the Ferrer and Horse-leech.



**H**e duty of Ferrers and Horse-leeches, which desire the knowledge to help soreness and diseases in horses: They must well and perfectly understand of the present disease in the horse before they minister; also to look to him well, how many other griefs are growing on him, and whether the cause be hot or cold. To know also the operation of all such herbs and drugs as he doth minister unto them: with what quantity and portion of each thing thereof, and in what time and hour of the day and year is best. Also what force and strength the horse is of, which he doth minister unto; and whether he be old or young, and which disease to cure first.

These things well considered, so when ye have ministered unto the horse and given them drinks, in declaring how they should after be kept: he ought also to look well unto them (after their drinks) for a time, to see how his medicine doth work; not to give a horse drink (as most horse-leeches do) & then to let them goe, and take no care thereof after; whereby many horses fall worse sick, and so perish soon after for lack of attendance and good government, which is a great discredit to the Ferrer or Horse-leech. For like as a wise learned Physitian, when he hath ministered unto his patient, he will not then upon a sudden depart, but first he will know the working of his medicine, and thereby he getting the more knowledge: even so the horse-leech should after giveth drinks, mark the working thereof in each horse. So likewise for his salves and plaisters, he should looke unto them from time to time, and see

the working thereof, whereby so doing, he should increase still more and more in knowledge and fame. Thus much for instruction to the Ferrar and Horseerh.

The judgement of *Lawrence Ruce* of a beautiful Horse.

**T**he parts of a beautiful Horse are these: he ought to have a small lean head, with the skin joyning to the same, broad fore-head, short eares and sharp, great eyes, not hollow, his nostrils large and open, his lips thin and slender, a large mouth and close, a long neck and slender towards the head, his mane crested somewhat bowing up, a broadbrest, a short back and strait, his reins fall on both sides, with flanks like an Oxe, his hanches long stretching out, a round rump, his taile with slender long hairs, large thighs fleshy within side as without, his legs strait, lean and plain, large hips, great legs, lean and full of hair, the joints of his legs big, not fleshy by the hoofs, roundhoofs, short pastorns, strong and well set with the rest of the universal members of his body in length as in breadth, his neck rising greater towards his shoulders and breast, and to be higher behind then before, like to the Stag or Hart,

Also the nature of the Horse.

**T**he Horse is of a hot temperate nature, his heat is shewed by his highnesse, he is bold and long of life, for he is of longer life then al other labouring beasts, his temperature is therein found, for he is easie to be taught and gentle towards his master and feeder. Thus much here touching the beauty and nature of a horse.

To

To the Horsemaster, and breeder  
of Colts.

1. **R**ide not thy Horse too young I say,  
Nor labour him to sore,  
Where gristles are as yet but weak;  
Strive not with him therefore.
2. A young horse soon doth catch a crush,  
And wilfull oft they be:  
Whereby there sorrows do increase,  
As daily you may see:
3. Therefore to use and tame thy colts,  
From year to year take pain;  
And when thou mak'st them ready sale,  
The more shall be thy gain.
4. Thy horse once sick, defer no time  
His grief for to appease;  
For soreness oft so dangerous is,  
Thou may'st thy horse soon leese.
5. If thou doest mark of soreness most,  
Whereof they do proceed.  
Thou shalt find out that most do come  
For lack of taking heed.
6. Therefore let this Book be thy glass,  
Wherein thou may'st have sight,  
How for to help and save thy horse,  
Wherein thou hast delight.
- 7 Here may'st thou find, both learn & see,  
No kind of helps to want,  
Of secret knowledge in thy horse;  
Which skill hath been full scant.

*A Proverb.*

To trust all current Horse-courfers,  
I vise thee to beware;  
For truth amongst the most of them  
Is found to be full rare.

## Breeding of Colts,

**A**ll those which have a desire for to breed Colts and Horses, they must first make provision for the good government thereof, and to have large pastures and to be measured in their meat as well as other cattel; for a horse doth ask a greater diligence to be meated and kept in the stable, then other cattel. There are three sorts of horses; the first are to be nourished young which are noble & excellent for the field and Tourney. The second is for carriage of burthens, as mays and packhorse, which are bought and sold for that purpose, according to their goodness. The third is another sort of horses and mares of easie prices, common for most men, the which is of a meaner and smaller stature, and for the common sort are most necessary to travel with, and also are better to feed and bring up for to till the earth, which must have also keepers continually to see unto them in fields & pastures as well as in woods or other grounds, and to keep them from dangerous places of mires and bogs; and whereas they may have soft grass & sweet, as well as to be rank, high and great. They do suffer the horses to be with the mares in pastures or other grounds, and pass not when they do cover the mares, not for these sorts of horses; but for your large and great mares, they ought to be covered about April or May, and some do cover in into March, to the end the mares may foal about the same time they were covered, having ready at the same time the tender grass and herbs to feed on; and to have the hot and fair season unto harvest, for about the end of 12 moneths after she foaleth; and therefore ye must with good advisement put the horse unto the Mare, for he that keeps these sorts of beasts, must serve them at the same hour when they are desirous, or when they enter into the fierce and hot desire of the horse, which is (as Hippomanes saith) a venom, because it inflameth both men and beasts, and to have the like rage in love as the horses and mares: For  
mares

mares, may conceive of themselves, without the company of the horse, as without doubt it is most true, that in some Countries, the Mares be of so great heat, and desire so to be covered, that although they have not the horse, nevertheless in thinking and desiring so much the horse, they become with foal. Like as the birds of houses, as Cocks to lay eggs, and Hens to lay eggs without the Cock, And as the Poet Virgil, in his third book of Georgicks: saith thus:

Above all beasts, great love there was  
in these hot sorts of Mares,

As was oftentimes in *Venus* love,  
by fleshly mindfull cares.

When *Glaucus* punished was  
for his audacity,

By carrying of such Mares  
into the Isle of Ponty.

Which love did cause them range  
the mountains of Gargare,

Also Afcany and

the mountains of Gargare:

Though springs and mighty rivers,  
themselves did oft torment,

By eating of the hearb in spring,  
that heat did still augment:

They turning on the mountains high,  
all right against the wind,

(Saith my author *Zephrus*)

in their hot burning mind,

They so became with foal,  
without having the horse,

Which fire to quench is marvellous,  
that so will have its course:

They running in all parts fiercely,  
through ragged rocks and stones,

Over mountains and low Vallies,

with

with cries, sighs, and grones,  
 Except the Orient parts,  
 and in the North and West,  
 Whereas the wind is boisterous cold:  
 with shades oft times opprest.  
 Which beasts with piercing air  
 oft times are turn'd and toft:  
 Whereas small heat of Sun doth come  
 are punish't with the frost.  
 Which caused their hot nature  
 more milder for to be.  
 In Countries cold also they are,  
 as you may daily see.

Also it is most true, in the high mountains of Spain, which lieth towards the Occident seas many Jenets and young Mares have colts without the covering of the horse, which colts they do nourish and bring up, and yet they are unprofitable, for within three years, when they should be at perfect growth, they die. But as touching the covering of Mares, the fittest time is about the moneth of March or April: then let the young Mares be satisfied of their naturall desires, and the rest of the year keep the horse from them: and so separate the great stallions apart it shall be best, because they shall not cover when they would, but to keep them to cover when the best time is: and so it shall be better, so that ye have pasture for them and let them be far from the Mares or else keep them still in the stable till the time of covering you Mares, against which time they ought to be well nourished and fed with barley and dried pease to make them the more lustier. For whereas a horse is weak in covering, so much weaker shall the colt be in growing & might. Some do make the horse therefore as lusty as he may be whereby he may the better indure to cover many Mares within a short time. and yet not to cover above xv. or xx. Mares, nor to begin before he is of three years old: for then he will better continue till twenty

tie years, and most commonly they are found good, if the  
 horse be then strong, and have rest. But if he be feeble and  
 weak, you must then rub the nature of the mare with a  
 sponge, and put it into the horse nostrils: and if the mare  
 wil not suffer the horse to cover her, ye shall bruise the sea-  
 onyon called Squilla, and with that all to rub the secrets of  
 the mare, & that shall put her in more heat. And sometimes  
 they let another horse leap on the mare, to bring her in  
 more heat, and take him off again by and by, and then put  
 the other horse unto her, and so he covers her. Now after  
 she hath taken, and is with foal you must have a great care  
 of hurting her, and not to labour her soon after her cover-  
 ing, or when she is nigh foaling, but to nourish her well,  
 specially in both the said times. If you have not grasse in  
 Winter you must stable her, for she feeds twain; Let her  
 not run, or trabel sore, nor suffer any great cold, nor yet  
 keep her in any strait or narrow place, or close shut up that  
 one hurt not anothers belly. For all these aforesaid do oft  
 times make them bring forth dead colts. Also the snuff of  
 a candle holden at her nose, will make her cast her colt or  
 when she longs, not to give her her desire. Also if the mare  
 foal in travelling, or have a dead colt, ye shall stamp Poly-  
 lipodium roots, or oak-fern, and mix it with warm water,  
 and give it her with a horn. But if she have foaled well,  
 and the colt fair, touch not the colt with your hands, for by  
 touching it ne'r so little (being yet but tender) ye may soon  
 hurt it. Ye must also have a care to see it laid warm, and to  
 order the dam so, as she may have space enough about her;  
 for the tender colt may be soon hurt by the dam, if she should  
 chance to lie on it. So by little and little ye may bring it  
 abroad with the mare; and take heed that dung hurt not his  
 hoofs: & when he is of more strength, ye may then let him  
 feed continually with the dam, because she shall not have  
 anger to see her colt, for commonly a mare will become sick  
 for love of her colt, if she see it not. Good and lusty mares  
 do bring colts yearly, and the great and fat mares ought  
 not to have colts but from two year to two yeares, to the  
 end

Government  
 of Mares with  
 Foal.

end (by long sucking) the colts may wax and grow more stronger, and thereby they will be the better to travell, when any shall be put to serve in the field.

And the Stallion must not be younger then three years when he covereth a Mare, and so he may continue until xx years well: and the Mare may bear well at two years, so that when she is of three years she shall nourish well her colt but after she is ten years, she is not so good; for commonly an old Mares colt will be heavy in labour, weak and soon weary. If you will, she shall bring a male colt or a female: for the male when the Horse doth cover her ye must bind back with a cord, or pull back his left stone; and for the female bind back the right stone of the Horse. and thus ye may do unto all other kinds of cattel.

After the colt is foaled incontinent you may judge what he will be: if he be wel foaled then tractable & of foot & moving at the noise of any thing full of play, and swift, having a short-rump, more proper then the other are of his age. If he will leap out of a hole without recopling back, If he will by the way pass boldly over bridges and rivers. Also these are the signs in a good colt, having also the beauty & good disposition of the body, as to have a lean small head, black eyes wide nostrils short ears strait, and the chine of his back large and soft, & not long, his mane thick hanging on the right side, a large breast, and open with strong muscles & sinews, his Shoulders large & right with round sides, his back bone even, his belly gant his stone and rod close and small, his reins large descending, his knees round and smal not turning inward his legs right & straight his buttocks round his thighs thick and strong, his tail long with big crumbled hair his hoofs hard and high smooth and round, & his fore-top above very smal, and all his body big high and straight, and wel in lifting his feet, fair to see in lenght & round, according to his body, and to be pleasant & soon chafed, and sudden gentle and meeke again; for these colts of such nature do soon obey the man, & will patiently endure labour and travel. If a colt when he is foaled do not  
cast

cast his milt, husbandmen say he will not live long, but die  
sodainly in few yeares; and some colts will cast two milts :  
No horse that liues 12. yeares hath any milt within. Also for  
the taming or breaking of a horse-colt, when he is of two  
yeares. he may well be tamed and broken for the use of the  
house, but for the field or tourney he must be of three yeares  
old, and then after foure he may be made take travell, & looke  
also from time to time how the marks doe change in his bo-  
dy. The age of a horse is known by his hoofs and tayle, and  
bars in the roe of his mouth, but chiefly by his teeth; for a  
horse of two yeares old and a half, will cast his two foremost  
teeth above, and also under; and when he is foure yeares old,  
the teeth which we call dogs teeth, fall, and so cometh other;  
and before the fifth yeare the great teeth or chewing teeth a-  
bove doe fall and on the said year, the first teeth that fell are  
returned whole againe, and on the seventh year all are filled  
up again, without having any hollownes in the teeth, and  
from the seventh a man may not well know his age. Yet a-  
bove ten yeares his temples will begin to be hollow, crook-  
ed and withered; therefore some doe take up the skin to hide  
the same, and being old, his hooves will wax long and gray  
haired, and his teeth grow long and black. Also when your  
horses are in health and yet wax leane, ye shall fat them some  
with dzyed wheate and barley, but you must give this like a  
mass in wine or ale, and by little & little, to make them have  
continuall appetite, mix therewith the bran of barley, untill  
you shall accustome them to eat beanes and pure barley.

Also you must each day chafe his body, as you do to some  
men in rubbing them up and down with a cloth, and often  
so covered and rubbed doth profit them much, and also to  
be led and rubbed with ones hand on the back, is better  
then to give them much meat; for rubbing doth profit,  
preserve and keepe both strength of body and legges; for  
fault of rubbing many soresneses doe grow on the legs of  
horses in travell. And this I will counsell you if you lead  
his horse in a rainy time from his labour into the stable hee  
must see that the place be dry, and that their hoves be not  
wet,

Chafing his  
body.

Drinke or  
meat.

wet, or stand in cold wet places; for that both will cause them being hot to founder, or to have an ague, if the stable be not well planked with Dak, or if the earth be not cleansed, and clean straw layd thereon; for horses oft times being hot, they catch diseases in being weary, and standing on the cold ground, especially when they are not strong, then see more unto them; for when they sweat, to give them meat or drinke do hurt them, but when they are cold, you may then without danger give them meat or drinke; but after his drinke stirre him a little, and he shall do the better, and then ye may give him provender or other meat; and when they have rested long, they chafe them suddenly, which is not good. And for your weary beasts, you must let them rest, and put of Sallet oyle into their throats with a horse, or fresh grease with wine: and against cold, you must give them things to vomit, and rub their heads and ridge bones with wine or strong ale, or grease melted and warme rubbed thereon. If your horse cannot pisse give him oyl mixed with wine, and chafe him in the flanks, and on the reins. If that serve not, put or give him garlick in ale: also they say to bruise Garlick and rub his yard, is good against let of urine. A piece made of honey and salt put into his yard, or lye flies, or a little frankincense, or squirt the juce of Betony into his yard, or give him warme water, or wash his yard with warm vinegar. All these are good remedies when he cannot stale, when his urine burneth in the inner part of the bladder, or when he hath a hot water.

Pain in the  
head.

Also when a horse hath paine in his head you may know it by his dropping of his urine, and in falling and flagging of his eares, his neck and head heavy, hanging downward; and then you must let him blood on the vein under the eye, and squirt into his nostrils warme water, and that day give him no meat: on the morrow fasting, give him warme water, and then some grasse, and litter him well with old hay, or soft straw; at night againe give him warme water, and some barley milt with two pound of fitches, and so by little and little let him come to his ordinary feeding. Also  
against

against pain of the eye-teeth, or grinding teeth, you shall fume them with hot vinegar, & some do hold it to the teeth with a cloth on a sticks end, & so rub them therewith. This is good also when there is any inflammation or swelling in them. Also if his shoulder be hurt, or that he have lost blood then shall ye open the veyn in the middle betwixt his two forelegs, & rub his shoulders with the said blood mixt with the fine powder of frankincense; but let not too much blood for weakning him. and lay on the place his own dung, and bind it fast with something, and ye shall on the next day again draw some more blood in the same place, and use it as before, and then give him no barley but a little hay, and on the third day unto the sixth, ye shall give him in the morning six ounces of the juyce of leeks, mixt with a pound of Sallet oyl, and after the sixth day then walk him a little, and lead him forth to some place to make him swim. Then nourish him well after for a time, and he shall do well.

If your horse be troubled with choler, his belly wil swell and will be hot, nor he cannot then vent beneath & then ye must rake him with your hand & cleanse the natural conduits which are stoppt, & take forth his dung, & ye shall give him sabine, stabesaker, & salt, boyled and mixed together, in putting to a little hony, & minister it in at his tuell like a glister or suppositoꝝ, which wil move & purge forth al the choler. Some do beat three ounces of myrche with three pints of wine, and give it with a horne, & do chase and rub his tuell with tar & old grease. Others wash his belly with salt water of the sea, or water and salt. As for other purgations they do commonly give in powders, and pills, which must be given with good discretion, according to each disease his medicine. Which ye shal understand more thereof at large in Mr. Blundivels booke of Horses, how and when to purge them, therfore I here passe it over.

Against the bots or worms in the guts, when the horse is troubled therewith: the signs are, he will oft wallow and lye downe for pain, and rise suddenly again; Also he will bow his head towards his side or belly, and stamp with his

Drinks for  
Horses.

Mares with  
foale.

Cough.

Pushes and  
Blisters.

feet, and frisk with his taile often. The next remedy is, put your hand into his tuell and draw forth his dung, and wash his belly with his water, or strong salted water, and cast into his throat three ounces of the roots of Capers beaten with halfe so much vinegar, and that will kill all wormes and bots. Some take hot embers, and put it in running water, then straine it, and give it warm with a horse, and walk him half an houre after, and tie him up with the bridle: Others take fenecreeke, and hays licorice, and turmericke of each a halfpenny worth, of anniseeds a pennyworth with a quantity of brimstone in powder, and beat all these small together, and put them in a quart of ale, and give it fasting, warme, and walk and use him as before, and keepe him warm all the day after, or a pint of milk with a spoonfull of sops. Some give sabin chopt among probender, or a little hye, or the fine powder of brimstone in warm milke: Some doe let him blood fasting in the roze of his mouth, and that is the best for a Mare that is with foale, & to let her blood often and to give her a little probender after; for if you should give her stronger things, it were dangerous for the colt, except it were strong and nigh her time. Some do give them mans dung hot and anoint the bridle therewith, and chase him thereon; & malmsey is also good fasting. For the cough newly taken they take lentile pears, clean made, dzyed & beaten to powder, & put thereof into warm water, and so give a pint: Also him thus three days, and give him grasse and tender beanches of herbs. For an old cough they take six ounces of the iuyce of leeks, mixed with a pound of oyl olive, and so give it with a horse, and give him grasse to eat after, and to anoint his grief with vinegar and oyl mixed together. If it help not then chase him sometimes with saltniter and allom mixt together with a feather, of each a like, with some vinegar. If there be pushes or blisters on his body, ye shall trose them so hard in the sun, that they bleed; then mix of the root of Ivy, with as much brimstone of tar and allom, put all together and therewith heale it. For the cough some say, take a hedghog, & cast him into an oven, and dry

dry him to powder, and alwayes mixe of that powder with his provender, whch will at length help any Cough. Or take an handfull of Box leaves, smal chopt, and mix it with a peck of ground Malt, and seeth it in a gallon or two of fair water, and let the horse drinke thereof lukewarm, and give him white water for two or three days after, or an handfull of groundsel smal shred with the powder of Licorag, and anniseeds, of each a quantity, and so give it him warm in a quart of Ale; and then ride him softly after, and keepe him warm for two or three days after.

To heal all sores or other chafings on horses in any part of his body, they do use to wash them with warm water, and then to rub and chafe them with grease and salt melted together, so long untill the matter be ripe, and issue out: Such sores oft times do kill horses, if there be not (in the beginning) some remedy found. Some do anoint them with oyl of Cedar, or Lentiles, or with Pettie seeds mixed with Sallet oyl, or the oyl of a Whale, or the dropping of salt tunny, and chiefly the grease of a Seal fish. But if the sores be old, you must have stronger things, as to boyl of Betony herb and brimstone powder, or ellebory, of pitch, with as much old grease, and with this they do heal all old sores, in raising them first with a sharpe iron, and then to wash them with pisse, and so to anoint. And sometimes, if it be festured, to cut it to the quick; and then to draw it with medicines, as shal be made with Tarre and Oyl, and such like, which will cleanse and fill again the place: and when the haire shal be full again, and closed full with hair, then it shal be good to chafe the place with foot of a caldron and butter. And to heal a nabel gall or sore back, take foot of a chimney and yeast mixt together, and plaister it therewith, which will heale without any other thing in shifting it once a day.

For rising of the skin or raising thereof, take two great Onions and boyle them in water with Hounds tongue herb; then bring hot, take a pound of Salt, and mix it with strong vinegar, putting therein the yolke of an egge,

then mix altogether and rub the place therewith, and you shall see the experience. And for his back that is chapt and swollen, you shall first wash him with piss hot, then anoint him with fresh butter & lay thereon a little hay wet in cold water, and so clap your saddle thereon, & let him rest so all that night or anoint it with butter, then put on the wet hay and your saddle. Some clap these to hot horse dung, and then the saddle, but take the grounds of Ale or Beer, and boyl it wel with Mallows, and clap it hot: but if the skin be thorough chapt, so that it doth water and is very moist, ye shall have ready in a bag filled with the powder of hzier leaves finely beaten, and put a little of that thereon, and it wil dry it up by the morning, and wil heal it also, without other thing. Also for sore eyes, which may be healed with the meal of wild tares called Dzeb, And y crevices & chops on the eyes are healed with fasting spittle & a little salt, or the powder of dry bones, and mixed with burned salt, or the seeds of wild Parsneps, in powder, and put in a cloth, and blow it in his eyes: and all the griefs of the eyes are healed by mixing the succe of plantain with honied water, or if you have not that, take hony & time mixt together. Also for a sore eye, take strong nettles, stamp them and straine them with Beer, and squirt thereof into his eye twice or thrice, then blow in a little powder of Sandiber, & let him take no cold of his eye till it be whole. If you must needs ride him after, it were good to keep a cloth before his eye to defend the wind, & it were good to let him blood under the eye, and then dresse him once or twice & it will suffice. For blood in the eyes take the white of an egge, and clap it to or the succe of Selandine to anoint, & it is good against any stroke; and also it is good to make a toss of bread, & dip it with white wine and clap it to the eye, & use it often, or to let blood under his brows: and to keep the flies from his eyes or other sore, you shall melt tarre and opl, or tarre and hogs grease together, and strike thereof all about.

Sometimes a horse wil cast blood at his nose, which doth weaken him much, and is gotten by some straine, or such like,

like, they stench it by blowing in at his nostrils the succre of Coriander, or bruisse the leaues of Pertwinckle, and put thereof in his mouth, and let him chew it in his teeth, and that will stench blæding at the nose.

Sometimes a horse will loose his tast which commeth of sorrow. The remedy is, take foure ounces of the seeds of Nigel Romana, beaten with six ounces of oyl Olive, mixed with a pint of Wine, and make him to swallow it down. The disposition of hemitt : They use to take it away in making them often to swallow a beaten head of Garlick, with three pints of wine.

Against Impostumes or Pestilent sores, it shall be good Pestilence in to pierce him with a hot iron, rather then with a cold, then Mares. platfer it with heating medicines.

Also there is a Pestilence, which caaseth Mares suddenly to wax leane and so pine away. If any such do happen, you shall put in their nostrils foure pints of fish brine, called Garume. If the griefe be great, they take six times so much, and this will make them to purge, and cast out all Regime at their nostrils.

Sometimes Mares will be in rage but not often, which is to be noted how that sometimes they happen to be in a hot rage; this is when they see their Image in the water. they are suddenly taken with love, insomuch that then they forget to drinke or eat, and in so burning do become dry. The sinns are, then she runs over the pastures as she were chaff or beaten, and looking oft about her, as though she desired something.

Mares in a rage.

They use to heale this folly in leading her to the water again; for when she shall see her self in the water as she did before, she doth suddenly forget her first Image that she saw. And this is often among Mares. Thus will I here leave a little of them, and speak somewhat of Hovls and their natures.

Who so hath a desire to nourish Asses and Hovls, they ought diligently to search for the fairest and best males.

and

and likewise the females to bear Colts: for if they be not both well disposed, those which shall come of them shall nothing prebail. Wee must therefore chuse the Mare under ten yeares and large and faire, and well membered to abide trabbell: and let her bear eake burthens, for hurting the seed within her belly, and not to be onely beautifull of body, but good also of spirit and stomach: and when the seed is long ere it take life within her body, or be long ere the foal, scarcely about the end of thirtē moneths, it is a token of some let. Notwithstanding, the Boyl colt taketh more after the Assē that begat him, rather then after the life and nature of his dam, and yet you shall not find it true in all Mares, no more then it is proper in all hoeses; For sometimes experience doth deceive a mans judgement in him which he chooseth. For oftentimes Stallions of their own nature and race are marvellous in conditions and forme. And whereas the Mares are but small and faire, commonly they bring more males then females. Nevertheless the colts do increase or diminish after, or according to their dams. Some Stallions are ill to see to, and yet shall beget colts of great price. And some do peece a worrthinesse unto the fruit, more then other some. But they are more colder and not so hot of desire, and are not joyned in love but onely with the Mares. And these sort of Stallions must have Mares of the like nature: for the like nature is more familiar to conceive then others. Yet the Assē never begets an Assē, nor the Boyl never begets Boyls: and for this cause they do often suffer the Stallions to mount on the Mares to put them in the more heat, and to take them suddenly away again; which shall make the horse to be more eager of the mare, which before he little past of and this is to be noted by the way those which have their kidneys hot, are alwayes more desirous then those which have their stones and kidneys cold, which is as well in man as in beast.

There is another sort of Stallions which are in a rage

in their fiery heat, which are so disobedient and forward, that thereby they are soon married if they be not wisely governed and handled. And often they breake their halters and cords by gnawing and biting them a sunder, and leape on Mares with foal, often biting them by the neck and backe.

Now to correct such ye must put them into a horse mill and there make him sure, and use him a little to labour gently, and so ye shall make him to leave his furiousnesse. So when he hath left it, yet thereupon let him not be suffered to cover, untill he be in sufficient heat thereunto. For this is of greater importance, that the spirits of these beasts are naturally heaue and sleepe, but by moderate exercises they will be the more libellier to trauell and then ye may let them cover, that by the secret efficacy of hidden nature, their fruit may be the more pleasant. Also a Boyl doth not ingender with a shee Ass or Mare, but a shee Ass with a horse, or a wild hee Ass with a Mare. Certaine Authours which I will not hide, as Marcus Varro, and before him Democritus, and Mago, have said, that in Aethiack, there is no marvell, or yet a monstrous thing to see their Boyls to beare; no more then the Mares in this Country. The most fair and largest cattel among all Boyls, are those which are begotten of Asses, and may well be compared unto those which are gotten of wild Asses: If it were not that they are so troublesome, wild, and hard to governe and rule, like unto their Syze, there were none like them.

Wherefore those Stallions that shall come of that race, shall be better, and so from time to time to alter. For if ye cover a Mare with a Horse that was begotten of a wild Ass or tame, they shall keepe their bignesse and largenesse like their Syze, with the like strength, and age unto their first race. And those which are gotten betwixt a horse and an Ass, shall beare the name of their dams, as they say horse Boyls, for they will resemble and be like unto their Dams. Wherefore it is better to have Boyles  
 of

Hot Stallion.

Beauty of  
Moyls.

Covering of  
yong Mares.

of an Asse stallion, which by experience comes of good and fairer race then otherwise. He must be chosen great of body, with a strong neck, his sides long & large, with an open and large brest, and full of sinews, his thighs fleshy, his legs well trust, and black of colour, or spotted. The Asse are commonly of a mouse dun coloured hair: But that is not a pleasant hair for a Moyl; therefore in general it is good to take good heed thereof, that you be not deceived by your eye; for even like as we shall see the fleece of a lamb, which cometh of a ram with a spotted tongue, so likewise the Asse hath hair of divers colours in his brows and ears, and thereby often they make the Moyls of divers colours: therefore when you have diligently considered of your stallion, yet nevertheless ye may be deceived, for besides these aforesaid marks sometimes they have Moyls by other coloured horses which they know not, and yet the same may be as well esteemed as other; which comes of other cause out from their first dams and generation, which by mixing with others, hath been almost destroyed, and yet by the seed of the horse is renewed again to his first estate. And the Asse which I do write of, so soone as she hath foaled, it ought to be taken away from her and privily to be set to the mare which hath a colt, so that she know not thereof; which must be done in the night, and set in a darke place. But first take away the mares colt, and put to the other: but in ten days she will not let it suck, therefore you must help in the mean time the one as well as the other, as you shall see cause. Delle take the urine or milke of the one, and rub the colts therewith contrary, and at length they will love and use them for their own. And this young stallion colt so nourished of the mare, shall take a love unto mares hereafter. And though oftentimes they be nourished with their dams milke yet being but young, and having the usuall company among Mares da ly he wil thereby the better love them, and so will he serve well your mares, but let him not cover them before he be three years old. And at such convenient times as grass may feed him

him well and sometimes with sheaves of barley, sometimes of good mashes to drinke of barley and wheat, or of wheat sod, or barley sod, & let him not first cover a young tender mare which hath never been covered before. For in the mounting on her, she will often strike him with her feet, and thereby he wil take it scornfully, which shal make him to cast a continual hate to al other hereafter, and therefore they put some other unto the young mare to put her in a heat, and not cover her but with him. And when you shall see her desirous to stand, then take him away and put to the young stallion and let him cover her. Also it shal be good to have a place made with boards descending downward before that she may the better take horse, and not fly aside or farne from the horse when he covereth her. Some do manacle her forefeet to the hinder on both sides. And by this descending place a low Ass or horse, may cover her the better, and the more easie. And after being thus covered with an Ass, or other horse, then in the year after that she hath foaled, you shall not by and by cover her again with another, but in that yeare let her nourish her foale, which foal shal be the better hereafter to do any purpose: therefore let her not be covered again so soone. And when that colt is a yeare old, take him from his Dam, and put the mares in such pastures as you shal thinke good, in woods or in mountaines to harden her hoofs, whereby she may the better trabel hereafter. And always he Mopls are better to bear the pack saddle then she Mopls, yet she Mopls are more quick and nimble, and most meet to bring colts: also they are both good to travell with the burthen and also to labour the earth, if it were not that these kinds of cattell are somewhat too high for that purpose. Therefore commonly they use a teame of Oxen to break grounds before.

And for the burthen, some do say a mare is weaker then a gelding horse, & a gelding horse weaker then a stoned horse and a horse weaker then a mopl. For the mopls, commonly (as they say) will carry five or six hundred weight, and

Place to  
cover.

Horses with-  
out brains.

therewith they will trauell thirty miles a day. For both horse and mules are beasts of great strength, if they had under standing, no man should be able to rule them: and also they say, an Horse or a Poyl hath no brains, but in the place thereof he hath as it were a bladder filled with wind, and no brains therein, or other thing, but like a white water. Thus I leave off Horses and Poyls, and here I will speake of the ordering of Horse in trauell.

How the Husbandman, or Carter should order his Horse in travell by the way, or otherwise.

**T**heir somewhat the duty of Carters, which Carters must also have patience in moderate using of their horses, & at all other times he ought to bear a love always to his cattel, so that his cattel may love him, not fearing them too much: let him neuer use to beat them with the flock of his whip, but whip them with the lash, and use them to the sound thereof, and yet not often, for dulling of them: in trauell use them sometimes with fierce words more then with stripes. Pour loytering horses touch before the other, and the free horse touch him least of all but at a great need. Also a free horse ought to be haltred short, or else he wil l conpoyl himself in straining continually he wil soon be lame, broken winded, or blind. And use all the other at times when ye shal see cause; and let them not in trauell by the way dray or labour so much as they may; touch not a horse with a whip over his back for fear of his eyes, and also he that is behind him, but touch on the legs of the near side, and so ye shall avoid the danger thereof, as to dray too much, for thereby ye may soon dull and tyre them, specially in a young horse: & after trauell truss them up to the fuel for taking cold. Ye must also every morning use to rub & to combe them, for therein a horse doth delight, and it will make them more luffy and fresh to labour, and in Sum-  
mer

mer the like if they be housed, or if they be at grass also :  
 and water them not, but at their accustomed houres, and  
 after they haue journeyed in summer, wash often their feet  
 with cold water, and if you can sometimes with wine, or  
 ale and butter, which will supple and strengthen their si-  
 newes, or to bath them with the lees of wine, which will  
 likewise supple & strengthen them, and after rub their leggs  
 with butter, or nerbe oyl, or neats foot oyl ; if they be shod  
 you shal bind to their hoofs dung mixt with mens urine : &  
 if their feet be hot and haue the gout, ye shall then wash  
 their mouthes with vinegar and salt mixt together, and for  
 þe time, geve them no hay or other forage, as straw or oats,  
 nor yet of litter, but well cleansed, nor let them be shod till  
 they be wel. Also the carter must see daily that his harness  
 be fast and meet for every horse according to his stature,  
 that he may therein laboꝝ the easier. And also these harnes-  
 ses must be wel looked too from time to time and all things  
 belonging thereunto, as halters, bridles headstalls, collers,  
 halions, traces, pipes, wanties, packsaddles, packwanties,  
 and belly wanties, with tack, or shuttle pin, tyed to every  
 bridle with a string to be the readier at need, & each of the  
 belly wanties to haue a crosse pin, or ferrill of wood, to be  
 alway ready to fasten and loose. & to haue all things whole  
 and sound, not to be broken or faulty against any time of  
 occupying, & to be well hanged upon hooks cleane from the  
 ground, that horses tread not thereon, or that dogs gnaw  
 no part thereof, and every horse harness placed by himself,  
 ready to harness at all times. Also the carter ought to haue  
 skill how to mend his harness, to stitch and sew it when  
 any part or parcel thereof decayeth ; and to haue his pack-  
 saddle thred and whittleather alway ready, or other great  
 thred wherewith to prepare to help the same again, and to  
 haue alway with him his awl and pinnell needle. The  
 Carter ought also to haue knowledge in shewing his horse  
 that when any shoe shal loose by the way in travel he ought  
 to haue hammer and nayles ready to fasten it again, for  
 loosing, or to set some other, hee ought to haue alwayes

Horses feet,  
or hoofs.

The horse,  
cart, and har-  
ness, to see ro-

shoes and nayls with him, for by that means he may save his horse oftentimes from danger of subat, grabelling or pricking with some nayl, or cut with some stone, and such like; for to have experience in shoeing is a thing soon learned, there is small danger; but in pricking & clowning with a nayl, or to drive nigh or in the quick; whereupon among all skilfull Smiths this proverb is said which is. Before behind, and behind before; which meaning is, the most dangerous nayls to drive, in the fore feet are the two hindermost nayls and in the two hindermost feet the two foremost nayls, the rest are not so dangerous, so that ye drive them even. If your shoes be made hollow, or rising in the midst, and not flat to the foot, it will be much better for the horse, to cleanse and void gravel. For otherwise thou canst not cleanse them so well, and they will the sooner be grabbed; therefore see to have shoes alwaies ready, against any such time of need.

Preparing  
the Cart.

Like wise when thou dost take any Journey with the horse and Cart, thou must likewise see all things belonging to the cart be substantiall and strong: as the wheels, and cart body strong and sure to beare a burthen, and the arletree likewise. Also see the rathstaves & struts be whole and sound, & well furnished, with staves of good strong holly, hazel, or ash, & to have them ready dyed, if any want or break, and all the shamble staves to be made of good dry & tough ash, which are to beare a burthen from the chiller: and thy cart ladder to be made of good dry ash also, & surely set thereunto. And let your Arletree be so made, that they may fill close the nathes of the wheels; for when they joggle or shake, they go uneasie, and hindreth nigh the draught of an horse, and that also is uneasie for the fill horse. And see that your arletree be wel clouted and nailed close thereon, that the nayls fear not the nathes of the wheels. And see also in like manner the arletree pins be sure and strong, for if the arletree go not close, they are comonly in danger of bowing and breaking; & let your nathes and arletree be well greased with fresh grease and Soap, or Snails mixed together.

together, for that will keep the nathes long cool, and so go  
more easier; which grease you must al ways have with you  
when you trabel by the way, to occupy when you shal see  
cause, & also to have ready ropes ends or other small cords,  
that when any thing doth break or cleave a sunder by and  
by to mend and pie. e it againe. Thus advisedly travellug  
on the way, have an eye to the fore-horse in lanes specially  
and streets, for feare of Children or beasts but if thou stay,  
let thy horse stay also; take heed of the fore-horse in their  
places. Look wel to the body horse, and in rents, holes, and  
dangerous ways be always nigh unto the thiller with thy  
hand nigh his head, whereby thou mayest the better rule  
him upon a sudden, and always looke to the going of the  
wheele. In thus doing, thou shalt keep thy Cart always  
upright from overthrowing. And when thou goest downe  
a hill, drag the Cart behind, and up a hill weigh the Cart  
before. And thus doing in considering all wayes and pla-  
ces, potts and gates thou shalt abyde off-times the dangers  
thereof, which otherwise thou maist happen off to be trou-  
bled with.

Also the Carter ought to see wel to his horse in travel-  
ling, for the horse is a beast of a stout courage, and he loves  
man, and he is delighted with a whistle, drum, or in bells,  
which bells doe not hang so well at the horses ear, as at his  
patrel, or on the back twenty; for the bells hanging so nigh  
his ears he cannot so soon hear his driver. And the Carter  
must likewise be careful at all times to see unto his horse,  
that if any do halt or complain by any means, to see by and  
by unto him, and search where the paine resteth and to re-  
medy it in time, with such things as he shall thinke good;  
sometime to lay on their own dung on their pastozns, as  
before is mentioned; he must also be wel advised when the  
horse is newly hurt and chafed, to make him have a sound  
hoofe again; and in taking cold (after his labour) or when  
he hath the cough, then he must cover & keepe him warm,  
and give him mashes: or if he be more soundzed by travel  
in rainy weather, or at any other like times, you shall clap  
the

Bells on the  
Horse.

Peaces

Peaces

Peaces

the roots of Alexander sed in wine, unto his feet, and make him to eat Jenicreek or Anniseeds among his provender. But if then hee be of full age, it were best to change him. The carter must also understand what love one horse beareth to another (for some will not agree together) and according thereto place them in the stable; the which stable ought to be made clean every morning; for a horse loves to be clean kept & at night to be refreshed with some clean litter, and the horse-keeper ought to sleep in the stable, to be ready if any horse breake loose in the night, & fight with his fellow. The keeper ought also to looke advisedly & warily to his candle, and to place it in the stable out of all danger, and nightly to hang up his harness for fear of dogs or cats, or other danger of hurting with horse and to place them as before is mentioned, and to have them ready against the morning, when he should go forth & labour with them, that he slack not the time in seeking his harness in parts. And when any horse is sick or seeme hea by then to forbear, and not labour him for that time, for fear least he wax worse: for in sickness an horse is a very tender beast and hea by to any labour; therefore whensoever ye have laboured them, walk them after for taking cold till they be in good temper, then truss them with straw (as aforesaid) for taking cold, for thereby breed many diseases in a horse, which diseases and remedies shall here follow.

Fevers.

Pastorns  
fretted.

Here I will turn & speak somewhat of Remedies against soreness that comes oftentimes to horses. For a doyl or horse that hath the fever you shall give him to drink, rue or coleworts; but when he draweth his breath short, and doth often sigh withal, then they use to let him blood on his neck: be it, and then take a pint of wine, with half an ounce of sallet oyl, and mix therewith some frankincense, and with a third part of the succ of Mugwort, give it. And if they have any frets or galls on the pastorns, you shall plaister thereon the pisse of barley meal, and open the imposthume if there be any, and heal it with tents of lint and such instruments as is before mentioned, with a pint and an halfe of Garum

Garum, which I take to be salt fish water with a pound of oyl Olive mixed together, and put into his nostrils, & put thereto the whites of three or four eggs. And sometimes they do lance their eyes, sometimes sear it with an hot iron, & if the blood be descended down into the feet, they cut it as the founder of a horse, & they gibe him bears-foot herb to eat, and Hioscime, called Henbane; the seed also is good to be bruised and given with wine.

Against the leanness in a horse, gibe him often drinks mixed with half an ounce of brimstone finely beaten, with a raw egg, & a penny-weight of the powder of mozt: mixe all with wine, and gibe it with a horn, which is also good against pains of the belly, and for the cough. Also against leanness there is nothing better, or so good, as three-leaved grass, given between green and dry. Which doth also mightily fat him more than other hay, and you shall gibe of this but a little at once for it will encrease too much blood in a horse, and thereby he may soon take hurt. Also when a horse is weary & sore chased, ye shall cast a piece of grease into his mouth, and make him to swallow it, and gibe him some wine or ale therewith. The rest for the horse or horse you shall use as before is written of medicines for Dren or Hares.

Leanness in a horse.

Weary and chased.

The hoof-bound or mate-long is when a horse is pinched or bound in the upper part of the hoof, it will make the skin to stare above the hoof, & to grow over the same. It will pain the hoof so, that he cannot well suffer to tread full on the ground, and will be hot. It cometh by standing dry in the stable, & by straight shooing or heat. The remedy is, you shall raise the hoof above from the top to the sole in four or five places, so that the water may come forth. Some do raze it round in the top, one inch long downward with the point of a sharp knife, and then rub it all well with salt once or twice, and he shall do well. If your horse chance to be stifled, as you may so do, in at a door, or on the highway in slipping his hinder feet, or with a blow: he must be helped soon after, for if he tarry a day or more,

Hoof-bound or mate-long.

Stifling of a horse.

you must then rowl him. If the stiffe be out, you shall feel and see it stick out; then put it in, and bathe him with beer, and bind his other ham with a girth as hard as you can all one night, then chift it in the morning: then rub and chafe the place, and bind it again: use him thus three or four days, and let him stand on the sozeleg; and this is good also for any sprain in that place.

Sp. ain.

If your horse be sprained of some sinew, you shall then wash him with the grounds of beer or ale made warm, & therewithal to bathe it in striking it downward: then bind him round in a hay-rope sod therein, and bind him from the fetter-loke up to the ham, and let it rest all one night thereon. If once do not help, use it oftner: or take of smallage, or-eye herb, Quellin, and some sheeps suet, chop and bruise all together, and boil it in mens urine, and all to bathe his legs therewith: then take a hay-rope sod or dipped therein, and wrap his leg all ober therewith, and he shall do well.

Stide in the  
heel.

For a stide in the heel of a horse, you shall take but oat-meal & salt, of each a little quantity, and temper it with a little running water, and make it into paste in a ball, and thus cast it into a hot burning fire, and let it lie till it be red hot; then take it forth, and let it cool, & then beat it to powder, and put thereof to the heel crushing it down to the bottom of the grief with a linnen cloth tied on a sticks end, and so dress him twice a day, & before your dressing, wash it with the grounds of stale urine made warm.

Farcy or  
Fashion.

If your horse have a Farcy or Fashion, it is an ill disease to cure: but if it be taken in time, it may well be cured. It will run by veins through the body, and appear in many places of the body like knots or bunches, as big as half a walnut shell, and by following a vein, at length it will break it self, and run filthy matter; and as many horses as do touch or gnaw on him, within one moneth shall have the same disease: or if he do bite any other, he will infect him: and if they be not soon holpen, they will die thereof. If any horse have it, avoid him at the first if you can for endangering.

dangering all the other. This soreness commonly cometh of a corrupt blood and humour engendred in the body, & sometimes it comes of bruised blood by some stroke, or of some galling or biting with some other horse, or of ticks, or hog-lice (as some say.) The cure: Let him blood on the vein nigh unto the soze, then burn every bunch, in plucking them up with your hand to burn them the better, & leaue none unburned: then anoint them every day with melted hoggs-grease, till they fall away: then haue ready a bottle of old skale, & bore it a little with some cooperas and salt, and a handful of strong nettles, and therewith wash warm all the corrupt sozes: then fill each hole with the powder of staked limes: do this once a day, till the holes are closed up. If any do ranckle more than others, fill those with verdigrease. In all this time let him haue a small diet of meat, as straw & water, or sometimes a loaf of bread; for the longer he is kept, the sooner he is whole: and yoke his neck, that he lick not his sozes; also the lesse rest he hath, the better it is for him.

Another remedy: Take of mistletoe and skale piss, hony, black sope, seeth these all together, & once a day warm wash your horse all over therewith: Use this five or six days and you shall see experience. Another: Let him blood in the neck four fingers from the head, and also on both the sides, and giue him this drink. Take a gallon of fair water, and put therein a good handful of Rue, & a spoonfull of hempsced and bruse them in a morter together, and seeth it till the half be consumed; and when it is cold, giue it him to drink, and this will make him whole. Another, a very perfect medicine: We shall cut him two inches long, down in the sozehead, and open it in the midst thereof on both sides two inches, & put thererein a scampin, made of the inner rind of Elder bark, and looke it tie trosse the cut, for so it will destroy all the venomed humour in his body, and it will heal him safe and sound.

For a horse that cannot skale, giue him a pint of wine, or ale mixed with garlick, and the whites of ten eggs, and

if you can, for a while gibe him nothing but green grass. Another: Gibe him the iuyce of red Colwortes mixt with white wine, or the root of Alexander bruised & sod in wine or ale, and giben; or to gibe him warm water, or to wash his yard with warm vinegar. Also worm-wood, or southern-wood, or galingale, or mallows or pimpernel some of these or any one of these stamped with ale, & giben, will cause him to make water. For the haw in the eye comes oftentimes of a humour, or it may breed of some stripe. A singular remedy is, to make a plaister of the iuyce of ground Tre, stampt in a mortar with the iuyce of Tre-berries, or of the leaves beat with cold water, but the better with wine, & plaisterwise lay it to, removing it evening & morning. Some do stich the ey-lids in the middle with a needle and double thread, and tie one down & another up, and then with another needle pull out the haw so far as ye may stay it on your fingers end, & so cut away all the hard matter a peny-breadth: but cut not away too much of the wall or fat, & leave also the black behind, for by cutting away too much fat, you shall make thec by the horse bleer eyed: and when it is cut away squirt either Beer or Wine into the eye, or blow a little sandiber into his eye within a day or two after, or camomile mixt with a little honey, and plaistered on.

Viv. s.

The Wibes is an ill tozeness to heal, if they be suffered to come up under the ears, which is a smal difference from an impostume, they do come by taking cold when he is hotun-walked. Also they come of a corrupt humour, & are like kernels & wil make his throat soze, & stop his wind; they do ripe them by laying to hot pogs-grease, & so cut them out: Some cuts a slit on both sides, & with a hook of iron breaks the nest of them, and plucks out part, & puts in the hole of nettles & salt others lay riping things thereto, as some barley meal mixt with three ounces of raisins sod well together in strong wine, then plaister it thereto, and change it not til it be ripe then lance & so tent it with tents, which must be steeped in water, & mixt with sallet oyl and salt: and

and some do burn them downward with a hot iron in the midst, from the ear to the jaw bone, & drawe two strokes under the throat, and then lance it in the midst, & pluck out the kernels with a pair of pincers, so far as he may cut them off without touching any vein, & then fills the hole with salt, and if they be rank, take a crop or two of nettles beaten with some bay salt, & put therein two spoonfuls of ale, or vinegar, then strain it & put in either ear a spoonful thereof, & put some black wool after, and bind it fast, & he shal do wel. The Quinancy is an ill sozeness, and is a sozeness in the throat of the horse, and troubles him to swallow any thing, & comes of some cold humour, which wil make his tongue & throat to swell. The cure: ye shall first fume & wash his mouth with hot water, and then anoint it with the gal of 1 Bul, then take two pound of sallet oyl, with a portion of old wine, put thereto nine fat figs, & nine leeks heads, beat altogether, & let it boyl a while, & before ye take it from the fire, in the end put a little of the powder of nider finely beaten therein: or as ye shal see good, then strain all out, & give the horse half a pint thereof evening & morning warm, and let him eat of barley, or green fitches either barley meal mixt with niter: but in necessity you may let him blood in the pallet of his mouth. The signs to know when a horse is sick, is by his dung, his water or piss, or if he make his dung strong with whole corn or if it be too hard or too soft, or have therein worms, or is of an ill colour, or his breathlabour, or his piss be too thick or too thin, or too red, or too white, all these are signs, he is not wel in the body, or some surfet or raw digestion, or some other grief in the reins, blood or stones. By these signs also it is wel known, if he be slow & heavy in labour, or duller with the spur then he was wont, or in spreading his litter, or of tūbling in the night: or a short breath, or loud snuffing in the nose in casting his vapours out thereat, or immediately after his provender to lie down, or in drinking, taking long draughts, or in the night sudden down and sudden up, or to be hot in his pasterns, and betwixt his

Quinancies.

Signs of sickness.

his ears, or his ears to hang down more then they were wont, or his eye-sight more dim, and more hollow in his head or his hair to stand upright or staring, or his flanks hollow & empty. When any of these things do appear the horse is not well. And some do feel his stones if they be hot or cold, & smell at his nose, & thereby judge of his grief; and when any is not well, he would be set apart by himself till he be whole again.

To stanch  
blood,

If any blind or unlearned Horsesleech do chance to let blood in any place whereas the Sign or Word hath power thereof, if it bleed much, it shall be good to bind thereon of nettles bruised or stamped, or new horse dung mixed with chalk & vinegar, and remove it not for three days; or else to take of burnt woollen cloth, feathers, or silk, or to stamp the herb Perwinckle, & to lay it so; or wild Tansey bruised, and laid so. All these will do well to stanch blood in time of need. Also the coam above the Smiths forge clapt so, and it will stanch.

Blood to be  
let in horses.

Of the abundance of blood come many evils, which is known by these signs: he will often be rubbing, his dung will savour strong, his urine will be red, thick, & stink; his eyes bloody, casting a watry humour; & eateth more commonly then he was wont, breeding also pusses & knots, & knobs in the skin & body, with some inflammations, and oft knapping with his teeth; which ye shall heal thus. If those signs do appear, let him blood on the middle vein in the neck, so much as you shall see cause; if he be weak, take the less, a pound & a half, or two pound. They use to let blood four times a year to keep their horse in health; at the Spring, in Summer, in Autumn, & in Winter. But twice a year, is thought necessary, which is at middle of April, for then the blood doth multiply & in the beginning of September because the blood is hot by unequal vapours and at Christmas, because the blood is then grown thick, to make it more thinn. And some horsemen say, Let not blood except great need, in young horses especially, nor an old horse, but purge; for it doth but weaken his strength.

But

But yet therein know alwaies the strength of the young horses, or if they have need or not, as to have red eyes, hot veins, hot skin, & itching his hair falling away loose, his back hot, & evil of digestion. All these aforesaid are evil: be not negligent then to help, by letting blood on the neck vein. When if it swell after, ye shall clap to of white vine leaves sod in water, and it shal slack and do well.

The Poll Evil is an evil disease to heal if it grow long, and it is betwixt his ears in the nape of his neck: it both come of evil humours grown to that place, and it will grow by beating the horse about the head, which many rustical & rude Carters do use, not regarding nor considering the danger thereof, for that is the weakest & tenderest part of the head, & by such strokes many Cart-horses have that disease, especially in winter: which ye shall soon perceive by swelling of that place, and hanging down his head, in eating his meat with great pain, rotting moze inward then outward, & at length it will break of it self, which will then be the moze harder to heal: but you shall do well to ripe it with a plaister of hogs-grease, laid so as hot as you can, and keep his head as warm as you can, shifting the plaister daily till it do break: if it will not soon break, you shall lance it in the softest place, or burn it through with a hot iron, in the beginning a little under, and thrust it upward a good depth through the softness thereof, & keep it open with tents dipped in hogs-grease, and let the matter descend forth, and plaister it with the same, shifting it once a day, which shall be good to kill the heat thereof. Use this for four daies, then take half a pound of Turpentine washed clean in water, and then take the water dried off, and put thereto yolks of eggs, with some Saffron & mingle it all well together: then search the wound with some whole quill, and make a tent of a piece of a sponge that it may reach to the bottom thereof, and so big as it may fill the wound, and thrust it home with the finger, and plaister it with warm hogs-grease, changing it once or twice a day till it be whole.

If the swelling do cease then use but the tent only, and as it doth heal, make your tent lesser and lesser, till it be through whole.

Broken wind  
to help.

A broken winded horse is hardly healed & soon gotten; for his wind is soon broken by hasty running, or by hēmet labour, being fat, or after he is watred, or by long standing in the stable without stirring or by eating dusty hay, which thing you shall perceiue by the rising of his nostrils, & his flanks at his fuel; then if he be soze chafed, he will cough & blowe thick: it will less appear when he is at grasse or empty bodied. The remedies. We shall take of cloves & nutmegs 3 dzams of galingal & Cardamonum together 3 dz. of soot, of bay seed, of commin more then the other: make al these into fine powder, & put in white wine tempered with a little saffron. Then put to so many yolks of eggs as al the other in quantity then temper it together with the sodden water of licoras, & make it so thin that he may easily drinke it with a horn, & tye up his head for an hours space after, that the drinke may descend down into his guts: then take and lead him forth softly, that it may work the better, & not cast it up again, & let him not drinke of 24 hours after; the second day you shall giue him fresh grasse to eat, and branches of willow, or such like, that by eating those cool herbs, it may mitigate the heat of the potion; the cure is hard. If it haue gone long, then shall you take of the herbs following, that is of Venus or Maiden hair, of flower deluce, of the buds and leaues of licoras, of Cardamonum, of pepper, of biting almonds, of burrach, of each 2 dzams, of Pettle-seed of Aristolochy, of each 2 dzams, of Licoras half a dzam, of pitch, of Coloquintida 2 dz. amounting in all to the quantity of 2 l. Let this potion be giuen to him three times or more if you will, and you may put unto it the water that the licoras hath been sod in. Then if this disease doth yet remain, you shall heal him with this medicine except it be long grown, & this will heal him. notwithstanding there may be others remedies giuen to help for a time, as by drinks in helpi. g his guts, also in sitting his

his nostrils to take wind, which perhaps may be a help to continue long, & gibe him a little boiled wheat for three days space. But first you shall let him drink of the water wherein all these herbs have lain a night before, then gibe it a boil, & let him drink it milk-warm, taking out all the herbs clean with a streiner, as of paunces, lung-wort, Maiden-hair, the crops of Nettles, Carduus Benedictus, herb fluellin, the roots of dragons bruised, the roots of elecampane bruised, of water hemp, of penitroyal, of light-wort, herb Angelica, of each of these a good handfull, or so many as you may have of them: bruise & lay them all night in two or three gallons of water, & gibe it a boil in the morning, and let him drink thereof milk warm, so much as he will, then gibe him of the wheat boiled, use him thus five or six daies, and keep him in a close or cool place, and after let him have grass; this will help him if there be any recovery: and this is good also for any dry cough. And it shall be good to gibe him water sod with licorice & mixt with some wine, & let that be his only drink for nine or ten daies after. Thus much for the broken winded horse.

The Glanders is an ill disease taken by a heat, & a sudden cold, & appears at his nostrils, & to have kernels under his jowls, which will pain him to eat, & at length will run at his nostrils. The remedy: Take both horse-dung & piss, & clap it under his jaws, & so doing it may go away again: if not, the remedy is, Soeth a handfull of pilled garlick in milk, & put a piece of butter thereto, & some ale; then stir all together & gibe it him fasting, & ride him softly a while after, & then set him up, & keep him warm the space of 9 daies if ye can, and gibe him warm water, and he shall do wel. Another: take an ounce & a half of the powder of elecampane, and put it in a quart of ale, & gibe it him warm, and use him as before. Another: put two or three roasted & pilled onions into hot seething milk, with a quantity of beaten garlick, & put it into the milk. then stir it wel, but first put into the milk a little oatmeal, & then the other; but make it not

Glanders in  
horses. j

thick, and put in two or three spoonfuls of honey, & stir it altogether, & give it blood warm, and keep him fasting all the night before, & after this drink walk him a while and set him up warm, and give him meat.

Mourning of  
the chine.

The mourning of the chine is a soreness doubtfull to cure, and is taken by sore travel, and then a sudden cold, which disease is incurable: For, as a French man saith,

To heal the mourning of the chine,  
Is hard to find any medecine.

Strangury in  
Horses.

It will appear at his nose like the Dike wafer, black: or as it were soot & water mixt together, more black then the glanders. If ye will know further herein, read Mr. Blundevill his book of hoxses, & there you shall see it writ-ten at large. The strangury is a grief easy to heal, it cometh by chafing and a hot sweat, and then he taketh cold, wherein he will be very sick: whereupon wil arise swellings in divers places about his head, with kernels on both sides his neck within, near stopping his wind, scanty able to swallow his meat, and holding his head outright, which is manifest that the inflammation is within the throat, and sometime therewith the throat is swoln, so that he hardly taketh his breath, & neither can eat nor drink; which cometh of cold humors from the head. The cure: Let him bleed on the neck vein, if his age will permit: then make a riping plaister of Yallows, Linseed, Rue, & malledge, & ground Ivy; boil all these together, & put to oyl of bay, with a quantity of Dia Althea, then take it from the fire, & therewith make your plaister, & lay it so: let him drink warm water mixed with meal, or lay a plaister of bran steeped in wine to his throat to ripe it; & when it is ripe, lance it, & so tent it, & keep him warm, & anoint often the place of his neck with butter till it be whole.

The Haw.

The haw in the eye of a horse is a little white & hard gristle in the inner corner of the eye, & it will grow & cover his eye: it comes by a gross matter from the head, if it be not cut out in time, it will at length put out his eye: & some horse having one, will soon have another. The cure:

you

You shall take up his eye-lid with a steel-needle, as is foresaid, and wash or spurt in some drink after

The Frounce is a disease soon cured & they are (mal pimpls or warts in the midst of the palat of his mouth above, and they are soft, & they will let him to eat his meat, and they come by eating of frozen grasse, or by drawing frozen dust with the grasse into their mouths. The remedy is: they do but cut or burn them and then wash them with wine and salt, or ale and salt, and so they will go away.

The Frounce  
to help.

A Splint is the least sozeness that is, and always doth continue. Many seems to mend it, & they pare it: it is as wel on the outside of the legs, as on the inside, & sometimes they wil be as big as your finger, which comes by trabeling too young or by too heaby burthens, or by sudden straining, & straining his sinews. The cure: Some do heal it by rubbing it with a hazel stick made crosse with nicks, and therewith rubs the splint all ober crosse. And others do shabe off all the hair, and with a stick cut checker-wise, & then lays farr thereon, & rubs therewith twice a day, all on the splint, till it be clean gone: some do say, to burn is the best, but if he be not well healed, he may halt continually after. Also some do clip or shabe the hair clean away on the splint, and then with an awl, all to prick it ober, so far as it goes, and then lay thereon a hot roasted onyon: Use it thus six or seven dayes, and it will heal him.

Splint to help:

Bots in a horse is an evil disease to heal, if they take the maw: The Bots are commonly an inch long, habing red heads, and are as much as your little fingers end. Some are white, & some are yellowish; being quick in the maw, they will stick fast thereunto. Also there are two other sozts, the one is called long Worms, & the other is called Trenches. All these Worms breed in the horse, by eating of filthy meat, & some do come of the raw matter & by eating green pease, oats, & barley: & when the horse is troubled therewith, ye shal soon perceibe, for he wil forsake his meat, stamping with his feet, & sometimes trembling and suddenly down, & soon up again, & will strike at his belly

Bots in horses:

with his hinder foot, and will often bow his head toward his belly, & shake his head often. The cure: take a quart of milk, & mix it with ten spoonfuls of honey, and give it him warm, & walk him a while after, and so let him rest with little meat, or none, till the next morning, and suffer him not to lye down. Another: Some do anoint his bite with mans hot dung, and ride him after an hour or two, & that will kill them. Another: Some do chop their hair short & put it with bay-salt in their probender; and some gibe Sabin among their probender; & others put hot embers in water, & then incontinently strain and gibe it & so walk him after an hour. Others take a spoonful of hony, with so much of scraped chalk finely beaten, & stir them together & make them into bals & then mix them with ale and make him to swallow them, & so he shall do well.

Long worms.

The long worm is in the panch of the belly: they shine like the belly of a snake, & like in color, & are in the middest great fashioned like a spindle, & they are of seven inches long, or more; and sharp at both ends, and are soon killed; which is, take a half penyworth of senegræk, of anniseeds a pound, & a half penyworth of bay-berries, as much licorice, of turmeric a half penyworth, of brimstone a quantity, beat them into powder, & put them in a quart of ale, and warm it; gibe it to the horse fasting, then ride him an hour after & keep him warm after 24 hours.

A drink.

Malender in a horse.

The Malender is an ill soze, which may be cured for a time, but, if he be ill kept, will soon come again. This doth appear in the bout of the foreknees, and are like a scal or scab: Some horses will have two on one leg nigh together: there will be strokes with hair, which doth venom the place, & they will cause him to go stiff, and make him to stumble & fall, which comes of some corrupt blood, but most specially for lack of rubbing & good keeping. The cure: Take a barreld herring with a soft row, with two spoonfuls of black sope, half an ounce of allom; beat it in a mortar together & then lay it to the Malender for three daies, and it will heal it: or wash it with warm water, & shake away

away all the hair, and the scab also: then take a spoonful of sope, & another of lime, and mixe them together like a paste, & with a cloth lay it and bind it fast on and use this for three days, and every day fresh, & after you take it off, anoint the place with warm oyl of Roses, and by that means the plaister shall take away the scurf: and when the scurf is all gone, you shall wash it once a day with the horses own water, or with mares piss, then cast on the powder of burnt oyster-shells: use this once a day til it be whole.

Windgall.

The Windgall is a sozeness light to heal, it is a bladder full of wind and thin humors on the sides of the joints above the pastozns or fetterlock, as well behind as before: they are like soft bladders under the skin, & got by much trabel, they will pain the horse so, that in hard wayes he cannot wel go but halt. The cure: Some do pick it thereon (with a launcet) the length of a bean where it is highest, & so it wil come out, but beware of hurting the sinews, and you shall see it like the white of an egg: then take the yolk of an egg, and of oyl of bay as much as a nut, mixe them together & plaister it on fast, and lay it thereto and this shall make him whole in a day. Another, Take the roots of cummin & beat them well with a little salt, and then lay it to, & he shall be whole incontinent. Some do lay them, with rubbing thereon the juyce of an onion or leek blades: but if you ride him soon after, they will come again in four days. Some do wash them with warm water, & shave away the hair, and race them with the point of a knife, and so heal it as the splint: and others do burn them downward, & some do cut them, and make the windgall start out, and heal it with pitch and rozen mixt and laid to. Also ground Ivy and Wormwood, with the roots sod in Wine, and laid to.

The Sclander is a sozeness much like the Malander, & is a scab in the bough of the bough of the hinder leg: for as the malander is in the bough behind on the forelegs, so the Sclander is in the bough before on the hinder legs, and it cometh for lack of rubbing, and by evil keeping without any rubbing or dressing when he hath travelled: & as you

Sclander in a horse.

heal

The Spavin  
in a horse.

heal the Malander, so must you heal the Sclander.

The Spavin is an ill sozeness to heal, and there be two kinds of them, the wet, and the dry. The dry is a hard knob as big as a walnut, on the inside of the houghs under the joint: and some will have two spavins appearing on both sides the joint, which is a hard thing to be healed, and it will cause the horse to halt. Some do suppose it cometh by kind, by the horse that got him; but it cometh by extreame labour and heat, by increasing a humor to the master vein, which feedeth the place with evil humour, and grows to a hard bone, wherein the cure is hard. The cure: Some wash it, & then shave away the hair, and open the skin upon the vein a handfull above the knee, and cuts away the vein between both the strings: and where the highest of the Spavin is, there part the skin the length of a date, and with a sharp chisel, half an inch broad, strike it clean away the bignesse of an Almond: & take two penny weight of verdigrease, with a Smiths nerbal; mix them together well, and put it therein & so heal it. Another: Some do, after they have washed and shaven it, race the place with a sharp knife, and they take half a dram of Cantaradice, with an ounce of Cuphorbium made in powder, with as much oyl of bay, and mixe them altogether, & so lay thereof to the soze the space of two days, in shifting it each day once. Then after 2. days anoint it every day with fresh butter, to make the hair come again. Some do fire him on both sides without rainting, and so take up the master vein, and anoint it with butter nine days after, until the fired place do begin to scale, and then boil of Sage and of Pettles, either a handfull, or four handfulls of Mallows in water, and then put to a little butter, & therewith bathe him every day once for three or four days till his burning be whole, & let him not wet his feet in this time.

Soft Spavin.

The wet or soft Spavin, groweth likewise on both sides of the hough behind, and is a soft swelling, and some do call it a thzow Spavin, & commonly it is greater on the

the outside, then on the inside. This will be alwayes soft, and is moze easie to be cured, and cures it as the halfe Spabin.

The Curb is an ill sozenesse, appearing on the great Curb in a  
sinew behind under the hough or cameral place somewhat horse.  
beneath the spabin, it will swell on the sinew, and after a  
little labour he will halt thereon, & then the moze labour  
the greater grief. And this is gotten by bearing some hea-  
vy burthen, when as he is young. Or by some wench or  
some great strein, and that place will shew bigger then  
the other. The cure is ill, if it remain long: but take a pint  
of the lees of wine, with two handfuls of wheat flower,  
with a handfull of comin, then mix them all together ower  
the coals, & being warm, plaisterwise lay it to the grief,  
changing it for the space of thre or four days, once aday,  
till the swelling do go away: and then draw it with a hot  
iron all ower, and then plaister it on with pitch and rozen  
melted together and so clap it to, warm. Some lay flocks  
on it of the hoves colour, and so plaister it, to let it re-  
main till it fall of it self away, and keep his feet dry for  
nine days or moze after, and he shall do well,

The pains is an ill sozenesse, & soon healed, it breedeth Pains of lees.  
in the pastozn under his fetterlock, & it will grow to a scab  
full of scalding and fretting water, which cometh for lack  
of rubbing and clean keeping in that place, after his tra-  
bel and labour by some dirty sand remaining in the place,  
which breedeth the scab. Therefore look to your horses  
that have long hair in that place, for they will soonest have  
it. The cure: Some do wash it with beer and fresh butter,  
good and warm. And first they clip away all their hair sa-  
ving the fetterlock: then they take honey, turpentine, and  
hogs-grease in like quantity, in mixing them together  
with a little Solarmoniack, & two yolks of eggs, with so  
much wheat flower as will thicken it, and then plaister-  
wise lay it to, and lap it thereon with some other cloth, to  
keep it fast and shift it once a day, till it leave watering.  
Then wash it with piss, till it be dried up,

Another,

Another: Take and chafe his legs with a hay-rope till they bleed, or war raw: then take a little sharp mustard, bean flower, and fresh grease, with a little fenegrack, mixe all together in a dish, & make thereof a salbe, & therewith anoint his griefs. And when that place is dry, take honey, and the white of an egg, and fresh butter, temper it together, & anoint the said place therewith. Let him stand dry, not laboured, nor led to water, till he be whole. Another: If they be green and new, ye shall take but beaf-broth, and therewith wash him & then anoint it with sope: use this four or five days, and he shall do well. Another: Plunge his feet in scalding water twice or thrice, & bathe the soze foot with hot scalding water, then have ready an eg hard, rolled, cleave it in the midst, and clap it to as hot as you can, & let it lie bound all night. Use this once or twice, and ye may ride him on the next day.

The Scratches.

The Scratches is a long scurbiness right behind the leg from the fetterlock up to the knee or hough; the hair will stare: ye may easily perceibe it, if ye take his leg & shed the hair, & you shall see it scurby all under. The cure: Wash it with mens urine warm, then take black sope, mustard, and vinegar, of each a like quantity, and mix therewith of an oxe gall, then stir them well together, & chafe & rub the place therewith, & bind thereto a cloth; so use it once a day till it be whole. Then anoint it with neats-foot oyl, to supple the sinews again.

Another: Take the finest hay you can, & burn it to ashes upon a fair board, then mixe it with neats-foot oyl, and make a salbe thereof, then all to rub the sozes till they bleed almost, & then anoint them with the said salbe, and rope his legs, & keep him dry in the stable, and keep him so three or four days, and he shall do well. Another: Take turpentine, honny, & hogs-grease, with two or three yolks of eggs with some powder of bolarmoniack & bean-flower, mixe all well together; in shedding the hair, anoint therewith all over well to the bottom. Use this till it be whole, and let him come in no wet. This sozeness comes also

also for lack of rubbing, and keeping clean after his travel.

The King-bone is also an ill sozenesse: it will appear aboue the foreparts of the hoofs, and some will be round aboue the joint, the hair will stare, & rise on a bunch, and there will issue a thick and slimy matter; it cometh by some blow, or some other horse treading, or by striking one leg against another: in process of time it wil become hard like unto a bone, and it will make him to trip and halt, and you shall see it higher then the hoof: if it grow in any other part of the leg, then it is called a Knob, & no King-bone. The cure: Wash it well with warm water, & shave that place the hair clean off, and raze it with a sharp razor, & make it bleed: then take an ounce of Euphorbium, half an ounce of Cantaradice, & beat them into fine powder, & take oyl of Wags an ounce. If the grief be but smally grown, take the half of each, & boyl them all together, stirring it well, and with a feather lay it boyling hot on the soze, and stir him not for half an hour, then let him be in the stable, and use him thus nine days, ordering him as you do for the splint: Then when the hair begins to grow again, you shall fire in it down-strokes with a hot iron in three or four places, like lines, till the skin look yellow from the pastern to the hoof, & then lay molten pitch, and rozen on cloaks of his colour, and so clap it so, and let it so remain till it fall of it self away. Also some do say, the King-bone cometh of a blood in a young horse, which they help thus: They knit fast a Shoemakers thread aboue the knees, and let it so remain for a space, and that will stay the course of the blood if it come of blood; but this must be done at first, before it grow on the horse foot. Of the foundryng of a horse: There is a foundryng in the body, by eating suddenly too much provender before he is cold, after his travel, which for lack of digestion breedeth ill hamors, & taketh away his strength, and thereon he will be so feeble, scant able to stir his joints, or being down, not able to rise, and so troubled with pain, not able to stale.

D

There

Foundering in  
the feet.

There is a foundring for a horse to stand still in the stable, & not be stirred. There is also a foundring, in letting your horse drink by the way when he is hot. A saying is, Ride him in the water but to the pastozn, & let him drink being hot, he founders: ride him to the knees, he founders not: ride him to the belly he founders, which comes by sudden cooling of his body, which causeth a watrish humour to fall down into his legs and feet, & will make him cast his hoofs. Some do founder but afoze, and sometimes on all four feet: and some say, a horse may be foundred in travelling on hot sandy wayes, and suddenly to ride him but through a shallow water. He may founder him also by taking cold after a great heat, or by standing still on the stones or cold ground, he being hot: or in a cold wind.

The foundring in the body, the signs are these: his hair will stare, he will seem chilly, and shrink together of all four, hanging down his head, forsaking his meat, with quaking after his drink, and within three or four days he will fall a coughing. The best remedy is, to purge him by some glister, or by purging otherwise:

The foundring in the feet, the signs are, he will (within 12. or 14. hours after) crouch on his hinder legs, & his fore-feet will be so stiff, that he is not able to move them, and go as though he could not wel tread on the ground, and be ready always to stumble: Then shall you immediately garter each leg a handfull above the knee or hough hard with a list, then walk and chase him to put him in a heat, & when he is warm, let him bleed on both his veins on the breast, and keep the blood, and take a quart or two of that blood, with two quarts of wheat flower, half a pound of Bo'armoniack, half so much of Sanguis Draconis, with five or six eggs, & a pint or more of strong vinegar; then mix them well all together, & chase all his shoulders, back, loyns, breast, & fore legs therewith, & then walk him on some hard ground, & let him not stand still; & when all the gear is dry, you shall chase him with more, & renew it again, & so walk him three or four hours after, and

and then set him in the stable, and gibe him a little warm water mixt with some malt, and give him some hay and provender, and then walk him again either within the house or abroad, if it be not cold. And thus you shall use him for four dayes, and when all your oymment is spent, then cloath him warm, and let him stand and lye warm, and let him eat but little meat for four dayes.

If he mend not, then it is a sign the humour is in his feet: then must you take off his shooes, & search with your buttresse, & pare his soles before in the midst of his toes, till the water & blood come forth, and so let him bleed well thereat. Then stop it with hogs-grease salt, & bruised nettles, or with turpentine & hogs-grease so melted together & laid so with flax: some do but stop his feet with stamp nettles, salt, and hogs-grease: but first tack on his shooes with a leather, & then stop him and put under the shooe a thin piece of stiff leather, to keep in the stuff, and let him run to grasse, & then shift it once a week, till it be whole. If you let him run a quarter, he will be the sounder. Also some say, if you let him bleed, soon after he is soundered, above his hooes, that will help him from any further danger. Another way: Others do cut the skin on the insides, or on the fountain of his legs, the length of a finger, and fill a hollow straw with quick-silver, and make it lye abroad, and so let him remain till it be whole.

Gravelling a horse, is a fretting under the inside & outside of the foot which will make him to halt: therefore he will not be able to go on his toes. They are small gravelly stones coming under the shooe, betwixt the foot & the calking of the shooe or crushes, and by long travel it will eat into the quick. And whereas the shooe lyeth flat to the foot, there it will soon grabel, and will not lightly forth again, and it is soon mended at the first. The cure: You shall pare the hoof, & get forth all the gravel clean, for if ye leabe any gravel it will breed to a sozenes called a quitter bone, & then must ye stop him with turpentine & hogs-grease melted together, & layd on tow or flax, then clay on the shooe, and keep it

Gravelling a horse.

it stop, and shift it every day till it be whole, and let him come in no wet. If you stop it not well to keep down the flesh, it will rise above the hoof, and then you shall have more businesse, and so put your horse to more pain.

Enterfering  
of horses.

The enterfering of a horse comes to some by kind, and oftentimes it is for lack of a skillful Smith, by ill shoeing; for he will beat one foot against another, against the fetterlocks, on both the inner sides thereof, both behind & before; & by long beating and chafing one foot against the other, he will beat off the skin & make it to bleed, and when sand goeth in, it will fret and chafe it: but he that is a skillfull Smith, may help it in shoeing, if there be any help to be had, or by paring & shoeing he may help it. The cure: take May Butter, if you can, or else new Fresh Butter, with a quantity of yellow rozen, as much narboil; then fry them all together in a pan, & then let it stand till it be cold, & put it in a pot, & put to a little Cow dung & anoint therewith: and if ye bind it to, this will heal the prick of a nail also.

The Colt-evill:

The colt-evill is an ill disease, & comes commonly to young horses, & is by some rankness of water and blood, or else by abundance of feed stop, & so corrupteth in the yard: & some geldings are troubled therewith, as well as stoned horses, specially those which have a string: it will swell very big & cause his belly to swell. The cure: ye shall wash his sheath with warm vinegar, and draw forth his yard, and wash it also: then ride him into some water up to the belly, & make him to swim if you can in some river. or ride him deep in water, and turn & toss him therein, & that will lay the heat of his yard. Use him thus once or twice a week & he shall do well: or bath his cods & yard with the juice of houseleek, & he shall do well. Or wash his cods with water that kineholm is sod in. If a horse be galled in the pastern, with Hackle or lock, or with some halter, if the place be fretted soze ye shall take hony & verdigrease, & boil it together till it wax red, & therewith anoint the place: (it is very good also for all gallings on the withers) and after you have so anointed it, strow thereon fine clipt flax or tow, & make it

thick.

Stick the faster on: Use this once a day till it be whole.  
 Or you may take that ointment aforesaid against  
 interfering, and it will also heal it.

Horses and Mares will be often times louse, which Lice on horses,  
 cometh either by poverty, cold, or ill keeping, and most  
 commonly among young horses: wherein many make smal  
 account thereof, because it may be soon cured, yet they may  
 soon die thereof. The lice wil breed most commonly on the  
 neck. If he have lice, you shall find them in his fore-top,  
 and about the ears, on the tail, and sometimes over all  
 the body, and they make him very pooz, and the skin wil  
 cleave to his ribs, & and he will be always rubbing & fro-  
 ting in breaking all his main and tail, yet he wil eat wel,  
 and his meat doth not prosper him. The cure: You shall  
 anoint him with sope and quick-silver mixed together:  
 and to one pound of sope, take half a dram of quick-silver,  
 or the powder of priest leaves mixed with oyl, and there-  
 withal chafe him all over.

The taint is a sozenesse which comes by over-reach- Taint in a  
 ing the hinder feet on the crutches, or the veins on the fore horse,  
 feet: if they are behind, they come by the treading of some  
 other horse, and it may be soon cured; it wil swell and be  
 sore. Some do use to wash the place with warm water, &  
 then shave all the hair and raze it with a razor, and make  
 it to bleed. Then take Cantaradice & Euphorbium, of each  
 an ounce, and put thereto a quantity of sope, and lay it on  
 the sore, and let him rest in that place half an hour; then  
 lead him to the stable, & standing without litter, use him  
 as for the Splint aforesaid. The next day dress him so  
 again: on the third day begin to anoint him with fresh  
 butter the space of nine days and make him a bathe with  
 thye handfuls of Mallows, a Rose-cake, and a handful of  
 Sage, boyl them al wel together, and put thereto a good  
 piece of butter, or a pint of sallet oyl, and wash him there-  
 with every day for thye or four days, and he shal do very  
 wel.

A horse when he is afraid, it is an ill sozenesse, and Afraid in a  
 horse.

it cometh by great labour and fast riding with a continual sweat, & suddenly a great cold, which will make his legs stark, and the skin of his back and sides to cleave to the bones & flesh, & it cometh by standing in the cold after his labour, or in some cold rain which will cause him to be hide-bound. The cure; We shall let him bleed on both sides of his flanks under his belly; then take two ounces of cummin of anniseeds, of licorice made in powder, mixe them all with a quart of ale, or white wine, & give it them warm; then rub and chafe him all over with your hand half an hours space, then set him up warm, & litter him up to the belly, & cover all his back with a wet sack, or such like; so gird him, & stuff him well about the back. Thus use him a weeks space, and give him warm water mixt with some ground malt. It were good also if you did anoint his body all over with sallet oyl & wine mixt together, or with butter warmed, which is very good to loose and supple the skin.

Cloying in a horse.

The cloying of a horse is an ill hurt, which cometh by evil shoeing of an unskilful Smith, in driving a nail in the quick, which will soon cause him to halt. To try which nail it is, you shall perceive by holding the shoe with the pincers, & strike on the side of the hoof with the hammer against each nail, and the hoof will shrink whereas the pain is, then take out that nail. But if he halt, by and by after, then take off the shoe, & open the hole till it bleed, & pour in scalding-hot Turpentine wax, and sheeps suet melted together and then clap on the shoe again, for so it will little hurt him to travel thereon: but if it first rancle, then must you cut out the hole, and use the said medicine till it be whole, and let him come in no wet. Some do but pour in dayly of boyling butter into the rancled hole, & heals it with that onely, and others do burn the hole by and by with another nail, and that will help also.

The cords of some cold ceruse, is a sinew that makes a horse to stumble, and often trip and ready to fall, and it

it is before on the further leg nigh the horse his body, and there are few horses but fast somewhat thereof. It is cured in two places: one is, they slit the top of his nose, & there with a Bucks horn take up the gristle, & wounds it out four fingers, and slits it in the middle, & lets out blood, then he binds it in two places, three fingers a finger and cuts two inches off between, and knits those ends again together, and then heals him with healing salve; and this shall help him.

Surbate, is a disease in the foot, when the hoof is beaten against the ground: And a flat footed hoof, being tender is apt unto the grief. Sometimes the horse lying too flat, or the horse being long unshod, may soon surbate: you shall soon perceive it, for he will halt commonly on both his fore feet, and creep as though he could not go, like the foundered horse: the cure is easy. If his shoes be not fit, make them fit, and pare his hoof but little, and make them large and easy, and hollow, and tack them on with four or five nails. Then shall you stop his feet with hysan and hogs-grease boiled together, and laid so, hot: and so with the same cover all his hoof over, and bind it fast on with a cloath, in shifting it once a day till it be whole: and give him warm water, and also let him stand warm and dry likewise till he be whole and sound.

Surbating a horse.

how to cure it

Blindness in horses.

Against the blindness in horses: some horses will wax suddenly blind. which is gotten divers waies. He may become blind of a strain, or by great labour in carrying a great burthen. He may wax blind by some stroke in the eye; but taken betimes, there are remedies. The cure: If the sight be gone, & the ball of the eye sound, you shall take a quantity of May butter, with a quantity of Rose-mary, and a little yellow rozen, with a quantity of Selandine, then stamp all together, and seep them with the May butter: then strain it, and keep it in a close box, for it is a Jewel for the eyes that are sore, to have it alwaies ready. And this is good also for all cuts being never

never so evil, and is good for the pin and web in a mans eye.

Against weeping eyes, wash or spurt it with warm white wine twice or thrice a day: also seethe the white of an egge in water, & mix it with cummin and lay it to all night or more, as you shall see cause. Also ground- Ivy beaten, & mixt with wax, & plaistred to: or wormwood sod in wine, & bathe it oft therewith.

And when his eye is stricken with the whip, or such like, you shall open his eye-lids with two nippers of wood made for to hold fast the eye-lids (like a pair of barnacles for the horse's nose) and then to hold them open, and with a quill blow in some beaten Salt, or Sandi-ber.

The pin and  
web in the eye.

You shall blow in, the juyce of the roots of Helandine into his eye, or the juyce of the roots of Rue called of some Verb-grace. Also make a hole in an egge, and put forth all that is within it, and fill it with pepper, and put it in some pot of earth, that nothing come unto it, & put it in a burning Oven till it be quite hot: then take it forth and beat the pepper to powder, and blow thereof into the horses eye.

Another, proved: Take a pibble, or a pabing stone, as the Romans used to pave with, & beat it into a fine powder, & bolt it through a fine cloth, & blow of that fine powder into the horses eye twice a day, till it be whole. If you wil make it stronger, put the powder into a new wooden dish, & cleanse out all the greatest with your finger, & take the finest, & that will heal any pin or web in horse or man.

If blood appear in the eye, ye shall take the white of an egge, beat it, & lay it with tow. Another: The toys of Hawthorns boyled in white wine, & laid to.

For a hurt or stricken eye, you shall take a small loaf of bread, and pull out all the crum, and fill the loaf full of burning coals till it be well burned within, then take off that crust and put it in white wine, and put it on the eyes

eyes: use this often. Then take sope water & cool water mixt, & wash the eye-brows therewith. If it go not away, open the vein of the head that leads to the eye: If his eye be rubbed or chafed, ye shall let blood on the eye-vein, and wash his eye with cold sope water, & put a small splinter on his eye, & he will do well. And to help the red eyes, ye shall lay a plaister of red ointment, or red lead.

Or take the juce of Plantain stamp, & mixed with white wine & laid so. For soze eyes stamp strong nettles, and strain that with beer, & spurt thereof into the horses eye twice or thrice together. Then put of the powder of Sandiber finely made, into his eye: or blow thereof into his eye. And see that your horse take no wind, or cold of his eye, untill it be whole again. If ye must ride him soon after, put a woollen cloth before his eye. It were good to let him blood on the vein under the eye, & then twice dressing will suffice.

## Fistulae in Horses.

A fistula is an ill sozeness to heal and oftentimes breedeth through gallings and chafing sozes, which for lack of looking to betimes is grown to a fistula. The cure: First search it with an instrument of lead that may bow each way to the bottom of the wound; then finding once the bottom if ye can, cut it out round to the bottom with a razor, & take it out, and feel with your finger if there be any flesh amiss, gristle or bone perished; if there be, you must cut it out. Then mix the powder of verdigrease & honey together, and boyl them till it look red, & stir it still for burning so: And being luke-warm dip a tent of flax therein, and tent him herewith, and lay a bolster of flax thereupon. If that will not abide, lay on a plaister of pitch, and tow it fast cross thereon with a pack-thread, or other such like, with which you may sope it, that you remove and open it at all times: and see that you change your tent once a day, untill it do leaue mattering,

mattering, & always make your tent less and less untill it be healed up: and in the end sprinkle a litle unslake Lime thereon to close it up. But if this will not heal to the bottom; to dry up the matter, ye must put in some stronger water, and so use it twice a day untill it be whole.

Another: Take two quarts of white wine vinegar, of camphre half an ounce, of Mercury-precipitate half an ounce, of green treacle three ounces, of red sage a handfull, of parrow and ribwort of each a handfull, of honey half a pint, of Boies grease half a pint: boyl all these together til a quart be wasted & with this you shall wash & cleanse the wound. When to heal the same, you shall take oyl of roses, virgin war, rozen, of each a quantity; of Turpentine tribenian five ounces, the gum of Jby, of Deer-suet: boyl these together, & wash the wound first with the water, untill it gather a white matter, & then dzels it with your salbe untill it be whole.

Fistula in the head.

And for a fistula in the head, some do say: take the juice of houlack, & dip therein a lock of wool, & put it in his ear, & bind it fast. Use this once a day, & you shall see experience.

Another, After ye have cut out al the rotten flesh, bathe it wel with the grounds of Ale made warm, & then wipe the blood clean away. Then take butter, rozen, & frankincense a litle, & boyl them altogether, & boyling-hot pour it into the wound: use him thus once a day, & this will heal it also.

If there be any Inflammation behind the ears, or that it grow to an impostumation in that place, ye shall boyl the roots of Gallows in water, til they war tender, then bruise them & strein out the water clean, & gide it warm to the horse.

Lampas in a horse.

The Lampas is a light sozeness to heal: it cometh by the abundance of blood, & is before in the roof of the mouth, they will swell & be so soze, that he cannot eat his meat. The cure is: Take a hooked knife made very sharp,

Sharp, & made very hot, & therewith cut the swoln places in two parts cross against the teeth, but if they be but smally swoln, then cut but the third rank from the teeth, & let him bleed well, then rub it with a litte salt, & let him go.

If a horse do piss blood, it cometh by some soze strain or Pissing blood. overladen by some heavy burthen, or else being too fat, or some vein broken. The cure: Ye shall let him bleed, and boyl that blood with wheat, & with the powder of dried bark of Pomegranates, then strain it & give it him to drink, three or four mornings, & let him not trabel thereupon: And some do but let him bleed in the pallet or roof of the mouth.

Also others do give him husked beans hoyled with the husks of Acorns, beaten small or mixed therewith. Use this as you shall see cause.

If any horse have received any venom in his hay, or any venomous beast have bitten him, ye shall perceive by his eyes, his head & his body will swell & much shake. The remedy is to run him til he sweat, then straight way draw blood in the pallet of his mouth, & so much as he bleeds, let him swallow it down hot. Horse venomed.

If he be bit by Adder or Snake, ye shall take a live cock & cleave him in the midst, & clap it hot to the wound. Some take but a pigeon, & open her, & clap it to, & thereupon give him drink made with a pint of strong Wine & some salt. Or take the root, & leaves, & fruit of Bziong burnt to ashes, & give unto the horse a good spoonfull thereof in a pint of Wine.

Also if the horse have eaten in his meat any Vens or Chickens dung, it will cause him to have the bloody flux, or the Trenches, which is small worms, or a crawling in his belly or guts. Therefore keep poultry from your stables if ye love your horses.

Also puddle or dunghil water is unwholsom for a horse to drink of, or where Geese or Ducks do use: For it will corrupt their blood, and breed a plague. Therefore it Water not good for horses.

ye can, let them drinke little thereof. And against the Ven-  
dug, & drinke such water, you shall use to give them  
quarterly of the herb Angelica, & Smalage, made in  
powder; and give an ounce thereof in a pint of good wine  
mixed with a little honied water; then walk him till his  
belly swage, or till he make dung.

Pestilence in a  
horse.

And whosoever a horse is in danger of the pestilence;  
called Phibula, they are preserved by the separating asun-  
der from that place. Which disease cometh divers ways;  
as by heat, and overmuch labour, by hunger, & being  
hot to drinke of cold water, or sudden chafing after long  
rest, which things breed the pestilence. It is a disease hard  
to know, but when one dieth, there will soon follow ano-  
ther. Then the best is to separate them, and to make them  
a drinke of Barberries, Pyrrhe, Aristolochia, & Gentia;  
with the shaving of Ivory, of each alike, made into pow-  
der, and give to each horse a spoonful thereof in a pint of  
Wine or Ale: Use this as you shall see cause. Or you may  
give them of Triacle in Wine, or Ground- Ivy in his  
water and meat.

Yellows in a  
horse.

The Yellows is an ill sozeness in a horse; and it is a  
kind of the Jaundies gotten by cold. His body and eyes  
will shew yellow, and also his skin will be yellow. In a  
young horse it is soon had by taking cold after a heat; or  
it may come by stopping of the bladder or gall, or his liver  
inflamed. And likewise a horse getteth the black Jaun-  
dies, if black choler abound in his body; and when he will  
not lie, but stand.

The cure: We shall minister unto him a glister, & take  
him, and let him blood on both sides of the neck, and the  
nose: Some do take Saffron, & turmeric, and mix them  
with milk, and give it warm. But first let him blood on  
the nose, or the roof of the mouth, and then put o the  
juice of Seland ne into his ears, and bind it fast, and in  
twelve hours after, then ride him a little, and then keep  
him warm for two or three dayes after, let him have white  
water warm, & this disease doth often breed the Staggers.

The

The Staggers is an ill sozeness to heal, it will make the horse to hold down his head, & also he will reel to and fro, & forsake his meat: and this proceeds of the Bellows, and of a corrupt humour in the brain his sight will be dim, and he will be heavy in going.

The cure; They do let him blood in the temple vein, and also cut the skin on the forehead, & with a Bucks horn do raise up towards the head three fingers or more deep. Then to melt Turpentine, and hogs-grease to geer, and dip a tent of flax therein, and tent it therewith, and use this once aday till it be whole: and make the like issue on his poll behind, and gibe him a warm mash, and walk him softly once a day.

Another; You shal put a spoonful of the juyce of Sealandine into one of his ears, & bind it fast, and so let him remain, and he shal mend.

Another, Put a little white salt into his ear, and then put in after a spoonful or two of fair water, and then knit fast his ear that he cannot cast it out. This is a used medicine for this disease.

If any horse chance to be goyed with a stake, or otherwise, you shal take and cast him, and open the wound as much as you may. Then take fresh butter, & boll it over the fire, & boyling hot pour thereof into the wound, and make it run to the bottom of the wound if you can, & let him so lye that it may go to the bottom. And then let him rest til the next morning, and use him so once a day til he be whole. For this will heal him without any other thing.

To cast a horse or other beast, ye shal bind fast his head with a strong halter unto some post or tree, then take a big rope of eight fathom, or more, and double it, then knitt a knot a yard from the Bough, and put that bough on his head and neck, then put the double rope betwixt his fore-legs, and so between his hinder legs, and about his pasterns beneath his fetter-lock, then put in the end of the rope into the bough of his neck, and then draw them quicky, and he feeling the rope at his

fether.

fether-locks, wil trusse all four feet together, and so fall. When hold straight the ropes til they be made fast in holding down first the head. Thus you may cast ebery horse without hurting his body, if you lay straw under him.

Loose hoof in  
a horse.

Foz the Loose-hoof, you shal take far thzee spoonfuls, rozen a quarter of a pound; of Tanse, Rue red Mint, & Southernwood, of each a handful; beat them altogether in a mortar, and put thereto half a pound of butter, and a penyworth of birgin wax then fry them al together, & plaister it on a linnen cloth, and lay it thereon seven days, and it wil fasten and do wel again.

Another: If you stop his hoofs with the bzains of a swine, & let him stand stoppt so thzee days together, and remove it twice oz thrice, it wil grow fast, and last as wel as eber it did, and rather better.

The Gorge is a sozeness in the legs of a horse, and it cometh by a great heat in labour and trabel, and so set up and taketh cold, and the eby causeth the blood to fall down to his legs, and there congealeth and maketh his legs to swell. The cure: You must therfore sear him with a hot iron, a handful above the knee. Then rope his legs with a soft rope of hay, wet in cold water, and let it so remain foz a day and a night, and he shal do well.

To make hair come again. Take the dung of goats, of allom, of good honey, the blood of a hog, oz other cattel, mire them all together, and heat them ready to boil, and being hot oz otherwise, rub the bare place therewith, where as no hair is, and it shal come again.

Oz take nettle-seed bzuisd, with honied water & salt, and so anoint. Soot of a Caldron mixed with honey, oz oyl to anoint, oz the root of white Lillies beaten and sod in oyl, and therewith anoint. Green walnut-shells burned to powder, and mixed with honey, oyl & wine, to anoint. Oz the iuyce of a long Onion bzuisd, to rub the place therewith, oz the iuyce of the root of Sowbread to anoint

noine bzingeth hair; or tar, oyl-olibe, and hony boyled a little to anoint, bzingeth hair. Or the ioyce of radish to rub thereon, encreaseeth hair. And so doth all the rest before mentioned.

Evil for a horse, the which wil make him blind in short time, which is, if you place your horse hard by a common privie, so that he feel the scent thereof daily for a moone space, the which thing shal cause him to become blind soon after.

To make an horse blind.

For to heal a gald horse back. You shal take yeast, and mixe it with so much soot of a chimney, & make it so thick therewith that it shal seem like tar: and with that make a plaister, & lay it thereon. Use this evening and morning fresh, & this will both draw and heal. Well proved.

To heal a gald horse back.

If your horse have a brittle hoof the occasions are, he is too hot, too dry, or doth stand dry in the stable unsfoot. The remedy: Take Ore dung & temper it with vinegar, then warm it, and bind it hot unto his feet, all ober and under his feet: on the next day use him so again. Thus use him for a week together, & it will help him. Also, let him stand in the stable on his own dung a moneths space, and that wil also help him. To use to stop him always is good to help that he shal not have it. Also the fat of sodden Bacon mix'd with Turpentine to anoint.

Brittle hoofed horse.

Things good to give unto your horse against any cough or cold are, Turmeric, long Pepper, grains of Bay berries, of each a half peny-worth; Anniseeds a peny-worth, Fenegreek a half peny-worth: Licorice, & of English Saffron alike. Some of these, or so many as you shal think good made in fine powder, and mixed with ale, and given warm, in using as before is mentioned.

A drink for a horse.

Colts are oft pained in the gums and teeth when they grow: You shal take of good chalk with strong vinegar mixed together, and rub the teeth and gums therewith, and they wil amend. The fever is holpen by letting blood on the middle vein on his thigh, four fingers under his tassel, or else take the vein in his neck, and for his drink you may

Colts pained in the gums and teeth.

Fever in colts.

may mixe the iuyce of purslane, gum-dragant, frankincense in powder, with a few damask roses, and give him this in a quantity of honied-water.

Faintnes and  
weaknesse.

Against faintnes and weaknes about the heart of an horse: You shall keep him very warm, take an ounce of myrrh, two ounces of gum-dragant, two ounces of saffron, one ounce of the powder of melilote, one pound of the herb Mercury, the powder of frankincense according to the rest: then mixe all together, and make it in fine powder, & take two spoonfuls thereof and give it with a pint of honied-water, and two spoonfuls of oyl of roses. Use this once a day, until you see him amend: this is also good to strengthen the reins and back, and slackness of other members.

Of too much  
heat in a horse

Against heat in a horse, if it be in winter, you shall give him three ounces of sallet oyl, with a pint of red wine: If it be in Summer, give him two ounces of oyl, with a quantity of wine.

Barbs in a  
horse.

The Barbs are two teats under the tongue: If they grow long, they wil hinder the horses feeding, & they do use to clip them off with a pair of sheers, & then wash it with water and salt, and so they will heal.

Itch in the  
tail.

For Itch in the tail, you shall anoint it with sope, and then wash it with strong lee. This will help against the scab and scurf, & also the worms: and against much wearing of the tail, to keep it alwayes wet with fair water. The itch may come of Tromkins in the fundament, and then you must rake him, for that is a good help.

Foaling, or  
Colts.

Also they say, If a colt do not cast his milt when he is soaled, he wil not live long after, but die suddenly within few years after: there is no horse that doth live long, which hath any milt in him.

Shooing of a  
horse.

Also for the shooing of an horse, methinks it is convenient, that the Husbandman should understand somewhat thereof, although in many places they do know better than some Smiths. For in most places of England, the Smiths have smal skill thereof, but after a common sort, how

how to shoe every horse as he ought to be, they know not. Which knowledge doth consist in divers points: as in good stuff in making fit shoes for every horse hoof, in driving the nails right, and also the making thereof; in paring, and leaving the hoof where it ought to be alwayes having respect thereunto. For there is as great a respect unto the paring, as unto the shoeing; because of the diversity of the hoofs: for some be round, some long, some short, some smooth, some be rough, some tender, some tough, some flat, and some hollow: and broad hoofs commonly have narrow heels, which will be soon weak to travel, or to carry his shoe long: or in going long on his pasterns, he is apt to subside and grabel. The rugged hoof, is not so apt to subside and grabel, but it is a sign of untemperate heat and drought, which makes the hoof brittle. A long hoof doth commonly tread on the heels and pasterns, which breedeth wind-galls. A broad crooked hoof without, & narrow within, it makes him splay footed, and treadeth more inward than outward going with his joints close together, maketh him to interfere, and so become lame. A broad foot inward, & narrow outward, is not hurtfull: but on the outside he will soon grabel. A flat hoof, not hollow within, is like to an imperfect hoof. A hollow hoof will ware soon dry, and that causeth foot-bound. And the straight upright, and narrow hoof will ware soon dry; except he be stopped he will soon be hoof-bound: which will cause him to be so lame, that he cannot tread sure. And whereas the crutches are broad the heels are commonly weak and soft, so that you may easily crush them together: and those horses will never tread well on stones, or on hard ground. And also where the heels are narrow, they are commonly tender and hoof-bound.

The hoof ought to be pared even, that the shoe may sit close and just thereon, not being in one place more high than another. And because the weight of the body before lies most on the heels, therefore to labour them, take

Paring the  
hoof.

And

away

away as little as you may; but the toes, being thick and hard, may be taken the thinner, and the paring of the hinder feet is clean contrary to the fore-feet: as before is shewed in driving the nails, saying before behind, behind before: which is, beware the two hindermost nails on the fore-foot, and the two foremost nails on the hinder feet.

In shoeing the fore-foot, make your shoes with a broad web and with thick sponges meet in all places, somewhat appearing on the outside of the shoe. And when ye nail or set on shoes, pare not from the midst foreward, but beware backward towards the heels: and ye shall pierce the holes wider on the out side of the shoe, then on the inside, and more distant from the toe than the quarters, because the hoof is more thicker foreward than backward, & more hold to be taken: the nails would be made stiff, with square heads, and with sharp points, and meet at the head to fill the holes of the shoes, standing a straw breadth without the shoe: and so will he stand most sure without shaking, and also will last longer. But that order most Smiths do little or nothing at all regard, but do dispatch and away: and when they pierce a shoe, they commonly make the inside as broad as the out-side, and their nails are made with such great shoulders, they cannot sit well thereon nor enter close into the holes: a nail well made should have no shoulder at all, but still lesser and lesser towards the point: For otherwise he will stand too high, and the neck thereof being weak, soon doth break, or else bend at every stroke, as I have often seen the trial, & the shoe thereby soon lost.

Nails to be  
made,

The nails also would be made flatter on the one side, then on the other, with a small point, & still stiffer toward the head: & when you drive, strike softly first with a leight hammer till it be well entred. Some do grease the points (for a tender hoof) to go more easie: and first you shall drive the two hoof or side nails, of each side one, then look if the shoe stand right or not, with the sponges right on the sides:

sides. If not, mend it, and drive your other nails, and set down then his foot, to see if they be all fit, & well placed, and the horse to tread even thereon. If not, take up his other foot, to make him stand more stiff thereon, & with your hammer strike where the shoe is scantest, to make it peeld the way. Then drive all the rest of your nails so, that the points on the hoof may come out even & just, not out of order, like the teeth of a Saw; and you shall clinch so, as the points may be hid in the hoof. Some do cut the hoof a little beneath the nails, & so do clinch. Then shall you pare & rape the hoof round, so that it may be even round with the shoe, which some do suppose to be best.

By paring the broad hoof, not yet fully grown flat, it may be holpen by a skillful Smith, by diligent paring & shoeing: & at the toe let him take as much as he can, but touch not the heels, except to make the shoe to sit plain: yet let the hoof continue strong, & make your shoe with a broad web, and strong, with broad spunges: & from the tack-nails to the heel, let the shoe appear a straws breadth without the hoof, set on with five nails on the outside, & four within, because he weareth more outward then inward.

To pare the rough & brittle hoof: He is commonly weaker on the out-side, then he is on the in-side, & that is because they are commonly hotter then others, & their hoofs may be somewhat more opened, to be the more easier stopped with Cow-dung, or to anoint, to keep them always moist: If a hoof be ragged on the in-side, it would be wrapped & made smooth, and often be stopped, or anointed with Peats-foot oyl, or Turpentine Sheep-suet, or Sallet oyl boyled together, which wil make it tougher: & to shoe a brittle hoof, you must take a mean shoe not too light, nor too heavy; for a heavy shoe he will soon cast: and set it on with seven or nine nails, if it be a large hoof, with five without, and four within.

All long hoofs may be holpen by paring much the toe; For the shorter the hoof is made, the better it is; and a

Paring and shoeing the great hoof.

Paring the rough and brittle hoof.

To shoe a long  
hoof.

long hoof hath commonly a weak and slender leg ; but a short hoof hath commonly a strong leg and the long hoof having a weak leg is forced most to tread on the hæl, and on the pastern. You shall pare the rest like the perfect hoof, and shall shoe him as round as you can at the toe, whereby the breadth may take up the length. If his hoof be narrow, let his shoe bear somewhat without the sides, in making the heels deeper for eight nails, and set the shoe backward enough, because he treadeth much on the hæl, and it will be the better.

To pare a  
crooked hoof.

How to pare a crooked hoof : You must look where it is least worn, & pare that even with the other, not touching whereas it is worn, unless it be to make it plainer : You shall make his shoe strong, with a broad web, not piercing holes, till you have made it fit for the foot, and then make them as you shall see cause, & pierce the holes on the in side more towards the toe than the out-side. And where the hoof is weakest, there let the shoe be strongest, set on nine nails, five on the stronger side, and four on the weaker.

To pare the  
flat hoof.

To pare the hoof called a pomest hoof, or flat hoof, you shall pare him plain for the shoe, taking somewhat of the toe, but touch not the hæl or ball of the foot, but leave it strong : and you shall shoe him with a very broad web to cover the weak sole the better, and make the midst of the web more thick than the out-sides ; and set your shoe on hollow, that it touch no part of the ball of the foot ; and see it be large and long in all parts to be the easier. Pare him round at the toe, and favour his heels, and make it with ten holes, five on each side.

The hollow  
hoof.

The hollow hoof you shall pare round, but chiefly the seat of the shoe about the edges, that the hollownesse be not made too deep, the which you shall keep always moist, for fear of being hoof-bound : & you shall pare him plain in all parts like unto the perfect hoof, and you shall make his shoes like thereunto.

To pare the hoof with broad frushes, he hath little or nothing there to be touched, but taken at the toe, because of his weak heel, and ye shall make his shoe to lye eeven thereon, leaving his heels as strong as ye can, in making his shoe stronger towards the heels then the toe, & the web of the shoe somewhat broader towards the heels, to save them from the ground; and gibe him nine nailes, because they have commonly a broad hoof: the rest use in all points like a perfect hoof.

The broad frush.

The hoof that hath narrow heels, ye shall pare him short, & make the seat of the shoe plain, and ye shall open it between the frush & the heel but a little space, or so much as may be suffered; for the lesse ye take of the heel, the better for the horse: & ye shall shoe him light in a broad web, & make the sponges so broad, as they almost touch, & ye shall pare the shoe more toward the toe, and pare the heels as much as ye can, in making it long enough toward the heels, and setting on with eight nailes, for the perfect hoof.

The hoof with narrow heels.

The hinder foot is clean contrary to the paring of the fore feet, for the weakest part of the hinder foot is before: on the toe, which must always be more pared then the heels, and ye shall pare them in all points according to the perfection and imperfection thereof, as unto the fore feet. Ye shall also shoe them as is aforesaid: but always make the shoe strongest towards the toe, because it is the weakest part of the foot: and ye shall make the outside of the shoe always with a caukin, and not too high, but agreeing to the spongy side, not sharp, but rather turned up somewhat flat thereunto.

Shooing the hinder feet.

If your horse do halt, make your shoe with a false quarter, not touching the sore place. If he halt not, then make his shoe with a button, shouling on the side next to the toe, to defend the same, so it touch not; and you shall pare him (as aforesaid is expressed) and with this shoe ye may trabel at pleasure.

Shooing with a false quarter.

The horse that doth enterfeer, he is commonly higher hoofed.

Shooing for enterfeering.

hoofed on the outside, then on the inside: and therefore alwayes on the outside would be taken moze, & yet be left somewhat bigger then the inside, in making the shooe fit, and thicker on the inside, then on the outside, and without a caulkin, soz that will make him but tread awry, & the rather interfaer: but let him be ridden afoze you, and then mark where he toucheth most, and by paring him there, ye may ease it very much, & also by shoeing.

Paring the  
hoof.

The paring of the hoof-bound: Ye shall pare the hoof-bound at the toe, as short as ye can, and somewhat within on the sole, but open well his heels. Ye shall make his shooe like the half Moon. Also it hath been often seen by negligent & unskillfull Smiths, by paring & shoeing, many hozles ofentimes have taken hurt. Also by the unskillful and negligent keepers, soz want of rubbing their leggs, and stopping their soze-feet: soz the hinder feet are commonly kept moyst, by means of dung lying at their heels, and wet with their pissing upon; whereas the soze-feet stand commonly dry, which makeeth them to be hoof bound and bzittle hoofed.

An ointment  
for the hoof.

Therefore a good keeper will see to stop them from time to time with Cowes dung, soz that is best, and to wash their feet with cold water: and sometimes to anoint them with suppling Oyls, as Peats-foot Oyl, & such like: or with Turpentine, & to anoint therewith all things convenient: and this will make the hoof tough & strong, and keep them from being hoof-bound or bzittle hoofed. Thus much I have bziesly touched, as concerning the paring & shoeing of hozles, with the diversity of hoofs. Ye that is desirous to understand further herein, let him read Master Blundefields book of hozles, and there he shall find written all things moze at large: but this shall be sufficient soz all husbandmen.

Covering the  
Mare.

Also husbandmen say, the chiefest time soz Mares to be covered, is from the end of the first quarter, unto the full of the Moon, or at the full; soz those colts shall be moze stronger & harder of nature. Also if a Mare have taken the

the horse, and is knit within her; if then another horse doth cover her, he burns her, & she will dye thereof. Also it is not so good for Mares to be covered after the change, for those colts commonly wil be neth & tender, & some take farfeits: likewise those Mares that are covered after the full. Also mark in the wane, in what time the Mare was covered, about the same time of the Moon she wil foal.

Against the scabswelling, or strain in the legs: Take For the scab, swelling, or strain. two pound of Perbe oyl, two pound of black sop, ea pound of bozes-grease, melt & boyl them all well together, and strain it, and so let it cool: and when you have any need, anoint and chafe your horses legs therewith: to make it sink the better, anoint him first with Perbe-oil, in holding a hot frying pan near his legs, & so chafe it in, & then use the rest. So done keep his legs from dust, wrapt with some linnen cloth.

To heal the cratches or pain on the legs. Put a hundred & twelbe black Snails in a canvass bag with a pint of bay-salt, & then hang them against the heat of the fire, and set a vessel of pewter under. Then keep that oyl in a glass, then cleanse your horse legs dry, & chafe them with this oyl, & keep them clean after: dzels them thus three or four dayes, and he shall be whole, This must be done, and made in May. Cratches pain.

To

To know where these Diseases do grow on  
Horses Bodies.

- B** Agge, is in the woks of the horse mouth.  
Barbs are two seats, growing under the tongue.  
Bots do breed in the maw or guts.  
Blister on his body, cometh with heat & cold.  
Canery, is in his mouth benomed.  
Colt evil is a swelling of the cods.  
Clobing is in the hoof of the feet.  
Cords, is a slack sinew in the fore legs.  
Curb, is a swelling sinew behind the hough.  
Cratches is a rough scurbinels about the fetter-lock.  
Enterferring is striking on the joint above the pastern.  
Fashion, is a scab or knobs, breaking in divers places  
of his body.  
Fever, is a sickness taken with cold, and will make him  
shake.  
Fistula, is a deep rotted ulcer on his body.  
Foundering, is taken by cold in the body, & feet also.  
Fraying, is a stiffness (taken with cold) in his legs & feet.  
Frounce, is pimples in the pallet of his mouth.  
Gibes or flaps, is pimples or seats in the inside of his  
mouth.  
Glanders, are kernels under his jaws, & when they be  
ripe, they will run at the nose, & there break out.  
Gorge, is a swelling of blood in the legs.  
Gzabelling, is taken in the feet.  
Haw, is a gristle on the corner of the eyes.  
Hide-bound, is when the skin cleaves to the flesh & ribs.  
Hoof-bound, is in pinching of the hoof.  
Itch, is first in the tail, by excess of blood.

**Lampasse**, is high flesh in the mouth nigh the upper teeth.

**Mange**, is taken by some venomous scab or biting.

**Malander**, is a scab in the bough of the knees.

**Matelone**, is pinching of a straight hoof

**Mourning of the chine**, is a wasting from the back.

**Nabe-gall** is a sore on the back against the navel.

**Pains** is a sozenesse about the hoof.

**Pell-evil** is on the nape of the neck bred by stripe.

**Pin and web** is a white that covereth the corner of the eye-sight.

**Rhume**, is taken by cold, and so his teeth will wax loose, & seem long by shrinking up his gums, and then he can eat no meat, but it will lie in lumps in his jaws.

**Ring-bone** is a hard rough gristle above the hoofs.

**Quinsie**, is a sozenesse in the throat.

**Selander**, is a scab in the hams, on the hinder legs.

**Shakle-gall**, is on the pastozns.

**Spabin**, is on the joint in the houghs behind.

**Splent**, is a sprained swelling it new above the fetterlock.

**Stagger s**, is a dizinesse in the head bred of cold and yellows.

**Strangle**, is a swelling in the throat.

**Surbating** is under the soles of his feet.

**Taint**, is an over-reaching of the further feet on the further side.

**Wibes**, is certain kernels, behind the horses ears.

**Windgals**, are bladders above the fetterlock on both sides of all his four feet.

**Yellows**, is a kind of jaundies, and will cause the eyes to look yellow, and other parts of his body also.

Sight to co-  
ver.

**A**gainst blindness or pearl in the eye, or sight lost: if the ball be whole of the eye, first take a new-laid eg, & put forth all within it, & then fill it full of bay-salt, then lay it in the fire till it be burnt black, then take of so much burnt allom as your thumb, then beat both those together into fine powder, then melt a spoonful of fresh butter in a sawcer, & put a little of the said powder therein, and with a feather wipe his eye full thereof, & so the other eye in like case, and then open the first eye again, & put in a little moze: so done, take two new-laid eggs well beaten, & then take fine flax and put therein, and let it drynt up all the eggs, and therewith cover both his eyes: then let him be hooded, and keep him blindfolded, mazzelling him thus once a day for a weekespace: then take the first medicine, and again dzesse him therewith but once in two days, and keep him hooded 13 or 15. weeks after; and this (if there be any help) will help him. But first let him blood on both the temple veins of the eyes on both sides.

Malt worm to  
help.

The malt-worm is an ill sozene's on the foot above the hoof, which will break out into knobs & bunches with a watry humour. The cure: If it be in Summer, take black snails, & burr-roots, then beat them together, and lay it thereto: And if it be in Winter, take the scrapings of a pans bottom, or cauldrion, and put thereto a handfull of green or inner pills of Elder, and beat them together, then lay of that to, and it will heal.

Cratches to  
heal.

For the Cratches, wash it well first with warm piss of men, & dze it with a cloth, and clip away all the hairs on the scales; then rub and chase it all over, and make his feet fast, and rub it all over with Tarr and Butter boyled scalding hot with a clout tyed on a sticks end, & bathe it well therewith. Use this till it be whole, once or twice a day.

Cods inflame-  
ed.

Against the inflaming of the cods, boyl groundsil in wine and vinegar, and so bathe him therewith, or else ride him into a river.

Against pycking in the foot to the quick, so that he do halt,

**hale.** The remedy: Bruise a handful of red nettles, then take black sope and vinegar, of each a spoonfull, & thrice so much of Byes grease, or else of salt Bacon. When beat them all well together, stop the soze therewith, and it will then rot no further, but heal though ye labour him thereon. For a prick with a nail.

Against a loose hoof, take three spoonfulls of Tar, & a Loose hoof quarter of a pound of Rozen of Tansey, Rue, Southernwood, Mint, of each half a handful; beat them all together and put half a pound of butter thereto, with a penny weight of birgin-wax, and fry it thick altogether, and plaister it on a linnen cloth to the hoof, seven or eight days, and it will be fast again.

If any Cart horse or other fall to be blind, & may not see, ye shall do no more but rub two dry tiles together, and take the first powder thereof, the finer the better, and blow thereof with a quill into his eyes; use him so twice or thrice, and this will help. Eyes blind.

The Stond in the foot or pastorn is caught, when a horse stumbleth or falleth or do keep his foot awry in a hole, and is wrenched therewith, and stoned in the pastorn. The remedy: Seeth a quart of bryne till the fume rise, and then strain it, and put thereto a handful of tansey, as much of Malloins, with a saucer full of honey, and a quarter of a pound of sheeps tallow: stir them all well on the fire till the hearbs be well sod, and all hot, lay it to the joint, and sew a cloth all over, and it will be whole in three days. The stond in the pastorn.

The Camery is a sickness gotten by eating of moist hay, that cats or other vermin have piss on, whereby his mouth will be soze that he cannot eat. The remedy: let him blood on two great veins under the tongue, & then wash it with salt and vinegar, and geve him new bread to eat, but let it not be hot, and he shall do well. The Camery to help.

The Trenches are small worms, with sharp ends, somewhat longer then bots, & breed in the guts by eating mouldy bread or hay, or musty corn. The remedy: Take theretoze a quart of cold wort, & geve it him to drink, Trenches to help.

but let him stand meatless all a night before, & after his drink give him no meat two hours after, & he shall do wel.

To help swelling.

For a horseback that is swollen take honey & falloffe even portions & boyl them together, then plaister it on a linnen cloth, & lay it on the sore place, and let it so stick on till it be whole, and it will heal it. Also, another to assuage a swelling is: Take the urine of men, & boyl Hay therein, & being wel boyled, clap the hay on the grief, & keep it warm, & it will help. If a horse back be swollen, & chaff with the saddle, & no skin broke, wet a litle hay in cold water & clap it on, and let the Saddle thereon again by & by while he is hot, & it will be wel, & the skin will fall down again.

Spaid colts and geldings.

If a Mare colt be spaid within ix days after it is foald, he will prove (as some have tryed) fair gaunt, & well to travel & labour and also to journey. As for the gelding of Colts. I have spoken sufficient afore in the book for rudder beasts, therefore I will here let it pass. He that will understand more hereof, let him resort unto those places aforesaid, & there shall he perceive more hereof.

Mourning of the chine.

In the beginning of this disease, it shall be necessary to let him bloud on the brisket veins, & pastorn veins, & to feed him with sundry change of meats, & in any wise to keep him warm clothed & sared, & let him drink nothing but warm mashes of ground malt, giving him these medicines following.

For the chine.

Take of wormwood, Peucedanum, & Centory, of each a like quantity, seethe them in Wine, & strain them, and powze thereof oftentimes in his right nostril, & ye shall see a strange experience to cure him.

Chaff to feed horses.

In some places husbandmen do use for want of Hay to give them in the Winter oftentimes chaff. Of all kinds of chaff the wheat chaff is the best, & most heartiest: but all other chaffs mixed together, as rye, wheat barley, oats, and pease, being wel cleansed, and given with dry beans or pease is good. But before ye mix your beans or pease therewith, ye must sift out all the dust clean from your chaff,

chaff, or else it will breed in your horse, the stopping of the reins and bladder, and also the cough, and ill blood to increase.

Of stabling a horse from grass.

**W**hen you take him up from grass in winter, you shall stable him on a dry day, & see that he be dry taken up in the house, for if he be wet taken up (as some horse-masters say) it will make him scabby, & breed him full of lice. And if your horse be still fed, & standing in the stable, without now & then riding or stirring once or twice a week abroad a mile or two, if he be not thus used, he will wax purse, & be in danger of perishing his wind: therefore to use to ride him a litle, it shall be best, once a week at least.

To pluck forth of the foot stub, thorn, or iron, you shall take the roots of reeds, and mix it with honey: Or take Snails called Slugs, without shels, & stamp these altogether with some butter, then fry them in a pan, & so lay that on the place, and it will draw forth any thing aforesaid: and when it is drawn out, you shall lay thereon the white of an egg on tow: the space of twelve hours after: then take wormwood, marjoram, pimpernel, commonly dyed, olibanum, and beat all into fine powder, and boyl them softly with some Wax, & Bores grease, till they wax thick & so make a plaister thereof, & lay it on, and so heal it therewith.

For stub,  
thorn, or iron.

For to help the mange on horses.

**T**ake of fresh grease a quantity, and scrape therein of chalk, then mix it well together: then put thereto the powders of Brimstone & Elecampane root, & stir it well. Then take a quantity of quick silver, & kill with your fasting spittle, or sallet oil, & mix it with the rest all very well together, & so anoint it. And this will kill the scab or mange in horses or other beasts.

The properties of a fair horse.

**T**o chuse a good horse, & fair, he ought to be of a good colour, having a short hair, a small lean head, with  
broad

broad fozehead. Also with a merry look, & wild of countenance, a stout heart & hardy withal, a small mouth, & long reined, with a white in the fozehead, & wide betwixt the jaws, with open nostrils, a round chin, stiff & small, prick ears, great eyes, broad breasted, low byatoned, broad ribbed, with round sides, thin crested, straight backed, with two good fillets, a short rump, fat & broad buttocks, with four good & sound legs standing upright, one against the other, small knees, little round cods, thin legs, short and black, & round footed, hollow & rough, with a short pastozn, a white foot, & great sinews, a stiff dock, with a long tail, a short trot, well paced, easy to leap on, still chewing on the bit, soon stirred, swift of foot, to turn on a little ground, & durable in journeying: These are the chiefest properties in a good & fair horse.

Colour of  
horse of best  
proof.

Also there be colours of a horse, which are esteemed above others to travel. The best colour is counted the Brown-bay, with a golden mouth, & also under his flanks up to the navel of the same colour, having ribbelled lips, which is a sign of fierceness, and likewise to have for his beauty a white in his fozehead, or a white feather on his nose, either else a white foot behind, with a small head, long-reined, & thin mane, & the mane hanging over the right side, large breasted, side byatoned, lean & small knees, lathellegged, great sinews, short pastozn, deep ribbed, short loynes, broad hollow footed, with a swift and large pace, small cods, & standing upright & open of all four legs one against the other, & of sight to be sound. And these are counted the chief properties of a good & fair horse.

Sad Sorrel.

**A**nd next him is the sad Sorrel, with a flaxen mane, & a flaxen tail, having a wall-eye on the further side, with a black hoof, for then he is like to be good.

Dapple

## Dapple gray.

**N**Ext him is the Dapple gray, with dark dapple spots on his limbs, and having a hairy neck, with a thin tail, and to have on the one side of his neck, or both, hairy fetters like unto crowns; then is he like also to be good to travel.

## Flea-bitten horses.

**A**nd next unto him is the Flea-bitten with a thin crest, having black eyes, black hoofs, with the like properties unto the first horse; for then he will labour, and also dure long time.

## Dun horse.

**N**Ext unto him is the Dun horse, with a black list on the back, and also to have a thin black mane, and a black tail, and a thick hair, having also rough cods and hairy, with other such properties of the brown bay; then is he probable to do well.

## The White horse.

**N**Ext him is the White horse, for he commonly is of long life, but he hath a nice and tender body, and also dangerous to keep: for if he be not well cherished and clean kept, he will soon alter and decay; yet having the same properties as the first horse, he will then labour well and truly.

## The Mouse-dun.

**A**nd next unto him is the Mouse-dun, if he have meal mouth, and rough cods, with a thin mane, having the like properties of the first horse; so is he then probable for to do well.

The

## The Black horse,

**T**he Black horse is next unto him, with a white in the forehead, or a white feather on his nose, or else the further foot white behind; then he may chance to do well.

## The Cole-black horse,

**N**ext unto him is the Cole-black, having no white spot on him: which horse (as some horsemasters say) is perillous to keep: for if he continue long with a man, it is a marvel if he drown him not, or hurt him by some other way, or else the horse will come to small profit.

## The Iron-gray horse,

**N**ext him is the Iron-gray, which is counted the worst colour: for the iron-gray horses are commonly faint to labour, and ill at all assaies: for although he be fair of body, he may in no wise away with any great labour. As for other colours, skewd, or spotted horse, some chance to be good, and some bad, wherefore there is no certainty in them; but if the sire be good, the other may follow. Thus much is spoken to be marked of the colour of horses. Also, if ye put a white horse to cover a coloured mare, she will have commonly a colt of a sandy colour, like an iron-gray, neither like the sire, nor yet the dam: yet many mares will have a colt like the horse that got it.

## A Horse without warts.

**T**here be some horses that have no warts, which is counted a great fault, & yet that is no manner of lozeness, hurt, or disease. But if a horse want his warts on his hinder legs beneath the spavin place, if he then be wild, he is then no chapmans ware; but if he be wel broken & tame, and hath been rid before, then a saying is, Beware the buyer

buyer ; for he hath his eyes to see, and his hands to feel. This is a saying among Husbandmen: for when that horse hath lived so many years as the Moon was ages old when he was foaled he shall suddenly die.

A Horse fore-spoken, a disease.

**V**hen as your horse eyes do water, and that he doth therewith begin to mourn, it is called of some Husbandmen, forespoken. The remedy is: Ye shall take a latten nail or bodkin & dash it through both his nostrils above, between the gristle and the bone of his nose, and there will come forth plenty of ill water and blood, which there hath been congealed: when this is done, ye shall stop both his ears for a day and a night with black wool: So done, then unstop it again and let him bleed on both sides, and also on both veins under his ears, and so he shall amend, and do well again.

The usual places to let blood.

**T**he chief places for letting blood, are these: The two veins under his eyes, and the veins between the nostrils and the gristles of his nose; also the veins in the mouth, and under the tongue, and the two veins on both sides of the neck, which are to be lanced a handfull from the head; and likewise on the neck veins: Also the two great veins on the sides, and two branched veins that lead from the cuds: And again, the two veins under his tail. These are the chief and common places which do serve for to let blood against most diseases. And this I think here shall be sufficient for letting of blood.

Against the Glanders.

**T**here comes oftentimes unto a young horse of four or five years old (by catching cold after his labour) a kind of Glanders, and it will on a sudden raise a swelling under his jaws, & on his jaw-bone, which swelling at the first will be very hard without great heat, & there will

§

remain

remain and breed to some other soze, if ye help it not. The cure: You shall take hogs-grease, & make it very hot; and so all hot, ye shall rub and chafe the soze and hard place therewith; twice or thrice a day use it, and that will mollifie it, and at length it will break and run, and so heal again.

To heal the Mange of a Horse.

**Y**e shall take of Lamp-oyl, the fine powder of Brimstone, of black Sope, of Tar, of barrow hogs-grease, and the soot of a chimney, of each alike; and then mixt them all well together, and boil them together, and then anoint the place therewith as hot as he may suffer it, and use this and it will help.

Against the mourning of the Chine.

**T**ake a peck or a half of Oats, and boil them in running water till half the liquor be consumed, and then put them into a bag, and lay them all hot upon the navel; dress him therewith three or four times, and you shall see experience.

For Horses that are hide-bound.

**W**hen a horse is hide-bound, ye shall perceiue it by plucking up his skin on his sides. If his skin be loose he is not hide-bound, but if it stick close to his side or rib, so that ye can scant take hold thereof, then he is hide-bound; which is commonly gotten in winter, by lying wet, and habing small stoze of meat, which maketh him very faint. The remedies are you shall let him blood a little, and then giue him warme mashes morning & evening, and white water, which is water and malt mixt together, or bran. And giue him also sod wheat mixt with bran, or sod barley. Use this as ye shall see cause, & he shall do well.

To

To plump or puff up a lean Horse in short time.

**T**he best means to puff up a lean Horse, is to seeth Barley in water, till it be soft like frumenty, and thick withall, or to seethe wheat likewise, and give him thereof alwayes befoze his watering: nor after, for then it will do him no good: for this the Husbandman saith, All oze probender or coze after watering is to be given, and all sod coze befoze watering, especially barley and wheat being sod.

Against any galling or fretting through the skin of a Horse.

**I**f your Horse chance to be fretted with halter, or other cord, clean thzough the skin, you shall take but vinegar and sope, and beat them well together, and stir it with a stick or cloth, and then all to rub and wash the said fretting or galling therewith: use this twice or thzice a day, and it will oze it up within two or thzæ daies, and it will heal again: for this is the husbandmans common medicine, and well proved. If there be galling on the neck, ye shall stamp the leaves of Bryony (called the hedge-vine) and mixt it with wine, and plaister it to, and it will help.

How to take out the Haw in the Horse eye.

**T**he Haw bredeth commonly (as cunning Horse-leeches say) by rankness of blood, and gross flegm, which by heat doth bred unto a white hard gristle in the fore-corner of the Horse eye, which will at length make him to lose his sight, if he be not soon remedied.

The cure: The surest and best way to take forth the Haw, and not perishing the Horse eye, is this: First (for the moze safety) framel his legs on the one side, then put a pair of barnacles on his nose, and another on his furthest ear, and so let one hold him fast: then the Master

doth put a Needle with a double thread through the top of his ear on the same side the Paw is, and then from thence he putteth the need e through the edge of his eye-lid on the middl thereof and draweth up the lid towards the said ear, and then fastneth the thread, and cutteth it off; Then knitteth his thread again, and saith to his man, Hold fast (for fear of starting of the Horse the Needle head may put out his eye, therefore to work sure is best). When the Master waiteth when the Horse turneth his eye, and when the said Paw is most seen, then he catcheth hold thereof with his fore finger and his thumb, and plucks it forth a little, and puts his Needle through the outer end of the gristle, and so draweth it further out by the threads end, and then wraps the rest of the said thread about his little finger of the same hand, he puts out the inner side of the gristle which is towards the Horses eye, and with a very sharp knife, he cuts cross the gristle, and easeth finely away the skin, and fat thereof on the said Paw, and also round about it, which is called the wash of the eye; for if that were cut away, the horse will be bleared; therefore you must leabe all the skin and fat about the said gristle, and take away but the tip or outermost end thereof, with the said gristle or Paw which the thread hath hold of: but take not too much hold with your Needle and thread. Then being taken forth, cut off your thread that holds the eye-lid, and pick out the ends thereof out of his eye-lid and ear, else they will afterwards trouble him; and also pluck away all the long hairs about his eyes: then so soon after as the Horses eye doth gather some blood & matter, ye shall take your mouthfull of Beer, Ale, or Wine, and open the eye, and spirt therein once or twice together, and with the side of your hand strike down the blood and matter out of his eye: Use him thus three or four times, untill his eye war clear; and so done, ye may give him what meat you will asfer.

For the trenches and long worms.

**T**O kill the trench worms, or long worms, ye shall take of the powder of worms, finely searled, two spoonfuls, and put it into a pint of Palmsey, & mix it well together, and let it stand to soak all night, and give it your horse in the morning, and keep him without meat and drink four hours after, and he shall do well.

Tongue of a Horse to look to.

**Y**ou that use to keep Horses, must take their tongues often forth, and see if there be any thing breeding under his tongue: for a husk of corn, or seed of hay will trouble him, and soon breed to a Blain, or other sozenels under the root of the tongue.

Horses eyes looked unto.

**Y**ou that keep Horses must often look unto their eyes, for commonly when a horses eye doth shine, & look with a fiery eye, or fiery colour, he hath something troubles that eye. Also let all beware of putting the powder of burnt salt, or the powder of Ginger into the horse eye, for those (at length) will make him blind, because they burn.

To kill the Mange on a Horse.

**Y**e shall take of quick-silver a quantity, & kill it in oyl of bays, mix it so long till ye have made it like the oyl, so that ye can see no part of the quick-silver, & therewith ye may anoint the places infected, and it will heal it.

For the Glanders.

**T**ake a quantity of Anni-seeds, or Licorises, and Elecant-pane roots, long pepper, Barkck, all alike, with three or four new eggs & some butter, a quantity of Aqua vitae, or Palmsey, and some good stale ale: mix all, and make it warm, and so give it; then walk him and keep him warm.

For the Scratches.

**T**ake Skale of men, and warm it, and wash therewith down to the hoof; then take a quantity of mustard, of strong vinegar, gray sope, of Barrows grease, and some quicksilver: mix all together, and therewith anoint.

For the Bots or Worms.

**T**ake of black sope a quantity & make it in three bails, & mix it with a quantity of Salt, & Wormseed beaten, & then open the Horse mouth, & take forth his tongue, & put those bails one after another into his throat, and make him to swallow them, & give him after them a pint of Stale Ale, warm: then walk him a while after, & he shall do well. Or give him of a Tanners fat.

To heal a sore and galled back, and also to heal the dead flesh.

**T**ake a handful of bay salt, a handful of great & small Oatmeal, & put a quantity of Stale thereto, & stir them altogether, & temper it like pap or paste, & then make round bails thereof, then throw them into a hot coal fire & make them red hot; then col them, & beat them to a fine powder, & then strew of that powder all over thereon, so oft as ye shall see it bare, or shall have any other cause, & this will heal it.

For the Yellows.

**Y**ou shall open his mouth, & cut (with the point of a knife) the third barb in the roof of his mouth, and let him bleed well: then take a half-penisworth of English Saffron, a penisworth of Turmeric, and a new laid egg, with the Shells and all, small broken: and mix it in a quart of Stale Ale or Beer, and so give it to the Horse: then chase him a while after, and let him up warm, and he shall do well again.

Another

## Another.

**T**ake a little of Fenigreek, a quantity of Turmerick, a peny worth of English Saffron, two peny worth of long pepper, a quantity of bay leaves dried, of Anni-seeds and grains of each a quantity, then beat all into fine powder then mix it with stale Ale; and so give it unto the horse fasting: walk him a little, and set him up.

## For the Cough.

**T**ake a gallon of fair water & make it ready to seeth, then put thereto a peck of ground malt, with 2 hand-ful of Box leaves stript and chopt smal, with some ground-sil, then mix them altogether, and let him drinke thereof evening and morning: So use this as you shal see cause. Do to mix your Box leaves with Oats and Betony, is likewise very good; and after he must be kept warm.

## To kill Worms.

**T**ake the tops of young Broom, and of Sabine, and Groundsil, of each a quantity. then chop them small and give it with the provender evening and morning, and let him not drinke for a good space after, and he shall do well again,

## To kill the Farcy, or Fashions.

**T**ake a Sharp knife, and cut the bunches ober, and take the powder of white Arsmick, and throw thereon, and use it on each place where ye shal see any of the bunches to rise, with letting blood, and it will kill them at length.

## For Quarts, or Chinks in the hoof.

**T**ake half a pound of Frankincense, a pound of Rozen, a pound of Greek pitch, half a pound of black pitch, a pound of new Wax, a pound of Goats grease, half a pound.

pound of Tarnish, half a pound of Turpentine, two ounces of oil. Olive, and melt them together, and lay it to the hoof plaisterwise and this will help it: but let him not go into any water or wet, for three or four dates.

For More, Sounding, or Glanders.

**T**ake Lunature scorii, of baccatum lauri, of Aristolochia torunda, of Gentium, of nux muscata, of each two ounces, and beat them altogether into a powder, and then put them into a pint of white wine, and give it warm to the horse, and he shall mend.

To help Windgals.

**T**ake Arsnick, of Solimon, of Rezalgar (which are contrasibe) of each a like quantity: then beat them together into a small powder, and mix that powder with oil of Wags, and clip the hair off from the windgal, as broad as it is, and lay of your stufte thereon, so let it lie four and twenty hours: then after anoint it with Boars grease, and that will heal it.

For a galled back.

**T**ake the white of an egge and salt, with some oat-meal, beat all together, and make it in a lump, and cast it into the fire and make it red hot, and cool it again and beat it, and it will be black powder; and strow of that powder thereon, and that will heal it.

If he be galled & festered on the side, take but yeast and honey, the white of an egge, and soot, bind them all together, and make a plaister thereof & lay it to, to eat away the dead flesh, then strow lightly thereon a little verdigrease, and so ye may remove it once a day.

A very good way to destroy the Vives.

**I**F the Vives be rank in a Horse, ye shall bow his ear forwards & gripe him with your fingers under his jaws, and you shall feel (as it were) a hard rowl of flesh like a gristle: that come up, or nigh, to the roots of his ears, then it is perillous as befoze is shewed The cure: You shall cut a small hole with the point of your knife, on the end next his ear, or in the midst thereof an open hole, and pick out three or four kernels thereof. Then put of bay salt or other in o the hole, & so they will consume & wear away: this way of doing, there will no scar be seen in that place.

To help a Horse somewhat foundred.

**P**Luck off his shoes, and pare hollov his feet nigh to the quick; then raze him with a crooked launcer, from the heel to the toe, in two or three places, and raise the hoof on both sides of your razes, & let him bleed wel: then clap two or three hard eggs as hot as you can, & as these do cool take new, and lay hot horse-dung thereto, and about his hoof, & so he shall soon recover and be well again as befoze.

To know the Age of a Horse.

**Y**E must feel of his bydle-teeth abobe, at a year old he will shoot forth a tooth, at two years two teeth, at three years four teeth, at five years five teeth abobe. A mare that hath bydle-teeth abobe, she shall bring few colts or none, & when this bein tooth is with an edge toward the foreteeth, he is eight years old.

A drink to comfort a Horse.

**Y**E shall boyl in Ale great Raisins, the stones taken forth, or Licoriz and Anniseeds in like quantity, of Cummin and sallet oyl; strain it, and give it with a horn, or take also of Turmerick, Fenigreeck, Anniseeds, Licoriz, & Sal et oil: let your powders be searc't very fine, & mix them all milk-warm and so give it with a horn.

¶

To

To help an impostumed wound.

**T**Ake, and hollow, two or three great Onions, and put therein a handfull of bay salt, & a little whole saffron, and so roast them under the embers, and plaisterwise lay them all on the wounds. If ye would have the skin off, make a plaister of colw-dung sod in milk, and clay it to for four and twenty hours, which will take away the skin purified: but the other will heal all wounds alone by it self.

To heal a Horses tongue, hurt with the bridle.

**Y**ou shall boil in water, of woodbine-leaves, of black bzier-leaves, of primrose-leaves, of knot-grass, with some honey sod, and then put to a little Allom, & once or twice a day make it luke warm, & wash his tongue therewith, with a clout tied to a sticks-end, and this will soon heal it again.

For a Horse that doth tire on the way.

**T**Ake and slice a piece of fresh Bael, & lap it about his bit and fasten it with a thread, and then bziele him, and ride him, and he will not lightly tire.

To help a Horses mouth venomed, called of some the Camery.

**T**he Camery is a disease in the tongue and lips of a Horse which hath eaten some venomed grass or hay, that dogs or cats have pissed on, which will make his tongue to have little clifts and scabs, and his upper lip to be full of black wheelks or pimples, which will let him to eat hardly any meat. The cure is: Ye shall take out his tongue, and prick the veins under the end, in six or eight places, and so under his upper lip, and let him bleed well, then all to rub it again with salt, then the next day wash it with some vinegar, and rub it again with salt, and he shall do well again, & give him warm drink a day or two after. Quoth Sharp.

To

To help the Bags in the mouth of a horse.

**T**he Bags or Geaks is a easie sozeness to heal, which is hard gristles being on the inside of a horses mouth in the weaks of his lips or mouth which will often go between his teeth, and trouble him that he cannot eat, nor chew well his meat. The remedy: We shall take forth his tongue, and put a robling pin of wood under, so hold it out on the contrary side; then shall ye with the point of the shears clip an inch long of that inner gristle, clean away; then rub his tongue, and do the other side of his mouth likewise, and then rub them well with salt, and let him go, and they will shrink away, and the horse shall do well again.

An approved Medicine to kill mange on a horse.

**T**ake a pound of black sope, a bottle of mustard, four peniworth of brimstone made in fine powder, three peniworth of quicksilver wel killed with fresh grease two peniworth of berd grease, a quarter of a pint of grease, or less: stir all these together in a vessel, till the grease and other things be molten with labour, & without fire, & therewith anoint the mangy soze: but first let him bleed, then after two days wash it with the water that young Broom or Arlemanack herb hath been well sod in, and smally chopt, & mixed with a little powder of soot, and let those sethe well together, and this will help him with once anointing, and twice washing.

To ripen an Imposthume in any outward part.

**S**et the Wallow roots, and Lilly roots in water, bruisse them & mix them with Dorks grease, & put thereto of Linseed meal & plaisterwise lay it to. Against the imposthume of a cold cause, sethe white Wints in Wine & Oyl, or Ale & Butter, and so lay it to. This will destroy and wast a hard imposthume.

Also for a cold imposthume, stamp Cuck-spit with old grease, and so plaister it on, & this will wast it also. Against again a hot imposthume, stamp Liverwort, & mix it with the grounds of Ale, & it will help: or, bruised with mallows at the beginning mixed with hogs grease, & all-hot laid to, will ripen an imposthume: or the grounds of Ale or Beer boyled with Mallows, and bathed therewith hot and plaisterwise lay it on the swelled place & it will disperse & wast it away in two or three dayes. Also balm stamped & mixed with hogs grease, & so plaistered, will ripen and disperse any cold impostumation. Against a hot rising or swelling, use of lettuce seed, or poppy seed, and mix it with oyl of red roses, and so plaister it on, which will help if it be taken in time. Thus much for swoln places, and imposthumes.

For a Horse that is pricked in a joynt among sinews.

**T**ake of rozen, pitch, turpentine, & Sanguis draconis, then melt these together, & clap it something warm on the place or joynt: then take of flax & put upon it for that will cleave to & defend it, & this will ripen it and cause it to run if any thing wil do it, for there is not found a better way to help a swoln joynt.

Against stiffness in sinews and joynts.

**S**et the a pound of black sope in a quart of strong Ale, till it waxe thick like tarr, then reserve it & when ye shal see cause use to anoint the sinews & joynts therewith, & it wil supple them, and bring them again, although they be shrunk: This is as wel for man as beast.

For a horse that hath a canker in his mouth, or throat.

**A** horse that hath a canker or is venommed in his throat & mouth, he cannot swallow his meat, but it will lie in his jaws on both sides of his mouth, & often when he hath chewed hay, he wil put it out again, & his breath will

will labour very strongly before meat, and having this grief he will never prosper, but pine away at length & he cure: ye shall cast him, and open his mouth with a pin of wood, then take a crooked stiff iron, wrapped with tow on the end, and therewith rake up all the stinking grass, or other meat that lieth in his jaws, and under the root of his tongue; so cleansed clean all about, ye shall heat strong wine vinegar somewhat warm, and wrap your irons end with tow, and dip it in the vinegar: then all to chafe his jaws on both sides a good while, and also the root of his tongue: when ye have chafed him wel, wash his tongue therewith, & so let him rise: Because his mouth will be soze for a week after, ye must give him mashes, and grains hot, or such soft meat, but no hay, and he will be well again, God willing.

#### Foundring of a straight shooe.

**I**f ye let soze-shooes remain above a month if ye four-ney him ye may founder him, which ye shall perceiue in trabel by the way; for he wil often trip on those feet, or that foot which is most griefunto him; therefore remove them betimes, or else he wil founder & halt down right: then the shooe must be removed, & he let blood in the toe; & some do stop it with bruised Sage, & so set on the shooe again: and so let him so rest for thre or four dayes ere you can ride him softly, and he wil do wel.

#### A Proverb among Husbandmen for the breed of a Colt.

**I**f thou have a foal with 4 white feet, keep him not a day.  
**I**f he have thre white feet, put him soon away.  
**I**f he have two white feet, send him to thy friend.  
**I**f he have one white foot, keep him to his lifes end.

#### To make a Horse to scour.

**G**ive him one ounce of the powder of brimstone finely beaten in a mash, with some powder of spurge.

## Against Worms in the Cods.

**S**ome hozses will haue worms in their cods, and when they do abound (if he be not remedied) he will die of them. And these are the signs: he will scratch his belly with his feet, and his hair will stare there, and wax moze grayer then befoze. If you help not befoze they pierce his belly and guts, he shall hardly escape. They are bred by evil meat, & default of dzinking good water. The cure: you shall cast into his mouth fasting the guts of a young Pullet, and make him to swallow it down, holding up his head: do this thzee moznings, & let him not eat nor drink of fife hours after, a very little. Also some do use to bzuise French bzuom, and gibe it amongst good pzobender, and salt water to drink. Others do also gibe the hozse, of green bzanches of willow, oz fallow, oz reeds, and in digestion of his meat, he shall cast out those worms.

## To help sinews troubled with humours.

**B**oil the meal of Linseed, and honey in like poztion together with some white wine, and make it thick as a plaister, and so put it on, and you shall see it come to good pzooof.

## Against shot impozoned.

**W**hen as a hozse is hurt by some poisoned iron, oz shot, take the sweat of another hozse, with tosted oz burnt bzead; mix them together with mens urine, & make the hozse to swallow it down, and put the grease of a hog into the wound with the like mixture, and he shall mend.

## Falling of hair in a Horses tail.

**T**he falling of hair commonly is, when he hath too much blood, oz when he trauelleth too much on the way, oz is bitten on the tail, whereof comes sometimes scabs, with shedding his hair. The cure: If this hap in the tail you shall raze the out part unto the middest of the fourth bone, oz joynt of the tail, and take forth that bone

bone called of some Baribole, which you shall take out clean: and betwixt the senture and the body be coctures of strings somewhat deep, which ye shall softly touch with a hot iron, and a little salt, and in each bent ye shall jointly put a breach of wood which must remain nine daies, if they fall not away of themselves.

The Canker in the tail of the Horse.

**T**here comes a disease in the tail of a horse, called in French Langie: and it will eat the flesh of his tail in manner of a Canker, so that the hair will fall away, for the bones are corrupt. The cure: Make a head-bolster of cloth for it, and wet it with vinegar within and without, and so bind it fast on the soze, and alway when it wareth dry, ye must wet it again. Do this twice or thrice a day; if it be done oftner, it is the better, so shall you continue for three or four daies, and then you must heal it as ye heal a green wound.

For a Horse evil-disposed, and very heavy to travell.

**Y**ou shall cut the skin between the fore-legs, & then make a ring of a Wine branch, & put it into the cut place, between the skin and the flesh, like a rowel, and then he shall travell surely again.

For a Horse that is too fat, to make him lean.

**T**o make your Horse lean that is very fat, ye shall give him bran mixt with honey and warm water, & so it shall abate his fatness without trabel.

To

To know the difference between a Horse bewitched, and other soreness.

**Y**e shall mark this in a Horse (as in other cattle), that when they are sick or diseased (naturally), the grief will oftentimes alter again by little & little, & so amend; Or else it will encrease by leisure, and not come so vehemently as when he is bewitched. For the Farcy in a horse will rise in knobs or bunches, and will so continue a long time ere they break out, and yet the horse so infected will eat daily his meat: But if he be bewitched, he will eat no meat, because he is inflamed with such poison in his body, so that within twelve hours many die or are like to die. Some are stricken with knobs & bunches rising in their bodies, with lameness of limbs; some with running at their nostrils matter and fleem; some, their eyes swelling and hanging out of their head, with fleem and matter roping and running; some suddenly fall, and so die; some run about in the fields as if they were mad, and do throw themselves in pits and ponds of water; with divers other infinite waies they use in bewitching mens cattel, which here I will pass over. But when ye shall doubt of any such thing the best is to seek remedy betimes, ere the poison go through his body: for if you tarry any space, it will be past remedy.

Sinews and Nerves broken, and bruised.

**I**f Sinews or Nerves be broken or bruised, or hurt by some soze or otherwise: ye shall lay thereon the flesh of a Toxue, well mixt and beaten with the powder of Dullen herb: but if the nerves and sinews be bruised, or hurt within, ye shall then burn it round like a circle with a hot iron in small circles or less, & so he will amend again.

An ointment to repair the flesh in a wound.

**T**O repair and to heal flesh in a wound, you shall make this ointment. Take wormwood, pimpernel, calamint,

calamint, oz nip of balm, of war, & of each a quantity; beat them altogether well, and then boyl it ober the fire untill it be mirt wel together: then couch oz steep a piece of linnen therein, and lay it on the sore. This oymntment healeth marvellous well, and repaireth the flesh again.

To heal the Canker on a Horse.

**T**Ake the succe of daffadil roots seven dzams, the succe of hounds-tongue alike, of unslaked lime thzee dzams, of Arsnick powder two dzams; beat all these well together, and put them in a new clean vessel of earth close covered, then boyl it till it be dissolved. First wash the canker wound twice a day with the said compound, until it be killed, and fall away.

Against the tyring of an horse by the way.

**I**F your horse chance to tyre on the way, if spur & wand will not profit, you shal put thzee oz four round pebble stones into one of his ears, and so knit fast his ear that the stones fall not out, and they wil so rattle within his ear, that he wil then go faster, if he habe any spirit oz power. Some do thrust a bodkin through the midst of the flap of his ear, and put therein a pin of wood, and eber when he slackes his pace, the Rider shal strike on that ear with his wand, & so he wil mend his pace thereby. Also if your horse in trabel do war dull on the way, ye shal slice a piece of fresh beef, and bind it about his bit, & thereon he will chew on the way, whereby he wil continue, and trabel wel after.

To help the foundring of a horse.

**I**F your horse be hot riding on the way; and you, riding through a shallow water let your horse stay to take but a sip of water, it will founder him. He shal perceibe it, for he wil often trip with you within a quarter of a mile riding. The remedy: He shal let him blood as soon as you can on the toe-bein, under all four feet: ye may stop the blood

blood with Bolearmontack oz but pinch with your thumb and finger, both parts of the vein, the upper and the nether together, and that wil stanch them: so you may ride your horse again on the morrow as safe as before: Well probed. But if he be soundzed by heat of travel, in hot sandy way, & not soon remedied, it will be long to heal, and perhaps ascend to the joynt of the fetter-lock, and shrink the sinew, which wil cause him to halt and trip. The remedy: Take the roots of Nettles & Hemlocks, Elder-pils. of each a handful, boyl them tender in Bores grease, oz flesh barrowes-grease & so let him bleed in the midd of his foot on the toe vein: then bathe & chafe his joynt and leg there ithal about from the knee to the fetter lock, & then clap it to, and bind a cloth fast to, as hot as you can: so use this once a day till he be wel, & this wil help: Well probed. And anoint his legs with suppling oyls.

For Wolves teeth in some horses.

**A**lso, some horses have wolbs teeth on the upper jaw, and that horse cannot well grind his meat, because the flesh will thrust between when he would grind, which wil lett him greatly from feeding. Which teeth some do file them smooth with a rape, & so after they will wear smooth: In doing this they do use to call the horse. But if a horse do ober reach his neather grinders with his upper, which you may soon perceive by sight oz by feeling; for his upper teeth wil lie ober the neather like a bunch on his cheeks, & that horse cannot eat hay, oz hardly eat any rough meat but it wil lie in lumps in his cheeks, and under his tongue, which grief is gotten (as some judge) by feeding in watery and marish grounds in winter, and thereon comes looseness o' teeth: and when a horse is so, there is no help oz remedy that I can learn but this: call him, and prick his gums, & so let him bleed, then rub them with sage and salt, & so they will fasten again: so use it eight oz ten daies after, for the more surety: but to feed him

him with probender is best, as with bread and grains, bran, ground-malt, and such like, which will be costly to keep: but so he will labour and serbe along time well. In summer ye may put him to grass, and so he will do well. There is much for wolbes teeth in some horses, and overreaching teeth, and also for loose teeth in a horse.

Against the blood, or Plurisie of blood.

**T**he disease of blood is: some young horses will feed, & being fat will increase blood, & so grow to a Plurisie, & die thereof, if he have not soon help: he will sometimes stand and eat no meat, his eyes will seem red, his head & body hot, and he will look heavily, and suddenly in eating he will fall and die. The remedie is: we shall let him blood on the liver-vein, & so he shall do well again.

For a Horse that is swoln with much wind in his body.

**S**ome Horses with eating certain windy meats, or such herbs, will be swoln therewith, as though his belly would burst & then he will eat no meat, but stand hanging down his head, ready to fall, and so die if he have not speedy help. When you shall see any horse so, the next remedie as I can learn, is: we shall take a sharp-pointed knife, or hookin, & arm it so with some stay that it go not too deep for piercing his guts. Then strike him therewith through the skin into the body before the hollow place of the hanch-bone, half a foot beneath the back-bone, & the wind will come out thereof. Then if you put a hollow quill therein (or some feather to keep it open a while) the wind will void the better, & so heal again. When a horse is so, some do rake him, & some do ride him, to make him break and void wind, but this hath been proved the best remedie to save your Horse, or Dre.

Against loose teeth in a Horse.

**A** Horse being grieved with the looseness of his teeth, he cannot eat, but will fumble, & staber his meat in his mouth,

mouth, and may not swallow it down but chew it, and so lie in lumps (for the most part) on both sides his jaws: the most meat he can swallow is grass & provender. This disease is gotten by feeding in wet pastures, and wet grounds in winter, and thereby his gums will shrink from his teeth, & so they will be loose and seem long. For some horse which hath been housed in winter, will soon take this grief, & the red sorrel as soon as any other. The remedy: You shall let him bleed on the vein under the tail nigh the rump, and then rub his gums with sage, tied on a sticks-end. And you shall give him for a while, the tender crops of black bziars with his provender, and so he shall do well again.

For worms in the Maw.

**I**f worms be in the maw of a horse, take great worms and cleanse them, & shels of eggs: beat these both together small with a hammer, and put to Aqua vitæ, & pepper, and so mix them together, and being warm, put it down the horse's throat.

For proud flesh in a wound.

**F**irst you shall wash the wound with wine, wherein is sod nettle seed: then strow thereon a little of the fine powder of verdigrease, and this will take it away. Use this as you see cause.

To make a Horse scour or laxative.

**Y**e shall give him among his provender, one ounce of brimstone beaten to small powder, & this will make him to scour. Also some give a Rye-bread, some make a drink with Polypodium, & Spurge sod with Ale; and the roots of the water flaggs stamp'd, and boil them in Ale; strain it, and milk warm give it, a pint thereof to each horse fasting, and keep him warm after.

Another

Another way to heal the mange on a Horse.

**L**et him blood on both sides the neck, if he be a young horse; then cut the skin down the middle of his fore-head two fingers broad, or long down-right, then open the skin an inch wide on both sides the cut, and put therein thin slices of the green root of Elecampane, or Angelica which is better; so let them remain under the skin till the matter rot, then crush it forth in two or three daies, & in twelve daies the roots will fall out as it healeth; and this will help: But you must anoint the mange with Bizimstone beaten with Uerdigrease, and oyl-olibe, heated and mixt together.

A perfect and approved way to heal the Farcy or Fashion in a Horse.

**T**ake three ounces of quicksilver, half a pound of hogs-grease, of Uerdigrease an ounce; ye shall first kill your quick-silver in a bladder, with a spoonfull or two of the juice of an Orange or a Limon, in rubbing and chafing them in the bladder till the quick-silver be clean killed; then put your hogs-grease in a mortar or dish with your Uerdigrease, so beat them all well together, & so keep it; & when your horse hath the fashion or farcy, in rising on the beins like knobs or bunches, use this once a day, or as you shall see cause, for they will go no further but grow to a matter: & when ye shall feel them soft, lance them, & the matter will run out, & so dry up & heal again. Also in the anointing him, ye shall put into his ears one good spoonfull of ragwort some call it filote, a weed growing in the field: and this will help him in a few daies.

Against the swelling under a Horse jaws.

**F**or the swelling under or between the horse jaws, take his own dung hot as soon as he makes it. and with a cloath bind it fast thereto. Use this twice a day, & it will

help. Some husbands mix therewith hot boyling piss of men, and so lay it thereto, and it helps.

To heal a Horse, hurt with Harrow tines, or such like, on the legs, or other parts.

**Y**e shall first wash the wounds with mans urine and salt, then take the soft down of the stalks of the herb Carduus Benedictus, called the Holy-thistle, & therewith fill the wounds or holes, & so let them remain, & ye shall need no other medicine, for that will heal it alone only, without changing. Well proved.

To make a Horse stale.

**M**ix wine and oyl together, and rub & chafe it on his loyns. or put a louse in his yard, or put sope in his yard; if these help not, squirt of honied-water sod, but cold, in his yard with some salt. Another present remedy: If a maid strike him on the face with her girdle he shall stale.

If your saddle do chafe your horse, take an herb called Arsmart, in Latin Parcicaria, stamp it, and lay it to, which is a present remedy.

Teeth changing or falling.

**A** Horse hath forty teeth: in the thirtieth month after his foaling, he loseth two above, & two beneath. Again, in the fourth year he loseth four teeth, two above, & two beneath; in the fifth year he casteth the rest both above and beneath: And those that come first be hollow teeth above. At six years his hollow teeth are filled up, and the seventh year all the rest are filled up. Of his age ye can no longer judge by his teeth. But if ye pluck up the skin of his jaws or cheeks, if they fall soon smooth again, it is a sign he is young: But if they fall wrinckled, he is old. And the like of other beasts. The horse groweth not after six or seven years. The mare groweth not after five years; and to have them bzing fair colts, let them not be hozst but every other year.

A Table of the Principall things contained in this Book for Horses.

<b>A</b>	Age of a horse to know	177	Chafed or weary horse to help	
	Alles how to nourish		Cloying a horse to heal	142
<b>B</b>	Abbes or Geeks to help	179	Colts with their good signs	104
	Back galled to heal	176	Cold taken in a horse	
	Barbs in the horse mouth to heal	152	Choler abounding in a horse to help	
	Blisters on his body to help	108	Colts to change to other Dams	
	Blindness in a horse to help	143	Colts evil for to help	140
	Blood how to stench	116	Cods inflam'd	162
	Blood a disease how to help	187	Colts pained in the gums or teeth	151
	Blood how to let.		Covering Mares in what time best	158
	Blood letting to know where	126	Cords, a disease to help	
	Bots or worms how to help	131	Cough to help	188
	Bots another way	174	Cough another way	175
	Breeding of Colts		Covering young Mares, and how best	114
	Brittle hoofs how to help	151	Cratches to heal	
	Brittle hooped horse to pare	155	Crooked hoofs how best to pare	
	Broad hoofs how to pare	156	Curbs a disease to help	135
	Broken-winded horse to help	128	Colours of good horses to know	166
<b>C</b>			<b>D</b>	
	Canker in the mouth and the throat	180	Diseases where they breed on all horses	
	Camery to help	163	Drink or meat when to give	106
	Canker in the tails	113	Drink against worms in horses	98, 132
	Cart-horse how to use in travel	116	Drink again? cough or cold	
	Cart how to prepare for travel	118	Drink to comfort a horse	
	Casting of horse or other		<b>E</b>	
	Chafings on a horse to help	105	Ears inflamed to help	
	Chafings sore to help		Eyes sore to heal	
	Clefts or cracks in the hoof	175	Evil travel in a horse	
	Chafe for horse to give	164		

Eyes

## The Table:

Eyes bloody to help		Hair to increase	
Eyes blinded to help	163	Heat to abate in a horse	152
Eyes watery to help		Head of a horse pained	106
Eyes stricken to help		Hen-dungunwholsom for a horse	
Eyes stricken another		Hide-bound to help	170
Eye with the pin and web	144	Hinder-feet shoeing	
Eyes being chaf't to heal		Hollow-feet pared	
Eyes red to help		Oyntment for hoofs	
Eyes sore how to heal		Housing of a horse	
Eyes of horses often looked unto	173	Hoof-bound to help or loose	121
Enter fear to remedy	140	Hoofs being hot on his feet	117
Enterfearing, another		Hoof-bound how to shoe	
Experience of hot and cold horses		Hoof-loose how to help	150
F		Horse without brains	
Falling of teeth in a horse		Horse that will tyre to help	178
Falling of hair in a horse tail		Horse for to scour	
Faintness in a horse to help	152	Horse age or growing	
Farcy or fashion in a horse	122	Horse barns to be looked unto	119
Fat horse to make him lean		Horse or beast fore-spoken	109
Fever in a horse to help	120	Horse bewitched to know	
Fever in colts to help	151	I	
Foaling of colts		ILL for the eyes	
Fistula to help	145	Itch in the tail to help	152
Fistula in the head of a horse	144	Impostume to help to ripe	179
Flat hoof how to pare	150	Imposthured wounds to help	178
Flies troubling a horse to help		L	
Foundring of a straight shoe	181	L Ampas to heal	146
Foundring of a horse to help	138	Lameness in a horse to help	
	177	Leanness in a horse to help	121
Fraying in a horse to help		Lice on a horse to help	141
Frounce in a horse to help	131	Long worms to help	152
G		Long hoof to pare	
Galling or fretting to help	171	Loose hoof to help	163
Glanders in a horse to h.	173	Loose teeth how to fasten	187
Glanders another	176	M	
Gorge how to heal	152	Malender how to help	
Gelding of horses		Malt worm to help	162
Green wounds to heal		Mares when to be covered	102
Grinders or wolves teeth		Mares when to cover	158
Gravelling of a horse		Mange to help	173
Gums pained to heal		Mange in a horse to help	165
H		Mangy, another	189
Haw to take forth, best	130	Mares how for to govern	103
Haw in the eye to help	131	Mares hard in foaling to help	
Haw another way	171	Mares old not good for colts	
		Mares	

## The Table:

Mares how to have male or female colt 104

Mares with foal having Bots, to help 131

Mare having rage of Love 111

Mare long in the foot 121

Moils how to nourish

Moils with their beauty 114

Mourning of the chine 130, 164 and 170

Another for the same

N

Nervs & sinews broken 184

Nails for horse shooes to make 154

Nails in the flesh to heal 165

Narrow heeld horse how to pare

Navel gall, to help

Navel gall, another

Nose bleeding to stench

P

Pains, a disease in the feet 135

Pains of scratches

Paring the hoof bound

Paring of hoofs 153

Paring a broad hoof 155

Pastorns fretted to heal 110

Pestilence among mares 111

Pestilence among horses 148

Pin and web to help

Pissing blood to help 147

Pissing not well, to help 130

Another for the same

Place to cover mares best

Plucking out thorn or iron

Pole evil to help 127

Pricked in a joint to help 180

Pricked with a nail to help 163

Proud flesh to help

Properties of a good horse

Proverbs

Purging of a horse

Puffing up of a lean horse

Q

Quincy in a horse to help 125

Querts or chinks in the hoof

R

Age of mares

Ringbones to help

Rubbing of horses doth good

Rugged or brittle hoofs to pare

Repair flesh in a wound 184

S

Saddle chafe your horse

Scratches to heal 159, 162

174

Another for the same

To make a horse scour 188

Scratches, another

Sinews troubled

Selander to help

Shackle-gall to help

Shot impoisoned

Shooing of Cart-horses 153

Shooing of divers hoofs diversly

153, 154, 157

Shooing the fore-feet of horses

best

154

Shooing a broad hoof 156

Shooes made with whole quarters

Shoulder hurt to heal

Signs to know if a horse have the

bots

Signs to know a sick horse 115

Sinews broken to heal

Skin of a horse rased to heal

Skin of a horse watry to help

Sore chafing to heal

Soreness when they breed

Sore impostumes to heal

Spavin to help 234

Spaid colts 164

Sprains or strains in a horse 122

Splint to heal 131

Stabling or housing of horses

Stallions in their best age

Stallions some hotter than other

Staggers a disease to help 113

Stronger horse or Moyl to know

Stones in the pastorns to help

Stiffness of sinews and joints

Stifle in the heel to help 121

X

Strangu y

## The Table.

Strangury to help	130	V	
Stub in the flesh to help		V	Enomed places to help 147
Surbating to heal	143		Vives how to heal 124, 177
Swelling under the jowls	187		Vomiting in a horse to stay
Swoln places to heal	159	W	
Another for the same, by too much wind	187	W	Arts on horse legs to mark
T			White feet on a horse
Taint in a horse to help	141		Water unwhollom for horses 147
Tainting of horses.			Weakness in a horse to help
Taste lost in a horse to help			Weariness in a horse to help 121
Teeth not even to help			Wound on a horse to help 178
Teeth pained to help	187		Windgals to help 176
Tiring of the horse by the way to help	185		Wolves teeth in horses to help 186
Thorn to pluck out			Worms in horses to help
Tongue hurt with the bit	178		Worms in the maw 188
Tongue of horses to see oft	173	Y	
Trenches to help	163, 173	Y	Yellow, a disease in horses to help 148
Another for the same			

These be the herbs which are called the five lances which leadeth unto a wound.

*Dittan, Pellure, Moniconfoud, Pimpernel, and Spearwort.*

The five grasses that draw a wound.

*Oculus Christi, Maddar, Bugloss, red Cole, Erval.*

The eight grasses defensive.

*Ach, herb Robert, Engloss, Sanicula, Savory Spavin, Molin, and Crowfoot: these are defensive.*

These are the grasses, with the five lances that lead unto a wound, and draweth unto a wound, and knowledgeth a fester. But understand that every open sore is not a fester: for the flesh of a beast is hard and shining, being chased. There be two kinds of festers, the hot, and the cold. The hot will have a great hole, and the cold fester will have a straighter: Out of the one cometh out white matter, and fretteth the flesh: and out of the other cometh out black matter, which frets the sinews and joynts and that is incurable. This take alwaies for a generall rule.

THE  
THIRD BOOK

Intreating of

The ordering of *Sheep*, *Goats*,  
*Hogs*, and *Dogs*: With sure reme-  
dies to help most diseases as may  
chance to them.

Taken forth of Learned Authours:  
With divers other approved practises; ve-  
ry necessary for all men, especially those  
which have any Charge and Go-  
vernment thereof.

---

Gathered by LEONARD MASGAL.

---



---

LONDON,

Printed for *John Stafford*, and *William Gilbertson*,  
in the year 1662.



*A Praise of Sheep.*

**T**Hese cattel ( Sheep ) among the rest,  
 Is counted for man one of the best,  
 No harmful beast, nor hurt at all :  
 His fleece of wool doth cloath us all,  
 Which keeps us all from extream cold :  
 His flesh doth feed both young and old.  
 His tallow makes the candles white,  
 To burn and serve us day and night ;  
 His skin doth pleasure divers wayes,  
 To write, to wear, at all assaies ;  
 His guts, thereof we make wheel-strings ;  
 They use his bones for other things ;  
 His horns some shepherds will not loose,  
 Because therewith they patch their shooes ;  
 His dung is chief I understand,  
 To help and dung the Plowmans land :  
 Therefore the Sheep among the rest,  
 He is for man a worthy Beast.



The Government of SHEEP, and  
Remedies for such Diseases, as do  
come unto them.

**A**S our chief commodity is to have great cattel, so is there a chief commodity to nourish, keep, and feed small cattel, as sheep one of the chiefeſt & fruitfullſt for the uſe of man: for of theſe beaſts comes a yearly ſleece, & are kept with ſmall trouble, or any other great pain but in keeping them from cold winter, dagging in ſummer, ſtab, & ſome other inconueniences that come unto them as well as any other cattel. Wherefore muſt you take ſome pain to ſee them kept in fields & paſtures as wel as in houſes. There is no man that loves ſheep, but will have a chief care of them, to uſe and order them, as they ought to be, conſidering all the commodities that come by them, & to keep their houſes clean and warm in winter, with their folds alſo well ſet and ordered in ſummer. The ſhepherd ought to be of good nature wiſe, ſkilful, countable and right in all his doings, wherein ſe v are to be found at this day, eſpecially in Villages & Towns; for by their ſoleneſſe and long reſt, they grow now to war ſtubbozn, & are giuen (for the moſt part) to ſrowardneſſe & evil, moze then good profit to their Maſters, and ill manieres, whereof breeds many a theebilly condition being pickers, lyars, and ſtealers, and runners about from place to place, with many other infinite evils. Which contrary was in the firſt Shepherds of Egypt, and other in their time; for they were the firſt inventers of Aſtrology, and judgement in Stars, & finders out of Whyſick, augmenters of Pulſick, and many other liberal Sciences.

I cannot tel, whether I ought to joyne the Art of Knighthood, and the government of Kingdoms, but by their long

continuance in the fields & many yeares seeing and bles-  
sing out of their cabbins, by experience obserbed the course  
of the stars, the disposition of times, & by long use in mar-  
king the ordered times, & unstedfastness of daies; in such  
sort continuing, that the ancient shepherds became peo-  
ple of great knowledge, as witnesseth Hieroglyphiques:  
and therefore all Husbanas ought to have a great care in  
chusing of good shepherds.

Sheep (as well as other) ought to be the first cattel to  
be looked unto if you mark the great profit that comes by  
them: for by these cattel we are chiefly defended from cold,  
in serving many wayes in covering for our bodies. They  
do not only nourish the people of the Villages, but also for  
to serbe the table with many sorts of delicate & pleasant  
meats. In some countries, their milk doth serbe instead of  
surmenty, of which are the people of Scythia, called No-  
mades, and also the Greeks do name them Galactapotes,  
that is to say, Drinkers of milk. And soasmuch as these  
cattel are tender and delicate, as Celsus affirmeth, there-  
fore good heed must be taken unto them for sickness, yet  
they are commonly in health, except at some times they  
are subject to murren, scab, or pestilence, in changing of  
grounds: therefore they must be chosen agreeable to the  
nature of the place where they shall remain, the which is  
a rule meet to be obserbed & kept, not only in those cattel,  
but also in all other cattel of husbandry, whereof Virgil  
saith: All grounds for all things are not good,

Nor meet for all beasts for to get their food.

For the fat, champain and pasture fields are good to  
nourish great sheep in; for lean sheep & hoggreles, closes.  
And sheep well flesht, they shall do well in Forrests and  
Mountains, dry places, and plain commons: and all se-  
bered closes are good, & commodious to nourish all tender  
sheep and to make them battle, & so to fat well. There  
is a great respect to be had unto the differences of nature,  
not only in the sorts and breed of sheep, but also of their co-  
lours and chusing of them; for experience doth shew, as the  
sheep

Sheep of Milesia in Athens be great, very fair, and well esteemed: also those Sheep of Calabria, and of the Apollonians, and those of Tarent, and now these in France be more esteemed and praised, & especially the Sheep of Torcello; and next, those of the lean champions, as best of Parma and Modena in Italy.

Also the white colour in Sheep is very good and profitable, as we use here most in England: for of this colour a man may make any other, & the white will keep also his colour long. The black and the brown be also well praised, which be much used in Italy at Polencia, and also in high Spain at Corube. The yellow Sheep be in Asia, the which they call red Sacerdoted Sheep; truly the use thereof we have had already by others & many experiences of those kind of Sheep. For in Africa, where they are brought (from the town called Gaderine, & thereabout) are wild Rams of strange & marvellous colours, with many other kinds of beasts, which are oft times brought unto the people to make pastimes. Marcus Columella saith, a man of singular good wit & understanding, and very perfect in husbandry, which brought one of those Rams of Africa with him into France, & did put him into his pastures and when he became gentle, he made him to be put unto his Ewes, which Ram begat in the beginning all hairy lambs, and like in colour: but, after that the said lambs had been covered again once or twice, their wool began again to be gentle, soft and fair; and at length those lambs ingendering with their Sheep, made their fleece and wool as soft & gentle as ours. This Columella recorded, that from the nature of the Ram by the alteration of the place and cattle, they became again to their former estate, and by little and little, by good order & government, their wild natures be quite changed. So likewise others beasts become soon gentle by well using thereof in husbandry, which afterward be found alwaies tame & gentle. Thus I do leave here, & will return unto my former purpose.

Where be two sorts of Sheep cattle, the better sort are these

those of the soft wool & the other the hairy wool, & soz to shew how to buy these twain, there are many common rules: nevertheless there are also particulars soz the better sort, the which ye must take good heed of.

The common rules to buy, are these: when his wool is white, fair, long, staple, and plain; ye must chuse a very white Ram, & yet oftentimes a white Ram will not get a white lamb, but a yellow or black Ram will never get a white lamb. Ye must not chuse a Ram by his whiteness only, but when the pallet of his tongue is of the same colour of his wool; soz when either of these two do not agree, the lamb is like to be either black, or spotted in some part, as Virgil signifieth by these verses.

The Ram among thy sheep out pull;  
Though he be white of skin and wool,  
Mark well his tongue, and therefore see  
If tongue and fell do both agree:  
For if they alter in any case,

Their Lambs will follow the self-same race.

Likewise the self same reason is of the yellow & black sheep, as is befoze declared, which ought not to have their tongue of a contrary colour to their wool: but in all parts to be like unto the face and wool, although the skin be speckled & spotted of divers colours, it is no matter. And ye must see that ye buy no Ram, nor other sheep that hath a thin staple, or smal stoze of wool: & soz the better knowledg, to see that they be al of one colour, principally is to be considered in chusing your Rams: soz the spotted Rams will commonly be seen in the lambs.

Rams esteemed.

The Rams are much esteemed when they are high & long of body, with a large belly, and covered well with wool, his tail long and thick in wool, his fore head broad, his cuds b.g, his hozns crooked and withen: and yet these sorts of Rams are not the best; soz those which have no hozns are more better, and those which have crooked hozns are more better, soz the one doth annoy the other: and it is better to have their hozns crooked and withen, then

The third Book  
of Georgicks.

Then, then to be straight and open. Nevertheless, in countreys moist and windy, it were better to have the Rams with great and large hozns, then other without; because it doth keep and defend the greatest part of their head from the wind and storms.

If that the Winter be very stormy in those countreys, they do chuse those Rams: but if it be calm and gentle, they do take those that have no hozns. For the hozned Ram hath this discommodity; he feeleth by nature each part of his body so wel armed that he desireth nothing but to fight with others. And he is more hotter after the Cws at all times and more impozunate than others so that he will not suffer any Ram to cover any troupe of Cws; & he will make war without cause against his fellows, & will not permit & suffer them to cover any Cwe, although he can do no more himself, and yet he will have all at his commandment.

But he which is without hozns, knoweth he is unarmed, whereby he is not so ready to fight, and is also of less heat therefore ye may have the more Rams. The good & skilful Shepherd may correct the heat and fury of such an unsatiable Ram by his subtilty; take a strong board of a foot broad, & fill it full of pikes of iron, & tie that board under his hozns with his pikes towards his forehead, & this shall keep him from hurting of others; for in gibing his head a stroke, he shall hurt himself.

Epicarmus de Syraculis in Sicilia which hath diligently written of the medicines for cattel, he saith: One may appease or abate the fury of such a Ram, in piercing his hozns by his ears (with a wimble or piercer) against the place whereas they do creek. Also the age of a Ram to cover is the best at three years, and he shall be good unto eight years: the Cws would be covered after two years, & then they will be good five years after; and the seventh year being once past, then they begin to wax weak and will fail in getting lambs. Again, as I have said, you shall not buy sheep unhozn, nor make too great ac-

count of them which have gray or spotted wool of divers colours, for the uncertainty thereof: Thou shalt cast them off as the barren sheep, & also those which have most teeth, being of three years old. Therefore ye must chuse those of two years having a great large body, a long neck, & long deep wool, not rough or stubboyn, his belly great, and large of body, covered all with wool, not to be uncovered in any part, or yet smal of stature, his gums ruddy, his teeth white and eaven, his skin on the brisket red, and on both sides ruddy, his eye strings ruddy, his fell loose, his wool fast, his breath long, & his fat not hot. These are the chief signs of a sound sheep. Signs of a rotten sheep are these: his belly full of water his fat yellow, his liver shall be knotty, and full of bitters, & if you seeke it, it shall break in pieces his sides pale, his eyes pale & dark, his gums white, & the wool will soon come off, if ye pluck a little thereof. These are the signs of a rotten sheep or unsound.

Now for to save and keep them: We shall understand, your sheep-houses ought to be made low like unto a hogsty, & more in length than in breadth, warm for winter, & not straight of rooms for fear of hurting the lambs, paved and boarded on both sides and within the place a descending for the urine and dung. It shall be also good to hang of Rosemary, or other sweet and strong herbs, for to take away or kill the scent of their urine or dung. It shall be also good to make & let the house open towards the Sun at noon, & to be well covered, for these kind of cattel are tender, and cannot abide any great cold.

Yet although they are housed, they are oftentimes vexed with cold, as rheums, glanders, coughs, & such like, and so vexed with cold in winter as well as with heat in summer: and also, or about their houses, it were good to make a close coat wall and high fenced, so that they may go forth of their houses in safety to refresh them. And their racks to be made two foot high from the earth, with rack staves set nigh together of a good length. And the Shepherd must see that they be clean kept, and to see that

that the racks do stand fast for hurting any of them.

They must also be kept that they have no water, or other moisture, and that there be prepared fearn or dry straw for those which have lambs, so rest more clean and softer, and so see that the Rams go not to the Ewes, or the Lambs: nor go with any sick Sheep or other beast: and it is better to let the Lambs remain in the house, then to go with their Dams a field. And good to let your best pasture remain for your Ewes, nigh your Sheep-houses. The Shepherd also shall often cleanse the foddering places of his Sheep, and reserve it to litter the Kine, and Horses, and so to keep their houses clean, whereby their health may be the better preserved: and so in any wise they be not hurt or annoyed with filthy moisture, for they are tender and nice, and do love clean places. We must also see that they have good store of meat, for hunger in them breedeth the murrer. A small stock well nourished, encreaseth much more profit unto their Master, then others with twice so great a stock enduring hunger. And also the Shepherd must often drive them over changeable pastures & grounds, whereas there is scant of feeding, and without thorns or bushes; using them after the authority of Virgil, who saith by these Verses following:

He that will have good Sheep,  
Good Wool likewise also;  
He must provide a Shepherd,  
To lead them to and fro,  
From places which are rude,  
With many ill Thorns and Bushes,  
And from unwholsom Weeds,  
From Brambles, Pricks, and Crushes.

For those scratches make them be unquiet, and to breed scabs and other sores, that although they are shorn, yet the thorns will remain in the skin, and grow unto scabs or other sores, and there commonly the wool doth

war loose & diminish every day, so much more as it doth grow and increase. These beasts are alwaies in danger of thozns growing where they are; & oftentimes therewith they are tied with hooks and Ineres, thozns and byars, which do fear both wool and skin, and these Cattel being tender and delicate, thereby lose a great part of their wool, which otherwise would keep it. And for the Coupling together of them, all other Authors do agree and join together in one consent, that the bearing and lambing time is at the spring, about the twentieth or one and twentieth day of April; for then the sheep do wax more strong.

Putting the  
Ram.

If an Ewe have then a little lamb, it were better then if she did carry till June, or longer. Some therefore (without doubt do say) it would profit more to cover them sooner, so the end that after harvest and gathering of fruit, the lambs feeding all Autumn, shall make themselves strong, against winter doth come, and shall better endure the fasting in Winter.

For this same cause it is better to chuse Autumn then the Spring, as Celsus reports by the proof hereof: for he saith it is more meet for the Cattel to be made strong before Solstium in the midst of the month of June, which is the longest day in summer, than before Solstium in winter, which is in the midst of the month of December. And amongst all cattel, these may most easest be bred in winter, if the country be not cold and wet.

Male Lambs.

If you have need to have many male lambs, Aristotle, a man of great knowledge in his works of nature, he commandeth to be observed, and to spie out the meetest time to couple, and put the Rams to the Ewes: as in a day time when the South wind bloweth. Then (saith he) make the flock to go and feed against the wind, and put the Rams unto them; and they shall have male lambs. If

Female Lambs

you would have your Ewes to bring female lambs, put the Rams unto them when the wind bloweth out of the South. And for to have males likewise they do use to

bind

bind the left Stone down with a tender band; and so have females, they bind down the right Stone of the Ram. This is done likewise in great cattel. Also, when your Cows have lambed, and are strong lambs, the Sheepheard, that leadeth them to seek their pasture, it shall be good that he leave behind all the young lambs. And those that do suck are meetest to be sold unto Butchers, then those that have eaten grass, for they are moze sweeter & delicate flesh; & when they are weaned, there cometh moze profit by the milk, then when they go with their dams. It is also good and profitable to nourish them by the sides of good towns; for the cattel of the house are moze profitable then strange cattel. And if thy flock of Sheep do fail at any time through age, or any other occasion, thou must then renew it in keeping the flock, and looking well thereunto; for if thy flock once alter, thou art like to alter thy tillage. To alter thy flock.

To breed Sheep, the office of a good Sheepheard is to nourish as many head of cattel yearly, as there are sick, or dead for you must understand, that the winter, by vehement and cold weather, killeth many Sheep, the which ye did suppose they would have out-boorn the said winter, which in Autumn they might have been taken well: and therefore it is very dangerous, without you furnish your flock (from year to year) with the strongest cattel, & those that shall easily bear out the after winter: & he that will follow this, he ought to nourish no lamb under four years, nor above eight: for these two ages are not so good to nourish nor those which come of old cattel, for they follow the age of their parents, or else are alwaies barren, wretched, and weak. To breed.

The lambing of young Cows ought for to be looked unto, as though they had Midwives; for these Cattel do travell in lambing, as well as the Women in child bearing: and oftentimes for so much as they are ignorant of the time, they do travell moze in the deliverance of their Lambs: therefore the Shepherds To nourish sheep.

ought to have good knowledge & experience of medicines for these cattel, and to help them that have need thereof, and to take out the Lamb wholly together out of the matrix: for when he lieth cross, he must not be taken out; but if you see he cannot well be delivered, you must help the Ewe, and take and cut it in pieces, & so take it forth without hurting the birth of the Ewe: The which the Greeks do call an unperfect medicine. Then after, when the Lamb is taken forth alive, you shall raise her, and set her on her feet, and also the Lamb; and then let him approach unto the teats of the Ewe, and open his mouth, and press, and make the milk come forth, that he may be accustomed thereunto. But before you do this, you shall draw the Ewe a little, which the Heard men do call *Strouking*: This is the gross and thick milk, the which is the first milk after the lambing: for if you do not draw a little thereof, it will somewhat annoy the lamb. Then let him (if he be weak) be shut up the two first daies with his Dam after that he is lambed, to the end he may be kept warm, and to know the teat and his Dam, until that he begin to leap and wax more stronger, and to put him in some warm close place, then after for to put him with other lambs, because in being alone he will wax lean by too much leaping and playing in his youth. Also, you must advisedly put the young lambs by themselves, and not with the strongest, for fear in leaping & tumbling to hurt them: and when they are big, you may well suffer the lambs to go a-field with their Dams until night: And when they shall wax more stronger, then give them grass in their houses, with the herb *Bellilot*, also of fine hay or bran: if barley be good cheap, you may give your lambs of the meal, and of fitches: and when that they shall wax yet more stronger, you may in the middle of the day remove them with their Dams into other pastures and grounds, and alwaies see that your lambs break not forth of your pastures into other grounds, for when they will alwaies be seeking for to have fresh pasture.

Although

Although I have spoken of certain pastures nevertheless yet I will here say a little that I have omitted, the which is: The best & most frankest grass is that which groweth among arable grounds and furrows, rather then meadows which are wet and moist, and the grass in marshes and moist Forrests is not good for sheep. nor so good pasture for the feeding of the same; and by long use and continuance these cattel will wax weary and nopsome thereof, if their keeper do not remedy it, in giving those sheep salt with their meat; which shall save them, and make them to have an appetite.

In Summer it shall be good to have them under shadowed places or trees in woods, to the end that by their resting, they shall have the better appetite, when they return unto their pasture again: & they may then drink, where by to feed the better, and also to avoid their surfeits. In Winter ye must give them hay & tares in their racks to nourish them withal. They do also feed them with Elm-leaves, & of Ash leaves, and such like which is gathered in seasons convenient. And in Autumn to feed them with hay of the latter season, for that is more tender and more pleasant for them to eat then other which is drier or that which is first ripe. The grass or herb called Millilot, is special good for them at all times, & likewise for all other cattel. They use also to have fitches for them, which is very good, & to give them of Barley straw small beaten & chopt, which is in Winter very good for them, when they can have no other meat. Likewise of pease holm is good for them, if they be kept near towns or villages: and when the time is to drive them to pasture, or to lead them to drink in the hot Summer, as need requireth, I will not be of other opinion, but that which Virgil hath written, which is this:

In the morning tide lead forth thy Ews,  
For to refresh before the Sun doth rise,  
The grass being tender, and shining with dew;

Soon

Soon after cometh drought, is the common guise.  
That after the Sun be once four hours high,  
Then Bushes do crack, and Plains do wax dry :  
Then singeth the Nightingale with notes plain,  
Drive them to the Springs of the high Mountain.

Also in the mid-day the same Poet saith,

In heat now of the day,  
To search it is thy charge,  
To find thy sheep some tree  
With branches long and large,  
To shadow them withal,  
Out of the heat and dust,  
As heat and time doth last,  
Then let them quench their thirst.

And when the great heat is abated, soon after let them  
be driven softly to feed. And saith,

The Sun now being set,  
In the evening tide,  
All the day before  
Whereas the ground hath dried :  
The night now being cold,  
The dew descending plain,  
On pastures dried before,  
By them refresht again.

And re must obserbe Astrum, which is the Star of heat  
in Summer, when the Canicular daies do begin ; to the  
end that befoze the midst of the day, Shepherds ought to  
conduct & drive their sheep towards the West, & after  
the mid-day is past towards the East, for it is a thing of  
great importance, to have the head of the sheep to feed a-  
gainst the Sun, which often annoys those cattel, when the  
rays of the Sun begin to shew on the ground. And also  
in Winter and Spring time, you ought for to keep them  
close, till the day have taken the gelly or netty time from  
the

Rimes or gelly.  
ly.

the earth; for in the time the gelly is on the grasse, which doth ingender (as some say) the scab, & a foam at their mouths, & distillations from the brain, with heaviness of the head, & a looseness of the belly. Wherefore in cold and moist times, ye need not observe it but once a day.

Moreover, the Shepheard which doth keep them, ought A Shepheard to be wise in governing them with gentleness, as it is to Govern. commanded to all keepers of cattel whatsoever they be, which ought to shew themselves conductors and guiders of cattel, & not as masters: and to make them go or to call them, they ought either to cry or to whistle, and after to shew them the shep-hook, but to throw nothing at them, for that doth fear them: nor yet to stray far off from them, nor to sit, or lie down. If he do not go, he ought to stand, and to sit very seldom.

For the office of a Shepheard is as a high watchman for his cattel, to the end that the slow shep do not slip from the other. And on the plains & meadows, when they make no haste, then he may say: But in hard & empty pasture, the light & young shep will out-go the other, and therefore he ought to have an eye alwaies amongst his shep: or if any complain by any other means, to see them incontinent remedied, & he must see also, in their pasturing, that they range not too fast over the grounds; for the light and young shep do out-go the other, and stray abroad in corners, whereby they be in danger the more to be conveyed away, or lost by some other means, or by killing with dogs or such like; these rules are common with all cattel. He therefore that will seem to thrive by them, he must see to them warily and wisely from time to time.

We must not mingle them of a strange kind with others of your flock, for those being of a strange kind, they will Strange sheep. alwaies stand gazing about, & will rather seek to flee then feed; or else look on others. Wherefore look unto them, for it is a sign they like not the pasture or lay, where they do graze, but will seek a new. Wherefore the Shepheard must have a great care, and use diligence unto them more

Meat for sheep.

then the other. For all beasts of wool are more delicate & dainty then others, therefore they ought to have the less negligence with their keeper, or master: for they are of less cohabiting than other cattel, and yet they cannot abide the heat in Summer, nor the cold in Winter. These cattel are seldom nourished abroad without great danger but in houses & closed pastures; and are gluttons and greedy, & at this time at by some occasion be taken away of others, thereby sometime he will be sick. Therefore ye ought to give to every sheep which shall be sufficient of meat in their racks for them in Winter, & to give them in their troughs of barley and beans ground together, and also dried pease or acorns ground, and given with bran & dry Elm-leaves, or other, as aforesaid: or of three leaved grass-green or dry, of the herb Millilot, or the hay of the latter season, & such like. Also there is but small profit in selling the lambs being young, & less profit in their milk, & they do kill those which they cannot well nourish, within a while after they be lambed, & those Cows which have lost their lambs they make them to give others suck, for they make a lamb suck two Cows, & yet cannot draw from her milk, because her own lamb hath drawn more of her, & with more strength; and to that lamb that she hath, ye a nature in her sheweth a more love: but to the other, she is but as a nurse to a child, & less given to nourish it then her own. Therefore you must observe and see to them all the time being young, and to be suckled of their Dams & other Cows also. In this kind of cattel it were better to nourish and wean more of males than females. And although by cutting and gelding of them by unskillfull persons, many do perish and die thereon, for the females commonly are of a more ruddier wool (as some do say.) And again before the male lambs be ready to cover the Cows, they are gelded, & when they are past two years they are killed, and their skins are more dearer sold than any other, for the beauty of their wool. In Greece they use to pasture their sheep where there are no bushes or byers, for fear (as I have said)

said) that their wool should not be torn off their bodies: In plain fields a man need not to be so careful. But here, me thinks if I should see my Shep come with torn fleeces, I may ask my Shepheard where they have been, in supposing their ill government amongst bushes and thorns: therefore he must be careful when they be in the field (for all the day some go not with them). And again in the house he ought to have a more greater care in cleansing of them, or any other occasion not to be foreflewed, in oft opening their wool, whereas any place seems loose by scratches or other wayes, and then to tarre it. Some do wash the place with oyl, sometimes they wash them all if the day or time be not too hot or cold: and they do use it so in some countries three times a year: and do often make clean their houses, and take away all the moisture of the urine, which is easie to be done, in piercing the boards or planks with an auger, or cleansing the pavements where, as they lie. And not only to have a care of their dung, but also to keep them from beasts, and venomous worms. Whereupon the Poet Virgil saith:

Wash sheepe  
In Devonshire  
they never  
wash their  
sheep when  
they clip: after,  
they wash the  
wool before  
they spin it, in  
warm lie, and  
dry it on hur-  
dles.

Let burn of Cedar odorant,  
To fume the stall or stable:  
To cause the Serpents fly there fro,  
And void (if thou be able,)  
Whereby thou mayest them follow,  
Through such perfuming vapour,  
Of Galbanum the smell,  
Will cause them fly full sure:  
Full oft hath it been seen,  
This thing and often proved,  
Of little lying long they breed,  
If it be not removed,  
The out-ragious venomous worms  
Be dangerous to touch,  
Both Snakes and Adders customed,

Do hide them in their couch,  
 But now be they once seen,  
 And perfectly once bear,  
 Full soon they flie for fear,  
 To hide them in their care.  
 They flie away full soon  
 In corners of the house,  
 They creep in at a little hole  
 As swiftly as the Mouse.  
 Take stones and staves, and kill them  
 Ere they encrease and double :  
 For if they wax and multiply,  
 Full oft they will thee trouble.

Shearing.

Nointing or  
 greasing.

If thou canst without danger of thy house, oftentimes  
 burn in the house womans hair, or Hart-horn ; for the sa-  
 bour thereof driveth away all venomous worms. As for  
 the time of shearing or clipping, it cometh not in all coun-  
 treys alike ; for in some countreys it cometh timely, and  
 in other some later. The best is to consider when the sheep  
 cannot endure cold if thou shear him, nor heat if thou sheare  
 him not. But at what time you have shorn, ye ought to  
 anoint him with this medicine : that is to say, The juyce  
 of Tares, or pulse like-warm, or of the Lees of old wine,  
 and Lees of Olives, of each in like portion well mixed to-  
 gether, & therewithal to rub the shorn sheep, & within  
 three or four dayes it wil be consumed. Then if ye be nigh  
 the borders of the sea or salt water, plunge them therein :  
 if not, then wash them with rain water, kept long & un-  
 covered, and with salt mixed together, and a little boyled.  
 And this shall keep them well all that pear from scratch-  
 ing or scabbiness, as Celsus reporteth; and without doubt  
 the wooll shall be moze gentle, and longer.

The

# The Remedies and Medicines for Sheep and other Cattel.

**F**oasmuch as I have carefully written of the diligence which they ought to have for the preserving & keeping their beasts in health: Now I will declare how to help them with medicines, which are grieved with any infirmity or disease. Howbeit although I have spoken already of the most part of them, I will yet here repeat a few medicines for great cattel. For as the body of the great cattel is, so is the body of the lesser cattel, almost of like nature. When so there is a small difference betwixt their medicines & betwixt their diseases: nevertheless whatsoever they are, I will not here let pass or omit. Medicines.

If it do chance that all your cattel be sick, you shall do as I have before commanded of great cattel (which I do think to be a thing necessary,) even so here, I command again for a singular remedy to change your pastures, and your watering places, and to drive your cattel into other pastures far off. If that pestilence or murren do come by great heats, ye must have them unto covertes, shades, and cold places. If it come of cold, you must have them into open places against the Sun. And you must lead them by little and little & not too hastily to the end by their soft going they be not grieved, nor yet too slowly, but gently in a mean pace: for even as they must not be tormented by too much haste, which are already weary, & annoyed with this disease: even so it is profitable to go meanly, neither too fast nor yet too slow, having still exercise, & not to let them rest or lie. And when you have brought them unto the appointed place, you must then part them into many troops or bands, and so let them ever be looked unto: & being so parted they are then in more safety, then ever they were before when they were together, because that the strength & the infection of the contagious & pestilent air, is not so great in a small troop of cattel, as in a great. And also it is Sickness or  
Pestilence.

more easie to heal a small number then a great: therefore you must do this which I have commanded, to the end that ye do not repent the more, when as they fall all sick together: or if there be any one which hath it, then do as aforesaid. Also sheep are more tormented with the scab, then all other cattel, which commonly cometh, as the Poet Virgil saith:

Scab.

When sheep are greatly beaten with rain,  
Then frost and cold increaseth their pain,  
Whereby the Scab will then increase,  
Which you may kill with Tar and fresh Grease.

Or when they begin to have the Itch, ye shall anoint them with Goose-grease and Tar mixt together, with the tender crops of broom in May: Knapes boil them with goose grease, & put to youe Tar in like portion. Then make but two sheads on both sides his back-bone, from his head to the tail, & anoint with the aforesaid grease & you shall need no more anointing, if they be used well after, & kept from scratches. Also after you have shorn them, if ye do not remedy them with the remedy & medicine aforesaid, which is to wash them with sea or salt water, or in a salt river, & then share & rub them as aforesaid, which is good against the scratches with bylars & thorns, which will otherwise grow to scabs: Or if thou puttest them in a stable where horses have been, or lacking of meat, whereby they become lean, which leanness doth cause them to have the itch, and scab. The which as soon as it hath taken them, they never cease to scratch, bite, or rub the itching place, either with mouth, feet, or horns: or to rub against a tree or other thing which lice may cause also. If thou seest any one do this, then take him, & open, & shear his wool, & ye shall see there under, the skin red, and scratched, or bit with his mouth; therefore it must be suddenly remedied, to the end that all the rest be not infected with the same. For among all other cattel, sheep are most therewith tormented: and for the same there are many medicines, whereof we will speak hereafter.

Pot

Not that you can or may use all, because that every coun-  
try cannot have all, but such as you may have, shall suf-  
fice.

First the composition that I have before expressed, shall  
serve very well for y<sup>e</sup> most part. Also if you take the lees of  
Wine & of Olives, the juyce of fares & pulse sod, & mixt  
with as much white Elleboz beaten which is a sing pow-  
der. Also the green juyce of hemlock to anoint, is good for  
to kill the Itch if it be not in seed. Some do take it in y<sup>e</sup>  
Spring, do beat it, and then strain it into a pot of earth.  
And unto eighteen quarts of the said juyce, they do put  
in half a bushel of salt, and then do cover the pot close, &  
set it in some dunghill a whole year, there to be seasoned.  
And when it is drawn out, they do take thereof, and  
warm it, and therewith do rub the scabby Sheep, or any  
place of their skin so troubled: but they do rub the place  
before with some rough thing or rugged stone, for to make  
it bleed. Also the lees of Olives is good, if it be boyled un-  
till the half be consumed, and then to anoint therewith.  
Likewise both the piss of men, wherein is quenched hot  
burning tile stones: Some do boil it on the fire, untill the  
first part be consumed, mixing it with so much of the juyce  
of green Herbane, with two pound of the powder of tile  
or Cinamon, also of Tar and beaten Salt, and so ming-  
led together. Likewise it shall be good to doe beaustone  
beaten fine, with as much Tar, in stirring it altogether  
over a small fire: and because Tar is very costly for y<sup>e</sup>  
men, they do take a salbe of hyzom, which is you shall take  
a great quantity of the crops of hyzom, with the leaves  
and blossoms, let them be chopped small, and then strain  
eighteen gallons of running water, till it do turne thick  
like a g. lye, then take a pound of molten Shepaxiet, with  
a pottle of old Ale, and so much urinae put all into the  
pan with the hyzom, and stir it well together, then strain  
it, and keep it in what vessel you will, & so whan ye clip  
your Sheep make it luke warme, and with some soft  
thing wash your Sheep therewith: yet all times you may  
use.

Medicine for  
the Itch.

Never so good  
water

The worst in  
the claw

use this in sheeding the wool, and anoint therewith warm  
which will both heal the scab, and kill ticks, and shall not  
be hurtfull to the wool: & those which have sufficient meat  
will not lightly scab after. Others do take Elecampane  
roots and stamp them, & boyl them in running water, &  
wash therewith. Some do take oyl Olive & the powder of  
brymstone, & so anoint therewith: But against maggots  
the powder of brymstone & Tar mixed together over a soft  
fire. To anoint also for hurts, there is no medicine. As  
Virgil in his Georgicks sheweth and saith.

Maggots to  
kill.

If any beast be hurt  
Or cut by subtilty,  
With any iron or with staffe,  
Upon the grief shall see.  
For underneath the skin,  
The evil is often hid:  
Where plaisters doth not mollifie,  
And skin not opened.

Scab.

If it be not cut, they cut it, and melt of wax & grease  
together, & heal it therewith: which grease is also good a-  
gainst the scab, mixing therewith brymstone powder.

And if any sheep have the fever or red water, it is good  
to let them blood in the claw of the foot, or by twixt & two  
claws; for that helps very much. And Virgil saith:

For to help the fever, open the vein  
Beneath in the foot, and he shall mend again.

Fever, or red  
water.

Some shepherds let them blood under the eye, & on the  
ears. Others let them blood on the vein under the taile  
and then bind of herb-grass unto it, beaten with a little  
salt: & to give the joyce of Camomile with Ale or Wine,  
is good. Sheep are also tormented in the foot or claw two  
manner of waies, one is by filth, & the other by the worm  
which breeds in it. And if the worm be wax big it wil wax  
so sore that the sheep cannot well go, but halt. This worm  
breeds commonly befoze, just between the two sore-claws,  
the head thereof is like a tuft of hairs growing together, &  
will

The worm in  
the claw.

will stick out afoze: there is no sheep but hath a shew of them naturally, but when they are small, they neber hurt: Galled foot.  
 so when they begin to grow and wax great, then there is danger: which worm is a hollow skin, & all hairy within, which you shal take forth thus as some teach. Cut it a-bove the foot round with a sharp pointed knife, and so beneath and put your finger in the hollow underneath the foot, and your thumb be it on the top before, & then thrust it up; and with the point of your knife and your thumb, gently take it forth whole: for if you break it, it is not good: and then anoint the place with Tar, and it will heal again full well. Also others say, it sticks before in the midst of the foot, like dogs hair standing upright, and within is the worm all hairy.

For every galling in the foot, they heal it with Tar only, with Allom & Bzinsane mixt together, or with an unripe Pomegranate beaten with Allom, & putting to a little vinegar, & laid to: or of Werdigrease in powder and laid on. Also galls burnt and made in powder, and mixed with red wine and laid to, is good.

As touching the worm in the claw, sufficient is spoken Worms in the claw.  
 before, yet here I will speak something more thereof, the which is: The place in the foot to be cut round, not touching the worm, for fear you make an ulcer thereof incurable, & in danger of cutting off all the sheeps foot. When this worm shal be diligently cut round, as is aforesaid, & so plucked forth whole, without breaking any part thereof, if you do break her (they say) she casteth such a venomous poison, all over the place (except it be straight way medicined) all the foot is in danger to be cut off: and therefore look wel to the taking out thereof. Some when it is taken out, do no more but drop in the wound scalding Tallow, or the dropping of a Candle, & so let it heal. Others do but Tar it.

For the disease of the lungs or purliness, like unto Lung sick.  
 hogs, they put into their ears that which the heardomen and Shepherds call Pompele in French, which is also spoken of among great cattel: some say, it is good to stamp

Longwool, & strain it with a little honied water, & give it them, & of the sapce of Cardus Benedictus, called Sow-thistle mixt with Ale, warm. This disease cometh to them oft in Summer for default of water. Wherefore during the heat in Summer, they ought to have water plenty. For Celsus saith, that if the lights or lungs be once infected, you shall give your sheep of strong vinegar so much as they may bear, or else of old urine of men luke warm, each sheep somewhat more then a pint, and to let it in his left nostril, and dlet down two ounces of old grease of a hog down his throat. The wile fire (which the Shepherds call the flying fire) is a strange disease, & hard to heal: if it rest not in the first sheep where it taketh, all the rest are like to be infected: so that there is no medicine or iron that may help it, for the one sheep shall but touch the other, and he shall be inflamed therewith. They have no other thing but to keep him warm, and to nourish him with goats milk, the which doth cause it to be more gentle, and doth mitigate the violence of the fire, & the burning of the whole flock, that they die not thereof. Where Dolus Mendefius, Egyptian, did very well for to celebrate, which the Greeks called the monuments and books worthy of memozy, the which were falsely named Democritus books: wherein was to remedy this disease which was, by and by as one sheep had it they took him, which grief comes first on the back of the sheep & incontinent they make a hole at the entring of the sheep-house, and there they do bury the infected sheep alive, with his forefeet upward, and so cover him with earth and all the rest in coming over there will piss thereon. And so (saith he) the disease will go away, and thereby all the rest shall escape: other remedy there is none found.

Wild fire.

Of choler in sheep.

Jaundise.

Of the increasing of choler in Summer, which is a dangerous disease in sheep: the which they heal in that time, by giving them of the old & stale urine of men, which is also very good for other cattel which have the Jaundise. And to purge choler, some do take the leaves of Elder:

Stamp

Stamp a feto, & strain it with Ale, and giue it warm. Others do giue them the ioyce of Pops with Ale or Water. And some do giue them of sumetozy amongst their meat. All those aforesaid are very good to purge choler.

Flegm also molests Sheep and therefore they do use to Flegm. put of the tender bzanches or tops of Saborzy into their nostrils: also to put Basil into their noses, which will make them to neese, but ye must close their eyes: some put of tender bayes into their nostrile, & that will make them also to neese, and purge their heads. Also the ioyce of Bziony, or hedge vine, mixt with honsted water, and giuen warm, and likewise Poltpody, or Maken-roots, stampt small & giuen with Ale; all these will purge flegm.

Against breaking of any bone, or if the Sheeps leg chance Broken bone. to be broken, ye ought to help them, eben as ye do a man, in first bathing it with Oyl or Wine, or wrapping it in wool dipped in oyl or wine, & then to splint it as ye see cause, and so bind it fast thereon. Also the tender buds of Ash-trees bruised & laid to, will knit bones; or the inner rind of Elm bark, stamped & laid a night in water, and then warm bathe the place therewith, it is good to knit broken bones also: or the herb Cucco-spit stamped & laid to, or Betony, called in Latin Tunica, laid thereunto, or Comfery herb stamped & laid to, is good also to knit bones.

Of herbs evil for sheep, as knot gras; for if sheep eat Herbs ill for sheep. thereof, it will inflame their bellies, & so cause a stinking froth or foam at their mouths. Therefore ye must with speed let them blood under the tail next unto the buttock. Also it profiteth no less to let them blood on the vein called Babine, which is under the upper lip: & likewise green Rye or Barley nigh ripe, will swell in the maw, & kill sheep. For purfiness or chozt breath in sheep they use to cut their ears, & to change their pasture, which is a thing necessary to be counselled against all sickness of the plague. Also to slit their nostrils as well as to cut their ears. And some think it good to giue them of anniseeds, licorice, & sugar-candy, all finely beaten together, & mixt with old grease & so

Short breath,  
or purfiness.

giben them: or the powder of Juniper berries, giben with the iuyce of Angelica, & giben with a hogn in wine or water. Also Harewort, in Latin called Aristolochia, stamp the leaues & strain them, & geve them with a little water.

Glanders, or  
Snivel.

Sheep oftentimes will haue the glanders & a snibell: g at their noses which comes from their lungs, that neither blood-letting nor drinks can remedy them. Wherefoze if it continue two daies or moze, to seperate him & kill him were the best: for the other as well males as females, are so nice, that in smelling where he hath snibelled, suddenly they are taken with the same evil. But master shepheards say, it rather cometh of poverfy in winter, than otherwise, for it chiefly sheweth in those that haue been brought low in winter before, and at the spring it will shew, when as they begin to mend. And he which hath been brought lowest will have it most vehement. Some they will run at the nose like a thin water, & those that haue it soze will haue a thick matter or snibell hang at their nose, ready to stop their wind, & those are in danger to die, if they be not soon helped. Some use to take a stick, and therewith take out all that he can get & so make them clean when any occasion is and thereupon they do amend. Some other give them the iuyce of Betony with honied water, & make them take it. And the herb called Bucks beard, which groweth higher then that which is called in Latin Pterocomon: this groweth in forests & shades, and hath flowers and seeds like a Bucks beard his leaues like great parsley: this herb stamped & giben with Wine, is marvellous good against all cold or flegm in any part of their bodies.

Lambs sick.

For Lambs having the fever, or any other grief, if they be sick, the shepheard ought not to let them remain with their Dams, for fear of giving them the like disease. Wherefoze it were best to draw some milk of the Cowe, & put to it so much rain water and make the sick lambs to swallow it down. Some give them of Goats milk with a hogn, and so keep them warm for that time.

Scab on the  
chin.

There is also a certain scab, that runneth on the chin, which

which is commonly called of the shepherds the Dartars, the which will kill them if they be not remedied. This kind of scab cometh by the negligence of the shepherds, when as they suffer them to feed on grasse covered with dew, which is evil, and ought not to be permitted or suffered: when this chanceth, ye shall destroy this scab which is on the mouel and lips, like as the flying fire which was afore named. To remedy this, take salt and byssope in like quantity beaten together, and therewith all to fret and chafe the palate of the mouth, the tongue, & all oher the mouel; or with Self-heal, or Cinquefoil; & wash the scab with vinegar, afterwards anoint it with Tar and Hogs-grease mixed together. Some mix a third part of Uerdogrease, and two parts of old grease, and keep it cool: they use this medicine following. Some stamp the leaues of Cypres in water, and therewith do wash the palate of the mouth & the sores. Some shepherds do judge this kind of scab to be a kind of por, which will as commonly be as well on the bysket, as upon his chin; and, as they say it is gotten by feeding after hogs which have the swine por which they do anoint with Tar and Hogs-grease melted together & so they recouer again, and it be not holpen in time, one sheep will infect all the rest in a short time. And for the common scab, some take the powder of bynstone, with roots of Cypres mixt & beaten together, by even quantity, and mix therewith of blanchéd raisins, of Camphire & wax and melt it altogether, and in the anointment thereof, and therewith rub the scab altogether. Then shall ye wash it all oher with lye & salt water mixed together, and then after wash it with common water: but the common shepherds do take nothing but Tar mixed with some fine grease. There comes a scabbiness also Lambs scabby, among lambs being half a year old, as toward winter, or the next fall of the leaf. you shall in some places have all your lambs scabby, or the most thereof, which cause is, as shepherds do say, when the lambs be scabby that gets them; all those lambs will be scabby at the next fall. They

Scabs on the  
mousel of the  
sheep.

do heal it by greasing them with Tar, mixt with two parts of fresh grease, or neats foot oyl, or goose grease, if you can have it, for that is best. There is also another scabbiness which chanceth sometimes on the mousel of sheep & young tegs, and that comes (as Shepheards do say) where there is great plenty of farrs and gozse, that by the eating of the tops and flowers thereof, they prick their lips and mousel, whereby come these sorts of scabs, the which they heal by anointing them with fresh butter. Some take the iuyce of Plantain and fresh-grease boyled together, and therewith anoint them.

Wool to come  
again.

Of Tar and his  
nature.

If the wool of sheep after scabbiness do go off, as in some place, the wool will go clean off: to make it grow again, and fill the aforesaid place; some Shepheards do use to grease them with Tar mixed with some other thing as Butter, Oyl, Goose grease, or Fresh-grease; for Tar alone is sharp, a fretter & whealer without it be mixed with some of those things aforesaid, to make him run the better. Some use to make the wool come soon again, to mix with Tar & Oyl, the soot of a Chaldrons bottom, & so mix with Oyl and a little Tar, the powder of a burnt daffill-root, or the powder of the Water-lilly-root, or the root of the Water-cloth, which hath a broad leaf on the water, or Garden-cress beaten with Mustard, & laid to, or the herb Crow-foot stamped with Oyl, & laid to: these cause both wool & hair to come again in any pill'd place. Sheep will commonly have the cough, which comes from the lungs; if it be vehement, you must give him in the morning with a horn a little of sweet Almonds, mixed with a little White-wine, and give it warm, and give him new straw, and make him to eat of the Colt-herb growing on lands, some call it horse-hoof & this Cough commonly taketh them in the Spring. If they chance to have it at any other time, then give them Fenegreek bruised with Cummin. Also all these are good against the Cough, as to take three or four leaves of Mallows dried & boiled in milk, & given with a horn, which is excellent; or Juniper-leaves sod in wine,

strained

strained & giben. Also the iuyce of the great Nettle, stamped and strained with Wine, and giben warm. All these help the cough, which maketh them lean.

Sheep oftentimes are troubled by a blood toward the canicular daies, the which blood increasing causes sheep to haue a turning giddiness in their heads, tumbling & leaping without cause, & if you touch their head or feet, you shal find them very hot: then ye must incontinent let them blood on the vein (on high on the midst of his nose) called *Bebina*: and soon after he will amend & do well again. Some shepherds put a little quantity of blood on their temples, whereby they find it very good: & for these also which haue a cough and are morfounded; to giue them a spoonful of *Spithzidate* or *Triacle* in wine. As for the cough in sheep, if they haue it not very toze, they will in short time amend thereof again, and it will by little and little go away clean. But in the mean time that sheep will not wax fat, but still wax leaner and leaner, if it continue with him.

Blood in sheep.

Cough or Morfound.

For the *Haw* in the eye, to drop therein the iuyce of *Camomile* or *Crow foot* herbs, stamped & laid to. Against any hot cause or pain in the eyes, to let in the iuce of *Dragon herb*, or to let the iuyce of *Lettuce*, or lay it to plaister, will. For a cold cause the iuyce of *Clary* mixt with honey & drop in. Also the iuyce of the seed of *Selandine* warmed in a latten vessel, and put into the eye, is very good. *Germander* mixed & beaten with honey, & so laid to, is good against any blow about the eye. Also the iuyce of *Pimpernel* let into the eye & laid to, will break or kill ebery *Haw* or other impostume in the eye.

Haw in the eye.

Sometimes a sheep will wax blind for a time, & then mend again. Some shepherds let a little *Tar* into his eye, and they find that he will mend the rather: there are divers things before recited, yet they heretofore haue used only but this *Tar*; whether it hath been for lack of further knowledge I know not. And some let blood under the eye. Water in the belly of a sheep will rot him: for with

Blindness in sheep.

Water in sheep water

water, some shepherds will cut a hole in his belly, & put in a feather, & so let out all that water & then stitch it again: and thereby some do escape, and are well again.

The worm under the horn.

Some sheep will have a turning sickness, which is caused by a certain small worm (as some shepherds say) that lieth under her horn, which causes them to turn as it were round. If the worm be under the right horn, then the sheep will turn on the left side: if the worm be in the left horn she will turn on the right side, thus (as they do say) alwayes contrary. Wherefore when any sheep turnes or bobis her head on the left side, you shall take all round about the right horn, and then strike it off, and then it will mend again.

Blood on sheep.

Blood on sheep if it come at any time of the year, it is evil & that sheep that hath it is in danger to die suddenly: but ere he die, ye shall see him stand and hang down his head & therewith sometimes quake. When if the shepherd can spy it, let him take him, and rub all his head and his ears well and under his eyes: then with a sharp knife cut off both his ears, and let him bleed under both his eyes. If then he bleed well, he is like to recover again. But if he bleed little or nothing then it were best to kill him, and to save his flesh. For if he die himself (which will be soon after) his flesh is naught & his skin will be tetter than others. This blood taketh most commonly on sheep that are fat, and in good liking.

Bladder in the head.

There is in sheep a bladder, which will be under the skull in his head commonly behind, & when he is troubled therewith, he will come heavily dragging behind his fellows. When shall you take and search him, and where you shall find it most soft, there cut the skin across, and flea, & turn up the four corners. Then with the point of your knife rase the skull finely, but take heed you touch not the brain, and so take and rase up part of the skull, and then you shall see a thin skin or bladder & therein lie the worms which are white like oat meal groats, and are alive. So take all the bladder whole out: so done, lay the skin fair and

and close all over thereon again, and bind thereon eight or nine fold of linnen, and keep him warm and close, for the space of a fortnight after, and let him take no cold, nor rain; if he do, he dieth thereof: and after fourteen daies you may turn him abroad to his fellows. This disease cometh most unto young sheep, as of two years or under, and not unto old sheep.

To tag or belt sheep is, when any sheep by running out or meashness of his dung, do ray and defile his tail: the shepherd shall then take shears, & cut the tags away, and cast dry mould thereon. If it then be the hot time of Summer, it were good to rub it over with a little Tar, to take flies away. Also shepherds should have a little board by his fold side, to lay his sheep clean thereon when he dresses him, & his Tar-bottle to hang ready thereby, fast on a forked stick; he should not go without a dog, and his sheep-hook, knife, shears and Tar-box ever with him, or at his fold. Also he must teach his dog to bark when he would have him bark: & to run, and to leave running when he would, or else he is no cunning shepherd. For to chase his sheep it is not good: some say it is a breeder of the scab by chasing & then taking sudden cold thereon. Therefore he must teach his dog when he is a whelp for then is best, for it is hard to make an old dog to stoop. Wherefore let them be taught when they are young.

To tag or belt sheep.

Dogs for Shepherds.

How to perceibe sheep when they wax and are scabby: Pox in Sheep.

ye shall best perceibe when they are scabby by the locks of wool on their back hanging loose; therefore let the Shepherd view and oversee his flock day by day, & so he shall soon perceibe if any sheep do break or not. Sheep will have a scab, which shepherds call the pox, and it will shew on the skin like red pimples or purples, and they will be broad like spots, as broad as farthings, & there dieth many sheep thereof for lack of looking to betimes. Therefore to handle often all your sheep, and look all over their bodies, and see if you find any sheep taken therewith, ye shall by and by take him from his fellows, & put him into some

fresh pasture. And then see & look daily to the rest of the flock, & draw them as ye shall see them infected therewith, & put them in fresh pasture if you have it: in summer, when there is no frosts, then it shall be good to wash them in water. Remedies also: Some take the iuyce of spight-shage mixt with grease, & therewith anoint: or garlick beaten together with Tar, & so anoint; or the iuyce of Bellitoy of Spain or of Artichoke mixt with strong vinegar & therewith wash it. Other remedies shepheards have, the which I know not: but these, I think shall be sufficient.

The Wood-evil, or Cramp.

There is also a sickness amongst sheep, which the shepheards call the Wood-evil, or Cramp which cometh most commonly in the Spring of the year, and takes them most in their legs, & in their necks, so that it makes them hold their necks awry. And the most part of sheep that have this sickness, within two daies will die thereof, except they have a speedy remedy. Which remedy is best, to wash them a little, & to change their grounds or going, & to bring them to feed in some low pasture. For this grief cometh commonly to sheep on ley and hilly grounds, and full of ferny grounds. Other remedies there are which men do use, to let blood in the vein under the eye. Also some do say that Houndsk Stampt with Beatesfoot oyl, & therewith anoint; or Scallions stampt & bound to their legs. Other, Bugloss the leaves stampt and bound to their legs.

Maggots in sheep.

Sheep in the Summer will be troubled with maggots the fle will blow upon small occasions. To perceibe when any sheep is troubled therewith, you shall see by byrting, stamping, starting, and shaking her tail: and there most commonly it is moist & watery. If it be nigh the hinder parts or tail, it will be defiled, and wax oftentimes green with dunging. When must the shepheard clip away all the wool in that place, to the skin, then cast a handfull of dry mouldy powder thereon (which he should have alwaies in a bag ready) to dry up the moisture: When wipe away that mold, & where the maggots were, lay Tar thereon all over. Thus in the Summer, you must every day

day see well unto them and mark their feeding & going.

For an Ewe that wil forsake her Lamb as soon as it is <sup>Ewes to their</sup> yeaned, to make her love it, shepherds do take the birth- <sup>Lambs.</sup> skins (which is a thin catwl that the Lamb is lapped in) which they take, (or part thereof) & lay it upon a lump, and let it into her mouth, and make her soe to swallow it. If the Ewe wil not eat it, then let her chew it wel up and down in her mouth, and after that she shal love her Lamb, and be afraid of it, as others. And to make her to love another Lamb, if hers be dead; they use to take her Lambs skin, and clap it on another Lambs body, & then she wil love the other Lamb, and think it is her own. If an Ewes Lamb do die in the birth some shepherds do take the dead Lamb, & rub another Lamb all over therewith, and by that means the Ewe wil receive it as her own, & wil love it as wel.

Sheep oftentimes wil be poysoned by eating some evil <sup>Poyson of</sup> herb, or other things, whereupon they wil swell & stagger. <sup>sheep.</sup> holding commonly their heads down, and within a while after they wil foam at their mouth, and then soon after they wil fall down & die. The remedy is: Shepherds do use as soon as they see any sheep reel or stagger, to take him, & open his mouth; and under his tongue, at the root, there shal ye see bladders, which they do rub with the powder of loam, or with crums of bread, & so wash it down. If ye cannot piss, then ye shal take drink, and pour some into his mouth, and soon after he will do well again; and give him the iuyce of Mozmwood, with Wine or Vinegar.

Against the time of Yeanning, as towards the Spring, <sup>Yeanning time.</sup> Shepherds must then take good heed unto their flocks of Ewes, or any other, having the government of such cattel. Then must the Shepherds cherish well their Ewes being with Lamb; for if the Ewes be not then strong, they will have no force to deliver their Lambs, which causeth many abortives or dead Lambs, & oftentimes they cannot be delivered without help. Therefore in that same time, good

Shepherds ought to give great attendance in those places where great flocks are, for to watch in the nights as well as dayes: By chance three or four Cows labour to yeane at one time; wherefore then the Shepherd must have help, or else they are like to have loss of Lambs. And where an Cow cannot deliver her Lamb, the Shepherd must help her in setting his foot on her neck, & with his hands to take it from her gently. If it come with the head forward, then it is more easie to be taken out: but if the Lamb do come with the rump forward, then must the Shepherd put in his fingers, and put a small cord about the houghs of both the Lambs fast, & so fasten and pluck the Lamb forth. If any Lamb do lie overthwart or cross, then must the Shepherd with a sharp knife cut the Lamb in three or four pieces and so take it forth.

Weak Lambs  
new yeaned.

Also if any Lamb be like to die when he is first lambred, ye shall open his mouth, & blow therein, and thereby many have recovered soon after, & done well. Wherefore in this time of the year, ye must be careful to see your Cows, and to be with them late at night, and early in the morning, & to see and hearken if any Cow complain or groan, that ye may be ready to help her. Also if any Cow have two Lambs, & too little milk shift one Lamb, as is aforementioned, unto some other Cow which hath no Lamb; this ye may do, & save in lambing-time many Lambs.

Easie deliv-  
erance.

Things good for the easier deliverance of the lambs to be ministered in time of extremity. Nettles boyled in Malmsiey, & given, which will open the neck of the Patrix. Anniseed boyled in Ale or Wine, & given. The juice of Penny-royal stamped and given. Also the juice of wild Parsnips stamped, strained, and given. The herb called Marewort (in Latin Aristolochia) drunk with myrrh, and pepper, Wine or Ale, and given. Also the leaves of wild Sage stamped & strained with Wine, or Ale, & given; or to anoint the Patrix with the juice of wake Robin. Also fitches stamped with Ale, & given is good also; or mint stamped and strained with honied water. Wallow leaves stamped.

Stamped and strained with Ale, and given; or the root of Laurel stamped & strained with honied water, then warmed & given. All these aforesaid are good to be given in order, for the speedy deliverance of the Lambs, when an Ewe is in danger & weak. Sheep sometimes will have <sup>Loose teeth.</sup> their teeth loose: for that, some do let them blood under the tail, & some do counsel to chafe their gums with the powder of Mallow roots burnt & made into powder, and rub them therewith.

Things good to increase milk in an Ewe, or those which <sup>To increase</sup> have scant of milk: ye shall use to give them fitches, or the <sup>milk.</sup> herb Dill to eat or make the Ewe take the succe in drink: or Anniseeds beaten & given, & to give them Coleworts is very good. And also Barley sod in Water, with Fen-nel-seed, & so given will increase much milk; and Nigella Romana given to eat five or six dayes together, or to give the succe of Sow thistle; all these aforesaid are very good to increase milk.

Of herbs wholesome for sheep chiefly afoze others, are <sup>Herbs whole-</sup> Pellilot, the three leaved graze, self-heal, cinquefoyl, broom <sup>some.</sup> & pimpernel, white henbit they will eat; good in Summer, for it cools them. Others there be but these shall suffice.

What times are best to wean Lambs: In some places, <sup>Weaning</sup> they never separate the Lambs from the Ewes, which <sup>Lambs.</sup> (as they say) is for two causes: one cause, where the Rams go with the Ewes if needeth not, for they will war soon day, so will their Lambs be weaned of themselves. The other cause is, where they have no seberals to put their Lambs in when they should be weaned; Wherefore we must either sell them, or let them suck so long as the dams will give them leafe. And some say the Lambs shall never rot so long as they suck their Dams, except they want meat. For him that hath seberal pastures, Lambs would be weaned when they are sixteen or eighteen weeks old; and the better the Ewe shall take the Ram again, when need shall be. The poor Husbands in many places where they do use to milk their Ewes, do wean their

Lambs weaned

Lambs being twelue weeks old, and they do milk their Cows five weeks and more. But those Lambs shall neuer be so good as the other that suck long, and haue meat enough besides; which haue been tited and probed best.

An Cowe having milk, and wil not lobe her Lamb (as some will not) ye shall do thus: put her into some narrow place so that she can scant turn her, & her Lamb with her; if she smite the Lamb with her head, bind her head to the side of the Pen, & giue her a little meat, then tie a dog by her that she may look on him, and that will make her lobe her Lamb, as I haue before expressed.

To diuide or  
draw sh. ep.

The fittest time to diuide or draw sheep, is, after ye haue shorn them, then to put them in parts, as those that you will feed by themselves, the shear-hogs by themselves, the Cows by themselves, the Lambs by themselves, and the Weathers & Rams by themselves if ye haue so many pastures for them: Or else the great sheep wil beat the small with their heads, & there may be some of each sort which like not, & are but weak; all such would be put into fresh pastures by themselves, and when they are well amended then sell them. And the oft changing of pasture shall amend all kind of Cattell in shorter time, then to remain long in one pasture.

Fold for sheep.

Also for folding of sheep: In some places they do set their fold with diuers partitions, and point the Weathers, the Cows, and the Lambs by themselves. Some Shepherds tie dogs at the four corners of the field. Some do dzail their dogs about the fold a pretty way off. Others set up shewes of dead dogs heads, which is to fear any wild beast in coming to the fold. In some places the Shepherd hath his Cabbin going upon a wheel, for to remoue here and there at his pleasure. Shepherds need not care greatly for folding but once in a year, which is from July, till after August, except dry countries; for they are neuer lightly folded in Autumn or Winter: for in rainy weather they counsel not to fold, but to stick stakes about upon the Lands, and there the Sheep will sit down by them:

them: whereby they shall have more room, than being together in the fold; & shepheards say. It is not good folding of sheep in rainy weather.

And also to make your Pens near the fields or pasture. To put the Rams to Ews.  
 side in some dry ground, & make also partitions therein to receive small troops of forty or more, with gates unto them, that when you have drawn them, ye may fasten each gate by himself, and there the shepheards may turn them, and look if any of them be faulty in any in any other cause, and therein to amend them. For if his Pen be made in parts he may take and divide them at his pleasure, & when he hath taken so many as he shall think needfull, he may turn all the rest for pasture. And those which are in the Pen he may use as he shall think good: this shall suffice for your Pen-fold.

To put the Ram unto the Ews, if all men do at one time that is not the best, for then there will loss follow. An Ewe with Lamb.  
 For he that hath the best Winter-pasture, or a timely Spring in the year, he may suffer the Rams to go with the Ews all the year, so tober when they will. But in common pastures, the Rams are commonly put to the Ews about holy Rood-time: for then, they say, the Ram would go with the Buck, to have them more timely; but the common husbandmen may not so do, because he hath no pasture but the common fields: for him to put y<sup>e</sup> Ram to the Ews it shall be best at Michaelmas. And for such poor husbands as dwell among mountains & hills, having neither pasture nor common fields, but mountains and heaths, it were better for them to put the Ram to, about Simon & Judes day: for, because a Ewe goeth with Lamb twenty weeks, if she do Lamb too soon or timely in the Spring, having no new grass she may not give her Lamb milk, and for want thereof many Lambs are lost, & the Ews then being poor, and having no milk, they will often forsake their Lambs, that in hard Countries oft times they dye, both the Ewes & Lambs; therefore herein let every man do as he thinks best.

Where

The leaf in  
Lambs.

There is also in the Spring, a disease that comes to many Lambs, which commonly are of ten or fourteen daies old & is much in ley pastures. which disease the shepherds call y<sup>e</sup> Leaf: because say they they will feed most commonly upon leaves, & chiefly on Oak & Hawthorn leaves, & soon after they will reel & stagger, & foam at mouth, then they will fall down & so die: whereof I have asked many shepherds, & they know no remedy for them. Wherefore me thinks it should seem good to try if the disease come by any poisoned thing. When so give him such things as will expell poison, as to give the Lamb some Treacle in warm Milk, or Southernwood stamped & given with Ale, or the juice of Aron called Cuccospit stampd & strained in horned water & given warm, or the root of the great Bur bruised & sod in Wine & then given. All these are good against poisoned causes. But if this disease breed first in the head, then shall ye minister things chiefly to purge the head, as the tender buds of Bear-foot beaten, & the juice mixed with Wine & given. Also the juice of Sow-bread, in Latin Pannis porcinus, y<sup>e</sup> which juice you shall put into his nostrils & let it distill into his head, the which will purge both his head & his brain. Likewise the juice of Garden Cresses, stampd and strained, and given with Wine, do also purge the head. But if the said disease do come of the Hawthorn, or Oak-leaves only, which leaves be of a hard digestion, & perhaps may cause this disease: if it should be so, then boyl Southernwood in Wine, & give thereof to the sick Lambs, or wild Gallows sod in Wine, & given: or the herb Cuccospit boiled in Wine, & given: also of Juniper-seeds, or leaves, stampd & strained, given with Wine. Also Pennyroyal stampd or strained with Wine or Ale, & so given. These above said are good to make digestion, & other ways wholsome for the beast. Thus much I thought meet to write, concerning the remedies for this strange disease, in Lambs. Let shepherds try, so far as they shall think good.

Against the looseness of teeth, some do let blood, as I have also said, under the tail: But whensoever any  
of

of your sheep have loose teeth, ye shal take the tender crops of bzars, called Black-bzar, & put thereof amongst his meat, and so they will fasten again in eating thereof. It is very good for all men to understand but especially shepherds, what things do hurt or rot sheep, whereby they may avoid the danger the better. We shall understand there is a grass or weed called Spearwort, the leaves are long and narrow like the point of a spear, hard and thick, the stalks hollow, growing a foot & more high, with a yellow-flower which is commonly in wet places, and there will it grow most, or where water hath stood in the winter. There is also another weed called Pennywort, or Pennigrass: it will commonly grow in moist and marshy grounds, and it groweth low by the ground, and hath a leaf on both sides of the stalk like unto a penny, thick and round, & without flower: yet some do say it beareth a yellow flower, which will (as they say) kill sheep if they do eat it. Also all manner of grass that land-floods do overrun, before a rain, it is not good for sheep; because of sand and stinking filth lying thereon; & all manner of marshy grounds is evil for sheep; and the grass that groweth amongst fallows, is not very good for sheep, for among it is much earth, & other ill weeds. Also knot-grass is not good for sheep, for (as some do say) it will cause them to foam at the mouth, & so will be a scab. Likewise all Mouldworts grass is not good, which ye shall know two manner of waies. The one is, by leaves upon trees in the morning, and chiefly on the Oak-tree. If ye lick the leaves, ye shall find a taste thereon like honey, whereby the Mouldworts grass & rimes on the ground will kill many sheep. Then, if the Shepherd do well, he should not let them go abroad untill the Sun have dried up all those dewes. In like manner, evil water is not good: And a hunger-rot is the worst rot of all, for therein is neither good flesh nor skin; & being hunger-starved, they do eat such as they can come by. But in pasture they seldom times have the rot, but are hurt with Mouldworts; yet then they will have much fallow,

Against loose teeth.

Rotters of sheep.

Grass among fallows.

and likewise flesh, & also a good skin. They say little white snails be ill for sheep, either in pastures or fields: there is a Rot called the pellet rot, which cometh of great wet, especially in wood grounds, or fallow fields; where they cannot well dig them. These are the chief things that do rot sheep as the Shepherds have found commonly by experience from time to time.

Aristotles  
Precepts.

Certain precepts taken forth of Aristotle, libro De natura Animal. When the teeth of a sheep be all eaten, it is a sign that the sheep is old: yet thereto some Shepherds do say, It is so in a young sheep as well as in the old, and that is according unto the Pasture or Ground they do feed in. If they feed in hard ground, their teeth will wear sooner then they will in softer ground or pasture.

Lambs.

If ye will have your Lambs come in the Spring time, put the Ram to the Ewe in the midst of October: If ye will have them come in Winter, ye must put the Rams to the Ewes in July.

Lambing  
time.

The Ewe doth go with her Lamb five Moneths: ye shall mark, when the Ewe doth commonly bleat being great with Lamb, then judge that her lambing-time is near.

Also ye shall note, if a rain come incontinent after that the Ram hath covered the Ewe, those Lambs are like to die.

Black Lambs.

A Ram that hath a black tongue, all the Lambs he gets are like to be black, or else spotted.

Stony or Harsh grounds are not wholesome for sheep, and wood is not very hurtful.

In Summer, sheep ought to be fed in the morning before the heat of the day, and let them drink fair water of the Spring. Also in the Spring time & Winter, put not forth your sheep before the dew and frosts be gone, for that grass which hath dew or frost, breedeth a disease or scab.

It is good also to put your sheep in Harbrest in stubble ground

ground, for they will dung well the Lands. Note also if a ground be wet with rain, it shall not be good to let them lie therein, but drive them to some other place.

Again, in the month of April, May, June, & July, not then to eat much; but in August, October, November & December, then to eat well after the dew is gone, the better to withstand the frozms in Winter.

Note also that the washing of y<sup>e</sup> Sheep with salted rain-water after he is shorn, will save him from the itch, and breaking of the wool, & from being scabby: note, that putting the Ram to the Ewes when the wind is in the North, will cause them to bring Males, & putting the Ram to the Ewes when the wind is in the South, will cause the Ewes to bring female Lambs. And those Ewes that do drink salt water, do desire the Ram the sooner; but ye must not salt the water, before the Ramming time, but after: Some say two good Rams to a hundred Ewes is sufficient, and some think the more Rams the sooner speed: but they will serve.

Note also all things will fat Sheep, which are mingled with salt water, as fetches, bzann, chaffe, and such like. Much stirring of Sheep doth make them lean. There is a disease in Sheep which is called the Spzing, it comes with a swelling in the belly, & foaming at y<sup>e</sup> mouth, & suddenly the Sheep will fall down in the way. The remedy: Take a quantity of Rue, & another of Rosemary & boyl them in Milk, or in new Ale, for that is the better & when it is a little boyled, then stamp it, and then strain it & so give it Milk-warm unto the Sheep: but before ye give it, prick him under the tongue, and make it bleed if ye can, and he shall do well.

There is also oftentimes a giddiness in Sheep, which doth take them in their heads (as Shepherds do judge:) if it be the bladder, ye shall find it soft under your finger, & there ye must cut it as is aforesaid: or the woym under the hozn, which is likewise afoze declared. For any other pain or giddiness these are special good take the juice of Ivy-leaves,

Water in the  
belly.

and put thereof into his ear, and bind it for casting out: or the juice of Succospit in like case warm: or the juice of Hegtaper called Forglobe, put into his ear. The juice of Wild-time stamp with Ale, strained and given. Or the juice of Sowbzead (called in Latin, Panis Porcinus) distilled in at the nose into the head, purgeth both the head & the brain of the Sheep. Against the water in the body or belly, ye shall stamp & strain of two Penny-grass & give it with Wine boyled. Against any water in the head, boyl Pusan in honied water strained & so given. All these aforesaid are good against water in any part of the body. Also they say, when the feth of the Sheep was long & even, it is a sign of age in them.

#### For the Worm in the Guts.

**S**ome Sheep will have a long worm in their guts, & also Lambs of a quarter old, which breeds of some raw humor: the signs are, he will forsake his meat, and sit most commonly bowling his head to his belly, and he will often grone, his belly will swell & shortly he will dye thereof if he be not holpen. The remedy: Take a quantity of y<sup>e</sup> juice of horehound, with some leek blades, all brused & so given: or give him y<sup>e</sup> powder of wormseed in some malmsey, also the powder of rabin finely beaten & given in Wine or Ale.

Sheep sometimes will be lowlie, & have lice like hoglice, which breeds sometimes by much wet, sometimes by hunger & poverty, & sometimes they may have lice in lying among hogs, & then ye shall see them rubbing & scratching with their horns, & so will tear their wool in many places. The remedy: Take quick-silver killed in oyl olive or spittle, & therewith anoint your Sheep: or the powder of white Ellebovy, & mix it with salet-oyl, & therewith anoint: or boyl it in vinegar, & wash the Sheep therewith: or take the powder of Flavesacre & mix it with oyl olive, & anoint therewith: or ye may take fresh grease, sope, Tar, & melt them together, & therewith anoint. All these aforesaid are good for Sheep that are lowlie.

There

There is sometimes on the end of the Ewe teats a certain <sup>Stop in the</sup> small mote or scab with a black head hanging unto it a hard <sup>tears.</sup> matter string like flegm, which is within the teat & it will stop her milk, that of some Ewe the Lamb can draw no milk. Wherefore the Shepherd must see to all such things in Lambing time, or else some Lambs are like to starve.

Some say that a horned Ram is ill to get Lambs, for Ewes are at Lambing time in more danger of de liverance, because E Lambs have long stubbed horns before they are Lambed: whereby in the Lambing time they put Ewe in more danger: therefore the nat Ram is the better.

Some sheep will have a water-bladder under their chin, <sup>Water bladder</sup> which you may feel to be soft, & will breed in moist times <sup>in sheep.</sup> of winter by feeding in moist places: Shepherds have no other common remedy but to lance it a little, & then to Tar it. There be some Lambs their pesil is cloven. I can learn <sup>Cloven pesil.</sup> no remedy, but keep it clean till it be big, and anoint it with Tar, & then to kill him: for he will die at the length.

How to know the age of sheep: the being of one shear, she will have two broad teeth afoze: at the second shear, she will have four broad teeth afoze: at the third shear, she will have six broad teeth afoze: and at the fourth shear she will have eight broad teeth afoze: and thus ye may know the age of all sheep by their teeth.

Sheep are called Oves in Latin, which word comes of sacrificing in the old time: the sheep is a beast good & profitable for many commodities for the use of man, as commonly is known among all men in this Country & others. If the Rams be put unto the Ewes when the wind is in the North, the Ewes will bring Male: & if the wind be in the South, if the Ewes be then covered, they will be female Lambs. Also, such a colour as the vein under the Rams tongue, of such colour shall E Lamb be when he is Lambed: & when old sheep are moved to generation in inordinate times. Shepherds say it is a good sign: & if young sheep be so moved (say they) it is a token of some general pestilence among them that year following.

Also Aristotle said, Sheep do commonly conceibe in dzinking salt water, & therefore some Shepherds do gibe them salt, & do force them to take it: which doth canse them to conceibe the rather, & salt will keep them longer safe and sound without sicknes. They do also gibe them in harbest, Cucurbiras, & such herbs with salt which will increase much milk in their udders. If your sheep be made to fast for daies, & then gibe them meat, they will soon after wax fat: in Summer, cold water coming out of the North springs, is good for them to dzink: and in Harbest, warm water coming out of the South shall be good for them, & then to eat in the latter part of the day or night, is also good for sheep. And those sheep which are driven & trabel far, do soon wax lean, and Shepherds will perceibe those that will best endure out the next winter following: for some sheep are so feeble, that they are not able to shake off the ice from their backs, & some will suffer none thereon, but still shake it off. The sheep which be nourished in watery places, their flesh is not so wholesome as others nourished in dry grounds, and those four-footed beasts nourished in moist grounds, with long tailes, may worse away with winter than those with broad tailes.

Also sheep with small & thin short wool on their tailes, may worse away with winter. Shepherds say, the wool of a sheep that is worried with the wolf, or eats thereof, is infected, & the cloth made of that wool is lowlie.

Sheep are also of less stoutness of nature and wit then other four footed beasts. The thunder feareth sheep greatly, especially if one be alone. If thunder happen in the evening or night, it is dangerous to make Ewes to call their Lambs, or if any be alone. Whereof it shall be a good remedy, to bring them into one flock. Acorns are ill for sheep, & make Ewes to call their Lambs.

Some Shepherds say, to shear sheep not before midsummer, is good to make them have a long staple, for in hot weather the wool of sheeps backs doth grow most.

In folding of sheep, to the opinion of some, husbands hold, that

that the piss of sheep doth heat, help, and comfort the land as much, or rather more, than doth their dung: therefore some do will their servants or shepherds to raise all the sheep in the fold before they let them forth in winter once every night, & to go about the sides of the fold with a dog, for commonly when as sheep do see any dog come nigh them, they will dung and piss; & when they have so done, then let them out of the fold: and this ordure is very good for your land.

Against the rot: If you fear your sheep, in wet times ye shall put them into an house three daies and three nights without meat or drink: then give to every hundred a bushell of bran, mixt with as much salt laid in troughs, and hunger will make them to eat it: then drive them to the water, & let them drink their fill: then let them be chased with a Cur a good space after, and put them then into what ground ye will for one quarter, & they shall take no hurt: then must you take them up the next quarter to serve them so again.

Thus must you use them four times in a year in doubtful times, if ye will save your sheep from the rot.

Some Shepherds use when they fear the rot, to take them up & give each sheep he suspecteth a little milk mixt with salt, and so set water by them and keep them so for certain daies, the which is thought a good way to preserve them, if they be taken in time.

Some Shepherds give their sheep the juice of Elder mixt with honied water; or milk, given warm a little, which will purge water forth of their bodies: or three drams of the juice of Burge in a pint of honied water, to give a quantity therof. Also Plain sod in water mixt with some milk and given, purgeth water betwixt the flesh and the skin, Thus much concerning the rot and water in sheep. Also if sheep be chased or driven a journey, if then they will drink salt water, it is a sign they are sound, and will do well.

A good Medicine for the staggers in Lambs  
or young sheep.

**T**Ake of long Pepper, of Licoras, of Anniseeds, of  
Hemp-seed & of Honey, of each a penny worth, then  
beat all these together: then put thereto a pottle of new  
milk, & stir the honey & it with the rest altogether, & there-  
of give unto each Lamb or sheep two spoonfuls or some-  
what more, milk-warm, and this will save them for that  
year. This must be given in the beginning of the month  
of May.

To help Sheep that have  
the Pox.

**Y**E shall prick the vein under the tail nigh the rump, &  
let them bleed, and likewise prick the vein under the  
right eye & let them bleed: then take as strong Vinegar  
as ye can get, and put to so much salt, as ye may make it  
like a brine, and milk-warm give every sheep three good  
spoonfuls thereof. Use this twice or thrice between two  
or three dayes, & it will help. But as soon as you shall see  
any sheep infected, put him from the rest, & then give him  
this drink aforesaid. The Pox will commonly begin un-  
der the brisket, & so on the rump, & then it will meet in  
short time, and so perish.

For the Itch, or Scab  
in Sheep.

**Y**E shall boyl the herb Warefoot in wafer, with the  
root of Camellion noir, which is the great Thistle  
that bath milk: and wash the scabby places therewith  
warm, and it will help: often proved.

Cutting

## Cutting or Gelding of Lambs.

**T**he age of cutting or gelding of young Lambs (as some shepherds say) is best in the wane of the Moon, the sign and hour being good, young Lambs from three daies old till nine daies old: for then they are young and tender, and may easily be gelded. Yet some other do hold, it is better cutting of Lambs when they are more strong as at three weeks old or more. But then is more danger in cutting them: for if they be then rank of blood (as some will be more than other some) then the blood often will fall into the cod, reins and belly, and there it will lie, & cause the Lambs soon after they are cut, to die. Therefore put the fine powder of rozen into the cod, & that will dry up the quarie blood.

Therefore some do chuse out of those Lambs that be lusty and fair, and cut their ears, or let them bleed the day before.

Some do shut them in a house all night before without meat, and then cut them. Also a good sure way is this: ye shall cause one to hold the Lamb betwixt his legs, or on his lap, and turn the Lamb on his back, holding his four feet upright together: but if ye shall see black spots in his flanks then cut him not, for he will die, for he is rank of blood. Then let the cutter take and hold the tip of his cod in his left hand, and with a sharp knife cut the top thereof an inch long clean away.

Then with his thumbs and his two foremost fingers on both hands, slip softly down the cod over the stones to his belly, and then with his teeth holding his left stone in his mouth, draw it softly forth so long as the string is: so done, then draw forth the the other stone in like manner. Then spit in the cod, and anoint his flanks on both sides of the cod with fresh grease, and so let him or them go.

D D

But

But if ye draw the stones rashly (as some will) not holding down his eod with their hands, as aforesaid, and suffer the Lamb to struggle, whereby it may soon break the string of a vein in drawing of the stones, it will then gather to lumps of blood in his belly and eod: & therefore he will die within two or three hours after. And when ye have cut them let them not lie, but stir them up and down after for two or three hours. For the Lambs to rest suddenly after cutting, is not good, nor yet to be put forth suddenly in cold winds or wet weather. Thus much for the cutting and gelding of Lambs.

For a Sheep that hath lost her guide.

If a sheep have lost her guide, notwithstanding sheep will eat all the day, and cast it up in the night again (which casting will be like to the panch of a brass) for he cannot digest it, and thereby they never prosper, but pine away at length by little and little. The cure ye shall take guide-wort that groweth among corn like groundsel, and bruise thereof a quantity; and then mark when ye do see another sheep chew her guide, take her, and take part of her guide out of her mouth, and mix it with the bruised guide-wort, and roll it in a little ball, and so give it, and make her to swallow it, and she shall do well.

The red Water.

Sheep oftentimes will have the red Water, which as the shepherds say, is a certain bladder with water under the tip of his heart; which water scalds and consumes the heart so that at length he will die. A good way to help, is, every night before they rest, to chase them a little with a dog, which will preserve them from the water.

Against

## Against the Gall.

**A** Sheep when he is troubled with flowing of the gall, ye shall see him stand shynking with his four feet together; then give him half a spoonful of Aqua vitæ, mixed with so much vinegar, and let him bleed under the tail, & he shall mend: & it is good against the red-water also.

## Herbs evil for Sheep.

**H**erbs, if Sheep eat thereof, as Spearwort that groweth commonly in moist places, & beareth a yellow flower, and hath leaves like spear-points, thick and hard to digest. Also black Ellebore will kill Sheep, or other cattel, if they eat any quantity thereof. There is another herb called two-penny-grass, that grows in Hedgows, which is as evil for Sheep as Spearwort. Again, oak-leaves, if Sheep eat thereof green, it is evil for them, specially for young Lambs, which will kill them; & likewise of other cattel. And dead grass or rotten fog in low commons, and pastures is evil for them, and will breed a Rot in them; and hemlock, and muskump is ill for Sheep, & snails. And thus much for evil herbs for Sheep, whereof I have recited part before.

## To help Hoggrels if they mislike.

**I**f young tegs or hoggrels under a year old do not like, ye shall make Tar warm, and give to each a spoonful thereof, and it will help: but if they be with Lamb, it is not good for them.

## The turning disease in Sheep.

**T**here is a turning disease in Sheep, that causeth them to hold their heads on the one side. Some shepherds counsel, if she hold her head on the right side, ye shall strike off the horn on the left side: for under the horn there lies a

worm, which ye shall anoint with Tar, & that wil kil it: then bind a cloth thereon, and so it wil do wel again.

#### The Tine-worm.

**T**he Tine-worm is a smal red worm with many legs, much like a hog louse, and they wil creep in grasse: if sheep or other cattel do eat one, they wil swell, & within a day die if he be not remedied. To remedy him ye sha'l take scale & salt a quantity, and stir them together, and gibe it so, & chase him a while after: or gibe him the juyce of herb-Robert, with Ale, and he wil mend.

To help the wethering of an Ewe.

**S**tamp the leaves of Mallows with strong Ale, & gibe it: or take and stamp herb-grace, and strain it with good Ale, & gibe the Ewe thre or four spoonfuls thereof, and she shal do wel, and the juyce of mugwort will do the like.

#### Goats, with their nature and feeding.

**A**s much as I have witten sufficiently of sheep, I wil now here speak somewhat of Goats, which are cattel much desired in many places. These kind of cattel to have bushes and bzars and also thorn and other trees, rather then to have plain pasture grounds or fields. For they feed as wel in rough and rude grounds, as plain places for they fear neither bzar, rock, nor thorn-bush, or other wood: and they love very wel low & smal trees, shrubs, as also wil-trees, crab-trees, and such like, or the wild grasse Pellilot: and also Willows, and young Oaks, or Elms, being not high.

The:

The Bucks have under their jaws two wattles or tufts like a beard, which is the better to be esteemed of his body also being large withal, and his legs great, his neck plain and short, with great hanging ears, his head small, his hair black and thick, clean and long withal. In many places they do shear them, for to make Mantles for Souldiers. Also the Buck Goat when he is of seven moneths old, he is sufficient to couple, and to cover the Females.

For he is of so great heat, so knavish withal, that he will not spare to cover his own Dam, though she be yet <sup>Goat Bucks</sup> wax soon old. <sup>wax soon old.</sup> malch. Thzough the which heat he wareth soon old and before he be six years old he is nigh spent. For his youthful years being so hot hath consumed his strength wherefore after five years he is not able to cover the females. The she Goat, which doth resemble the Buck also mentioned, is greatly to be praised if she have great teats, with large udders and full of milk. In temperate countries they do chuse the Goats which are without horns; but in countries windy and stormy, which is subject often unto great winds, they take those which have horns: but in most places ye shal see that the Bucks have no horns, because they are most unhappy in pushing and gozing with their horns, which thing is often dangerous.

These Cattel ought not to be abode one harnized in a Heard, although that sheep with wool may be a thousand together in a flock. And also when ye do buy Goats, it is better to buy together out of one company or heard, then to chuse in divers parts or companies, to the end that when ye would lead them to their pasture they do not separate themselves unto divers parts, & also it wil be the better for them to agree in their houses. And too great a heat in Summer annoyeth these cattel very much, yet more doth the cold in Winter: for these female Goats which do bring forth a kid in Winter, thzough the cold and vehemency thereof, it often maketh them bring forth abortives and dead kids.

Also abozsibes come, when they gibe them in some place nothing but akorns for their meat. Wherefoze ye must gibe them but a quantity thereof at once.

The chiefest time to have them coupl'd or cobered with the buck is in Autumn, befoze the moneth of December, to the end that, against the leaf and grass do spring fresh and tender, then they shall kid & bring forth their young the better, whereby to have moze grass, and thereby to gibe the moze milk.

Also their houses ought to be paved with stone, or else naturally to be of gravel of it self all under; for these kind of cattel are so hot, that they must have no litter under them. But their keeper ought alwayes to look diligently unto them, in cleansing them daily in their houses: and in their said houses not to suffer any filthy dung, or other moisture to remain, or any other donghill: for it is clean contrary against the nature of Goats. If that the Ewes be of a good kind, they will bring two kids apiece, and sometimes three at once, the which is not good, nor yet commended when a Goat so doth. And also being of two years, to bring at once three kids. If so, then ye must nourish the kids, as ye do the Lambs, having but small succour.

But the young Bucks must be a little moze corrected and kept low, to abate the heat and lasciviousnesse in them: But unto the other you must gibe abundance of milk; and also ye shall gibe them Elm-leaves and seeds: and of Pelliot-herb, and of Ivy, or the tender crops of lentile pease, or other tender branches and crops. Also when a Goat hath kidded, ye shall reserve the most fair and strongest of the two (if so be that she hath two at a birth) for to replenish alwayes your Heard, the other ye may sell if ye wil, or otherwise dispose of him. Ye shall not gibe any kid to a Goat of a year, or of two years to nourish, for those kids which they bring within those said times, ought not to be nourished or kept, except they be of three years; and thoe that be but a year, having a kid if  
ought

ought suddenly to be taken away from the Dam

But those Goats which have kids being of two years, ye shall let them remain untill they be ready to sell, and ye must keep your Does no longer then eight years, because that they being sore weakened in so often bearing, they will become barren. Also their keeper ought for to be rough unto them, in giving them sharp words; and to be diligent, patient, not angry, and yet bold for to go with them through hallies, on rocks, & desert places, thro' bushes, shrubs, and such like, and yet not alwaies to follow his herd, as the keepers of other cattel: But he ought to be alwaies before his Cattel, & to be more careful of them than any other Cattel. For these in feeding, and browsing, or pasturing, do alwaies obey the Bucks, in descending and in giving them place, and therefore they must needs be looked unto: when some do sit, look that the other run not here and there; but see that they do rest peaceably and gently all at their own ease, to the end that the Does having the greatest teats and udders, do not thereby wax lean, or otherwise become chile or sick.

The Goats are nourished almost of nothing chargeable. Yet they browse and feed wholly together as the sheep and do climb up on mountains against the heat of the Sun, with great force than the sheep and they be of more great trabel and exercise, and are more in strength and stouter of nature. Wherefore our ancestors did use them as they do yet in mountains and wild places, which is counted most meet for them, and to have their houses and government as the sheep have in putting the Buck apart, as they do the Rams: for they are in all things governed as the sheep, and are much conuersant with sheep in housing and pasturing alike.

But these kind of beasts are not so meet to be about houses as sheep, for they are more hurtfull to all manner of herbs and trees, therefore they are more meet for to be in rougher and barren grounds, as bushes, rocks, mountains,

tains and such. And some think it good, not to have in a treup or herd aboue fifty Goats, because they will be ranging here & there and are foolish cattel, and without care soon hang'd here & there, which are in moze danger then the sheep: therefore it is moze painfull unto their keeper: Also let them not go in cold places, for cold is most hurtfull unto them.

Of their Diseases.

Of diseases in  
Goats, as pe-  
stilence, and  
the like.

**A**S it happeneth to other kinds of Cattel to have the pestilence or murren, & such like: and sometimes sick of other diseases, in waxi. g. lean through pain thereof: also the Goats although they be fat, and in good liking, so much the sooner they will have the pestilence, and be cast down all at once, and die throughout all the heard except ye divide them: and when it so happeneth unto them, it is chiefly by the abundance of pasture or feeding. Now whensoever ye shall see one or two so taken with this disease, ye must let all the rest blood incontinent and ye shall not let them feed all the day, but four hours, and keep them shut close in a pen or such like thing, and so see if any other do become sick of the same or any other grief: then it is met ye give unto them of rushes and reeds, & also the roots of white-thorn, the which ye shall beat wel with a pebble of iron, and then mix it with rain water, without giving them any other thing to drink. If this do not help, ye must sell them, and if ye cannot sell them then it were best to kill them and salt them. And after a certain time, ye must recover another heard. But ye must not do this before the dangerous time of this pestilence be spent, or that year past: as if this should be in Winter, ye must abide untill the Summer next following: or if it be in Autumn, then tarry till the spring time. And when some of them shall chance to fall sick in the house, ye must give them the like remedy, as is aforesaid of the sheep.

And

And when that their skins shall swell or inflame, and that the Goat is full of water; which the Greeks do call Hydropis, a disease which cometh by drinking too much water, ye must cut them a little with a sharp knife under the shoulder, and thereby draw forth all the superfluous moisture, and then heal the wound with Tar. And after that the she-Goat hath born kids, if her matrix be swoln, or that the Secondine (which is the skin that the kids are lapt in) is not well born ye shall make her take a pint & a half of sod wine, or, if ye have not that, ye shall give her as much of other good wine, & so fill and strengthen their nature with cerote liquid. Now to the end I will not again recite that which I have already spoken (if any other disease do come unto them) ye shall help them with such medicines as I have already shewed in the remedies for Sheep.

For Goats have the like disease as they have and other cattel & as they say, the Goats are never without agues, for it is a common disease among them: & other diseases they catch in bringing forth of their young kids, as afoze is expressed. This I think shall be here sufficient at this time.

There is also in the teats of Goats, as in Cows, a certain stopping in some of their teats which is a hard matter like a straw of legum, which will be in the condite of the teat, with a little black head; some will stick so fast that the Kid or Lamb cannot draw it forth, & so long they can have no milk. Therefore must the Shepherd see to all such things at the Lambing or kidding time, or else the Lambs and Kids are like to starve.

Let the Keeper also look unto the Goat, that the females be not chased or hunted when they be great with kid; for if they be, they wil be in danger of misfurning the kids in their bellies, which causeth the kids oftentimes to die & puts the Goats in great jeopardy: & so it is with Cows great with Lamb, if they be chased being great, it turns their Lambs in them, & makes many miscarry in lambing time.

Thus much for the keeping and ordering of Goats.

If a sheep be bitten with any dog, ye shal clip away all the wool thereabout nigh unto the place, & then clap on a plaister of pitch, and it wil heal it.

To heal a Tetter, which is a dry Scab.

**Y**e shal take the roots of sorrel, wild or tame, slice them and braise them a little, & soke them in good vinegar two daies and two nights, & then rub the soze therewith four or fife times aday, & then let the roots so remain in the vinegar till; use this and it will help. Or take the gum of Cherry trees, and dissolve it in strong vinegar, & rub the soze therewith, & this will help. Also Allarabacca bruised & laid in vinegar to anoint, doth the same. Again, the herb called Wicke-madam, growing commonly on walls, stamped with barrows-grease & so remain two dayes, & then anoint therewith, doth likewise help. Or Bolearmoniack mixt with Hope, & then to anoint therewith. All these are good against Tettters, either for Sheep or Goats.

Lambs cutting, coming late in the year,  
or Kids.

**I**f ye have any Lambs that come in the end of May, or in June, the Aie wil be busie if then ye cut them. To defend the Aie, ye shal mix fresh-grease & soot together: (for the soot being sharp, will keep away the Aie) and so anoint the eod therewith, and he shal do wel.

To help Goats or Sheep that have  
an Itch.

**Y**e shal take of young broom the tenderest ye can get, & put a good quantyty thereof into a pot with chamber-lie, and stop it close, & so let it remain: and when as

ye shall have any cause to occupy thereof, shed ober the wool on the Shæps back, and anoint therewith, so that it may go down to the skin: this is soon made, and of small charge, and is moze better than Tar & fresh-grease. For it will fasten the wool, kill the scab, & also destroy ticks. Often proued quoth Balgrove.

To feed the Lambs from the  
Dams,

**A** Lamb taken from the Dam and so nourished by hand he may soon perish, although ye feed it very well, except ye look unto his dunging. For I have known some being kept, die thereof for lack of looking to. Ye shall open and anoint his tuell with butter and oyl, and so rake him, or else giue him Spurge with milk, or Centaury in milk.

An approved Medicine against the  
staggers in Sheep.

**T**Ake of houghleek called Singreen, y root of Dragons a like quantity, some groundz of strong Ale, with some new Milk, stamp the herbs, and then boyle them well together: then put thereto a few grains grossly beaten, and so let it haue a boyle or two after, so let it coole, and giue each sheep two or three spoonfulls thereof with milk warm: and this will help.

The Table for Sheep and Goats, by  
Alphabet, as followeth.

<b>A</b>		<b>Drink in Summer for sheep</b>	
<b>A</b> ge in sheep to know		<b>D</b> ropfie in Goats to help	
<b>A</b> ge of sheep by number of teeth		<b>E</b>	
Alterring by stock to help	205	<b>E</b> aning of Ews to ease	
Aristotles precepts for sheep	234	<b>E</b> ws chafed great with lamb not good	
Other sayings of Aristotle		<b>E</b> ws to make them love their lambs	216
<b>B</b>		<b>E</b> ws that love nor their Lambs	231
<b>B</b> leating of sheep	231	<b>E</b> aning time to take heed of	
<b>B</b> uying of sheep to know		<b>E</b> ws going with Lamb	231
Biting of sheep with a dog to help		<b>E</b> ws great not to be chafed.	
Bladder in the head of sheep to help	224	<b>F</b>	
Blindness in sheep to help	223	<b>F</b> atting of sheep	
Blood in sheep to help	223	<b>F</b> emale lambs to have	204
Blood in the cod of lambs to help		<b>F</b> eaver in sheep to help	216
Blood in the sheep, another	224	<b>F</b> legm in sheep to help	246
Breeding of sheep	205	<b>F</b> olding of sheep	230
Breeding strait in sheep	219	<b>F</b> olding of sheep, ano her	
Brooms-salve to anoint sheep with	215	<b>G</b>	
Bones broke to help	219	<b>G</b> all in sheep to help	243
<b>C</b>		<b>G</b> alled in the foot to help	217
<b>C</b> hoofing of Rams		<b>G</b> elding Lambs	
<b>C</b> hoosing of good sheep		<b>G</b> landers in sheep to help	210
Choller troubling sheep	216	<b>G</b> oats, their nature and feeding	
Cough in sheep to help	222	<b>G</b> oat-bucks having beards	
Cough, another way to help	223	<b>G</b> oat-bucks soon wax old	
Cloven pefill	237	<b>G</b> oat with kid not to be chafed	
Cramp in a sheep to help		<b>G</b> oats when best to be covered	
Colour of sheep best		<b>G</b> oats how for to nourish	
Cutting or gelding of lambs	250	<b>G</b> oats having the dropfie to help	
<b>D</b>		<b>G</b> oats being diseased to help	
<b>D</b> ividing of sheep	230	<b>G</b> overnment of sheep	
<b>D</b> ogs, meet for some Sheep-herds	225	<b>G</b> oats inflamed in the skin	

Goats

# The Table.

Goats that have pestilence to help  
Grass for sheep among fallows

233

**H**aw in the eyes of sheep to help

Head prained to help

Herbs evil for sheep

Herbs unwholsom for sheep

Horned Rams and their nature

Houses meet for sheep

Hog els, and young sheep do not like

I

**J**audies in sheep to help

Itch in sheep to help

L

**L**ambs being sick to help

Lambs scabby to help

Lambs weak to help

Lambs what time best to wean

219

Lambs eating the leaf to help

Lambs that come in the spring

Lambing time how to know

Lambs, to have black, or spotted

234

Lambing time to take heed of

Lice on sheep to kill

Lung-sick in sheep to help

Lambs coming late to cut

Lambs stopt to look unto

M

**M**ale Lambs to have

Maggots on sheep to help

226

Another for the same

Medicines good for sheep

Medicines against an itch

Meat sufficient for sheep

Meat or pasture for Goats

Milk to increase in sheep

229

N

**N**ourishing of sheep

201

O

**O**intment or greasing of sheep

P

**P**loughing ground for sheep

Pens made to divide sheep

Pestilence in sheep to help

Pox, and disease in sheep to help

Poyson among sheep to help

Purinsels in sheep to help

Proverb of pastures for sheep

Q

**Q**uide, to help

R

**R**acks meet for sheep

Rams how to chuse

Rams of estimation

Rams how to correct

Rams of what age to cover

Rams when to be put to the Ews

Rams to the Ews

Rams to the Ews, another

Rainy-weather not good to lie

Red water to help

Rotting of sheep to know

Rotting of sheep to help

Remedies with medicines to help

Rimy grass ill for sheep

Rotting of sheep

S

**S**cab on sheep to help

Scab on the chine of sheep

Scab on the lips

Scabbed sheep how to preserve

Scratches on sheep among bushes

Shepherd how to govern his sheep

Shering of sheep

Sound sheep to choose

Spring, a disease in sheep to help

Straglers in lambs or sheep

Strange sheep to order

Stopping of nipples of Ews to help

237

T

**T**agging of sheep to see to

Tar, and of his nature

Teeth loose in sheep to help

E c 3

Another

## The Table.

Another for the same		Water in the belly, another	
Teats stopped to help		Water bladder under the chin	
Thunder			237
Terters in sheep to heal	250	Washing sheep with salt water is	
Teeth many in a sheep to mark		good	211
The Tine-worm	254	Wash sheep often	
Thorns or scratches on sheep		Wild fire in sheep to help	218
Tokens good in a sheep		Wood-evil in sheep to help	226
Turning disease in a sheep	243	Wool to come soon again	222
W		Worms in the claw to help	226
W		Worms in the guts of sheep	
Weathering of Ews to help		Worms under the horn to help	
Water in the belly of a			224
sheep	223		

The



## The nature and qualities of Hogs, and also the government thereof.



The Hog is a hurtful and spoiling beast, stout and hardy and troublesome to rule: he is a great ravener for his meat, because he is hot of nature: Hogs are commonly known to most men, therefore I will here let pass to speak in every point thereof, but such as shall be meet to be known. There be of all sorts to be had: but the best having and choosing of them are the Males or boar pigs, for they do more resemble the nature of the boar than the sow. And those that are large and big of body, are most accepted rather than those of long and round bodies. And they ought to have deep bellies with thick and large thighs, not having his claws very high, nor very long legs, but thick and short, with a great thick neck: his groin and snout short, and bending backward with a broad thick chin: and yet those are most knavishly given when they are a year old: for they will desire to cover, or to be covered within every ten months: and so will continue till they be four years of age, and one Boar is sufficient for ten Sows. Also the Sow ought to have a long body all the rest of her body like the other aforesaid of the Boar: where the countries are cold, & subject to frosts, it is best there to chuse, & have hogs, which have high and hard bristles thick and black. If it be in temperate countries and warm against the Sun, there ye shall nourish those hogs that have thin, small, & low bristles, because they are commonly more tender than others. Also those hogs that are nourished in houses & towns, are most commonly whiter than others. A sow will commonly bring

bring pigs until she be seven years old: and these Sows that do bring pigs most often in the year, do sooner wax old than others; for some young Sows, well fed, being one year old, will have pigs. The Sows are best to be covered in the month of February: & when she hath gone with pigs four months, or sixteen weeks, then in the sixteenth week, or beginning of the fifth month, she will farrow. Some (as they say) will have pigs twice, some thrice a year. And when the grass is strong & wet, it causeth them to bring abundance of milk to nourish their pigs the better: for when she waxeth dry, & hath no milk to nourish them with, then must ye take them from her, and see to wean them, & so by little and little, they will fall to eating grass and corn, & such as falls on the ground: And thus in continuance they will wax more strong, to eat of all other kind of meat. This order they chiefly use in villages where great troops of Hogs are used and kept together, bred and brought up in Towns, where by at length there cometh great profit by them unto the Husband. As in places & villages nigh unto great Towns, or Gentlemens houses, in selling the young sucking pigs, which are alwayes ready money to them: and by this means the Sow is discharged of her pigs the sooner, whereby she shal be the readier to bring pigs twice or thrice in the year: & the Boar pigs ought to be gelded when they are about six months old, for then they begin to wax strong in heat, and being ungelded until then, they will grow to be more stouter hogs, & yet they commonly geld them when they be young, & under the Dam, as being three weeks or a month old, & some say, they will have the sweeter flesh: but the truth is contrary (as many judge) because they are too soon weaned in their nature, & therefore they will not be so large hogs. Some counsel to geld or spay the sows when they have been often covered, as at three or four years: & then so, as the Sows is counted best: some think in spaying them of Shotes is best, cutting them in the mid flank with a sharp knife two fingers broad, in taking out the bag of birth,

Gelding of  
pigs.

Spayed Sows.

birth, and cutting it off & so they do scitch up the wound again, and then anoint it, and keep her warm in the sty two or three daies after: & those that be spaid can bring no more pigs, nor the boars will not seek after them, & they will way the satter.

Notwithstanding. I cannot say why they spay them, except it should be to fat them, or where there is want of meat to feed them. For whereas plenty of meat is, better it is to have them bring up pigs than otherwise. Of these kind of beasts ye shall find in all Christian Countries, & some are in mountains as well as in plain Countiees. But the plain and moist grounds are far better for them, than the hot & dry ground. For the Forrests and commons are most convenient for them to feed on. And where there is great plenty of oak-trees, beech, ash, & thorn or bziars, hazels, and crab-trees, wild pear, or plum-trees, serber roots, & such like to feed them withall, from time to time. For these sorts of trees do not ripe all at one time, but in divers & sundry times of the Summer, which are almost sufficient to nourish them all the year long, with help of grasse and roots, and some helps now and then in Winter of other meat.

And where there is want of such trees, ye must have them to other feeding ground; & the best is, to have of dirty, slimy, & soft ground, than to have dry & hard ground. For in the soft ground, they may the easier digg and seek for worms and roots in the earth, and to tols and tumble in the dirty water, which doth them most good in hot times: wherein they delight much to tumble them, because oftentimes they would have water to cool them in; which cooling doth profit them much, and easeth them of their great heat, which is a breeder of the measels. They do feed in moyst and marish grounds, where they have many small and sweet roots, as flag roots, and the roots of Gallin-galle, of rushes, reeds, and also the roots of daffadil the which is very good for Hogs; knotgrasse, and such like. And likewise in fallow fields they do find store of roots,

and worms, which doth make them fat. And as for the other grounds covered with grass, they do find divers sorts of herbs and fruits, so that in divers parts thereof, they may have besides of wild plums, of pears, or haws, flocks, and nuts, & such like: and where ye shall see them have scant of meat, ye must not then spare your garners: for then ye must needs help them every morning with some meat, and likewise at night with some: for all the day before perhaps in fasting abroad they have had little or nothing: and therefore all good husbands should keep plenty of Acorns after Michaelmas to serve them all the year, if that they can. Acorns may be kept in Cisterns with water: or be dried & kept in fatts, for so ye may keep them from Rats and Mice: or dry them, and lay them on dry boards, & give thereof in their wash: or dry with some Beans or other grain when it is good cheap, & look what ye spend one way, ye may so profit another way.

Acorns kept.

For Sows that give suck, to eat of green herbs sometimes doth hurt them. Therefore in the morning before ye put them forth to feed, ye ought to give them somewhat to keep them in heart: for much eating of green grass in the Spring will cause them to be loose bellied, which will make them lean. And ye should not put hogs together, like other cattel, in their sties, but make them partitions therein: And so put the Sows asunder by themselves, & the young pigs by themselves. For when they are shut up all together, they tumble, toss, & lie out of order one upon another, and thereby often times make the Sows to cast their pigs.

Stying your Hogs.

Also those husbands that dwell by lordships or commons, it were good for them to have sties in the said lordships or commons, whereby they may at all times convenient feed such hogs as they shall think most meet. And there in like manner use to give them their meat, whereby they may within a while forget the coming to his house, and thereby he shall be the less troubled with them from time to time,

time. And it were good to make the walls or hedges of your styes of four foot high: for then your Hogs or Sows cannot get ober, nor yet others come to them: & so open at all times, that the keeper may look into the stye, & so take account of them at his pleasure, to see if he have all or not, and to see if any Sow do overlay, or lie on her pigs, then to remove her and see unto the pigs, so long as they be young and tender.

The Hog herd, or keeper, ought also in keeping them to be watchful, diligent, painful, & serviceable, with wisdom, and of a good nature: being very careful to nourish them from time to time, who ought also to have in mind the number of his Hogs, Sows, and Pigs, both old and young: and to have regard, and consider the profit & increase of every one from time to time. And likewise for to take heed of his Sows that they take no hurt with Dogs, or of erwayes, when they are ready to farrow; but to shut them up in the styes, that they may farrow there, for fear of casting her pigs. For in farrowing abroad, oftentimes and many wayes they perish, as with the Fox, or other like chances, which is for lack of looking to in time: which to a poor man is a great losse, if he consider all things. Also when a Sow doth farrow the keeper ought to see how many pigs she hath, (for some Sows will eat them so soon as she hath farrowed them:) and therefore to look well to them, and see what they be, and let them not suck of any other Sow, but of their own Dam. For if the pigs go out of the stye, and go among others, when she lieth down to give them suck, they will suck with others, which may thereby soon be bitten of the strange Sow: therefore the best way is to see each Sow shut up by themselves, that one hinder not another: for at length ye shall not know the pigs of the one Sow from the other, except ye mark them.

And among a Heard of many pigs, ye must have divers and sundry marks, to know which is which. For else it will trouble his wits to know one from another.

And among a great number it will be a hard and painful thing to do: therefore it will be good to sell them in going forth and coming in, as afoze is declared: or to sell them in entering in at a dooz, no bigger then one hog or sow may passe alone in going in, or in coming forth. And look that every sow hath with her, but her own pigs, and so many as she shall best continue with, to nourish well, which is not above eight pigs if she have any more, it were best to sell them being young, without ye perfectly see that the sow is well able to nourish them: for if she be not, ye shall soon perceive by decaying of the pigs; for they will soon wax lean, and every pig will but suck his dyene or teat.

To wean pigs, where Husbands have no styes. They wean their pigs in tying a woollen cloth liss about the upper snout, with a knot in the midst of the root of his mouth; so remaining under the pallate of his mouth, he cannot draw any stoz of milk, whereby the sow will soon wax dry.

Sows are good breeders.

And those sows which are breeders of pigs they should be rather chosen that suck of the hinder teats, and ought to be nourished often with dry and sod barley, for fear lest they being young should wax lean, or fall into some sickness. Also the Hogherds or Keepers ought often to cleanse their styes: for although these kind of beasts be foul and filthy feeders, yet they do desire to lie clean and dry in their styes: Thus much here for the nourishing and keeping of hogs.

Gelding of Hogs.

The manner of gelding hogs. There are two times in the year best to geld these kind of cattel in: one of them is in the Spring, & the other is in Autumn, after Michaelmas. The order how they do geld: one way is thus; they make two crosse slits or incisions on the midst of the stones, upon each stone one, & then put them forth and do anoint them with Tar. There is another manner of gelding, which is more gentle and more fair: but it is somewhat more dangerous, if it be not well done. *See herethelss*

bertheles I will therein shew somewhat, & not to leaue it; which is, to slit one stone on the top, and after ye haue drawn forth that, ye shall put in your fingers at the same slit, and with your lance slit the skin between the two stones, and by that slit ye shall crush forth the other stone, and so draw him forth gently as the other aforesaid, and then cleanse out the blood and so anoint him with fresh grease. And thus ye shall make but one incision or slit on the cod. But this way is best for other cattel: for of all sorts of cattel a Boar may best be gelded being old. Also against certain sicknesses they giue some remedies, as hereafter shall follow.

The signs to know best when that your hogs haue the Fever in Hogs. feber, is this: When they do hang down their heads, or bear it aside, or when they in feeding and pasturing, do suddenly run and suddenly rest again, and so fall on the ground as they were astounded and giddy. ye must therefore mark on which side he holdeth up, or hingereth the head on, so that ye let him bleed on the ear on the other side, and ye shall open the greatest vein vnder his taile two fingers from the rump or buttock: but first ye must chase a d. beat it with some wand or twig, to the end it may bleed the better. Then if the incision (after that ye haue drawn blood) do begin for to swell, you shall close it together, by binding about the taile the bark of a willow or elm. And after this, you shall keep him in the house the space of a day or two: and you shall giue him as much warm water as he will drink, mixed with a pound of barley-meal.

And also for those hogs which haue imposthumes or kernels under their throats, they ought to be let blood under the tongue, and when ye haue drawn blood sufficient, ye must rub and chase all his throat & groin with salt, and pure wheat-meal beaten together. Some do say there is not a better medicine, then for to make them take with a hot, six ounces of Garum, which ye shall lightly haue at the Apothecaries: then with a small flaxen cord binde

imposthumes  
under the  
throat.

thereunto with ferules of wood, & let them so hang about his neck as they may touch the impostume and kernels, and they shall do well again.

Against vomit.

Also when your hogs do cast oz vomit, it is a sign their stomacks are not well: therefore ye shal give them gratings oz shavings of Ivory, with a little dried beaten salt. And ye shall beat their beans small, & put them into the trough with their other meat before they go to the field, and they will then remain the more quiet there.

Of a leanness in Hogs.

Also there cometh sometimes sickness amongst those beasts, so that many will be sick together, insomuch that ye shall see them wax lean therewith, and they will then scarcely eat any thing at all: and if ye drive them unto the pasture oz field, they will reel & fall down by the way: And if it take them in Summer, they will lie and sleep in the Sun all day, & it taketh them as they had the lethargy,

Lethargy in Hogs.

which is a sleepe & forgetful disease. If this disease then happen, they shut up all their hogs together in one house & let them there remain a day and a night without meat oz drink. On the next day after, to those that will drink, they give water, in which is stamped the roots of wild Cucumbers. And so many as have drunk thereof will begin to vomit, and by so vomiting, they are purged clean thereof, & when they have cast & cleansed all the choler & filth within their stomacks, then ye may give to them pease, fitches, oz beans, mixt with salt water, oz to cast of bay salt amongst it, and then they do make them for to drink luke-warm water. And as it is very evil and pernicious for all beasts (in Summer) to be dzy, so it is most chiefe in hogs. Yet I would not have ye should give your Hogs water twice aday, as ye do other cattel, as Goats, Sheep, & others: but if you can in the canticular dayes, let them lye nigh some river, ponds, oz low marshes. For their heat is then so great, they cannot suffice them to drink water only, but they must also turn and trol therein, specially in mire and dirty water, the which doth greatly refresh and cool them, specially those which have fat and great

To vomit.

great bellies. And herein, nature doth shew them what is good for them.

But if the situation of the place will not suffer and permit, ye must then give them largely drink from y<sup>e</sup> well, or in such a like place, or else to put plenty of water into their troughs. For if they have not then all sufficient thereof to drink they will have the disease of the lights which is to be purlie & prick. But this disease is easie to be remedied by putting in their ears the juice of Poufelle, so called in French, in Latin Coniligo, the which I take to be the herb called Light-wort or Camphere.

Likewise your Hogs oftentimes will have the pain of <sup>Milt pained.</sup> the milt, which doth oft trouble them: and then they will go aside, and crooked with their bodies, which cometh by a great draught (as some do judge) but most by fruit, for when fruits do fall from the trees, & lie upon the ground untaken up, these beasts are so insatiable in following the sweetness thereof, that thereby they ingender this disease in the spleen: the which ye shall remedy, by making them troughs to feed out of, of wood in Latin called Tamarix, which as I think is called in the English quick Beam-wood: and ye shall therein use to give them their meat, & drink, and that wood will remedy it: for out of that wood will come a water or moisture, which will heal the inflammation of the disease. Sometime there cometh inflammation in the milt, so that it breeds a pestilence among hogs, which comes by unwholsome times. And also the rather by their filthy bodies and feeding, or else by some infection through evil nourishment: therefore it will be good sometimes to keep them fasting all night in some dark place, to consume the superfluous humours in them, which they do increase by their ravening and greediness. Whereof I will speak hereafter.

Now as touching the unnaturall kind of some of the Sows unnatural-  
sows, there be some kinds which are so ravening, that they will  
pass not to devour their own pigs, which comes clean a-  
gainst the nature of most cattel: & those are not to be suf-  
fered.

tered to live, for they be alwaies dangerous to keep. Sows may indure least hanger, and some of them though they have sufficient meat yet they wil devour their young pigs, not only their own, but likewise others. Therefore some think it not good to nourish any Hog or Sow with y<sup>e</sup> garbidge & inwards of beasts, as they do in many places feed them with guts and inwards of beasts, as in Butchers houses and such like: no yet a man should not make any estimation of that Hog, or Sow, that is desirous to feed on carrion or flesh.

For the usuall custome thereof will make them man-kind, and by eating of dead carrion & other flesh, will at the length make them fall to catching of quick cattel, and from thence to fall unto living creatures: as I have heard credible persons say, that sows have eaten young children without the doozes, as in barns being left alone. Some out of their cradles, no body being in the house. Therefore let every husbandman beware of the keeping of any such ravening kind of beast, for they are very tender of nose, & will smell far off.

A Hog is very hurtfull after two or three years old, therefore kill him, & if he fall once to eating flesh which is dead, they will soon fall to other alive; that whatsoever they once lay hold on, be it capon, chicken, duck, lamb, or pig, ye shall rather kill them then make them to leabe, or to let it go. And this shall be sufficient in this place for such ravening cattel.

To feed a Hog  
fat.

A way how to feed a hog fat in short time is, ye shall take him up, & put him in the sty, and give him neither meat nor drink the space of three daies & three nights, and then give him continually, and let him be changed once or twice a week: & he shall be so greedy after his great hunger that he will be alwaies hungry in eating, so that he will be fat in short time.

Measeld-hogs  
to help.

An approved way to help your measeld hog or boar is, ye shall put him up in y<sup>e</sup> sty, & keep him there three daies & three nights without meat or water, or any other thing. When

Then take fife oz six Apples, & in the tops make a hole & pick out the cores, & fill each Apple in those holes with the powder of Wymstone very finely beaten, & stop the said holes with pieces of Apples, & cast them unto the meafeld Hog, first one oz two, & so the rest, & being hungry, he will eat them all, & then let him so remain two oz three hours after, & then give him a little meat, & no moze till the next morning, & the next morning, serbe him so again, & give him fife oz six Apples, as aforesaid. Thus use your Hog the space of fife oz six dayes, and ye shall see him wax as lean as euer he was befoze. Also they use for the same, to take the Lees of Hope, mixt with some strong Lee of a Buck, and give that, and use them as the other aforesaid, and give him no meat of an hour oz two after. And this (as some do say) is counted very good for to help the aforesaid disease.

How to keep and save your Hogs from being Meafeld, is this: We shall use in the Summer, especially in the time of the canicular daies, oz daies of heat, which is from the middle of July, to the middle of August, oz thereabouts, to give them (amongst their wash oz other meat) chopped cold herbs, as of lettuce, endive succory, violet-leaves, of dandelion oz sowthistle, oz sumitoy, & such like, which are all cold herbs, and will keep them cool: oz to chop amongst their meat, the leaves of diuile, which is very cold in operation. Therefore use thereof the lesse potion amongst their meat. All these herbs aforesaid are very good to keep them cool. For the cause of Meafeld in a Hog cometh through the great & vehement heat of his blood lying in boyle-dung, & flegm together mixt with the blood through heat dried in his body, and so lieth in the outward part of his body in kernels. And first they will appear in the liber through the heat of the stomack, at the roots of his tongue & in his throat, that when he doth cry, he will rattle in his voyce, & cry hoarse. By this ye shall first perceibe his infection: & if ye do take forth his tongue, ye shall perceibe the kernels there under, and by this order ye may

To save them  
from Meafeld.

Cause of Meafeld.

Mustard is ill  
for Hogs.

perceibe any meafeld Hog. Also some fay, if ye put mu-  
ftard amongft your washings & giue that unto your hogs,  
it will (to use much thereof) caufe them to be meafled at  
the length, or fuch like, which both much eat their blood.  
Also to keep them from being meafled, ye may use to put  
among their wash, of mens urine, & mire with their wash  
also of red-oker, called red earth beaten small to powder:  
this will likewise keep them from being meafled: Sope  
water, & fith water, is ill.

Fatting a Hog.

Whensoever ye do intend to fat any Hog, to giue him  
ozy meat is counted chiefest, & to giue him to drink Beer  
or Ale, & Water; & ye must not let him go forth of the  
fye, not so much as to see forth thereof, but to open the  
fye dore, & to make it clean: for a hog when he may see  
forth, he will have such a desire to go abroad, that he will  
be no care to feed. There is not so much care to be had  
in them, as in other cattel, yet to keep them clean, for they  
looe to have it. And so to be fed & not remoued or chang-  
ed in any other place, or by any other means troubled: yet  
sometimes they are (in the fye) a little troubled with  
mice, in running upon their backs, & so disquiet them in  
the fye: which ye may foun help, by setting of traps to  
take them alwayes when they come. Thus ye may feed  
them to be an inch and half thick of fat, in very small  
time.

Mice in the  
fye.

Sick Hogs by  
ill herbs eat-  
ing

If your hogs have eaten any evil herbs, as of henbane  
or hemlock: to remedy the same, ye shall giue them to  
drink the fye of Cucumbers made warm the which br-  
ing drunk, will caufe them to vomit, & thereby they will  
cleanse their stomachs & so recover health again. Some  
do use to giue him a quantity, & put thereof into his no-  
strils, or in ore of his ears. or to giue him water & hony  
mired together, with a good quantity, & that will caufe  
him also to vomit: For if it can make them vomit,  
they will soon recover again. For by eating either of  
Henbane or Hemlock, they are so cold in operation, that  
they will caufe the hog to lie as though he were dead for

a time for they are very nigh unto a cold venom. And the camelion thistle will kill them, to eat thereof. The herb called goose foot will also kill Hogs.

Also if any of your Hogs have the lask, or runneth out, <sup>Lask to stop.</sup> to heal the same, ye shall give them of dried beans beaten small, & them mixt with bzoorn. Some do take & mix therewith the powder of red-earth, or the powder of dried knot-grass, or the powder of the huls of Acorns, or acorn-cups, & mix any of these aforesaid, with these dried beans & let them eat thereof dried, & give him no drink of an hour after, & he shall do well again.

These herbs are good & wholesome for hogs, Daffadill <sup>Herbs good for</sup> roots, which are good to cleanse the lights of hogs: & knot, <sup>Hogs.</sup> grass, the which a hog loves marvellous well, & it binds the belly, & causeth urine, & the ioyce thereof put into his eare, will help the pain of the head. These herbs aforesaid mentioned, are wholesome for Hogs.

The garget is an evil grief, & many die thereof, which <sup>The Garget in</sup> is a swelling & inflammation in the throat, behind the jaws <sup>a Hog.</sup> of a Hog. I can learn no other remedy but this: They do use to slit it in the midst, as long as the inflammation or soze is, & then clea up the skin on both sides the slits, so far as the soze is, & then all to rub it with salt within, & lay Tar without, & so he recovereth. Some rub it with nettles & salt. Some with planten, & burnt allum mixt. Other with the ioyce of Curcospit, & salt, & stubwort mixt & rub it therewith.

There is a sickness in summer amongst hogs which ye <sup>Sick Hogs to</sup> shall soonest know, by plucking of a handfull of his bristles <sup>know.</sup> on his back, & ye shall pluck them against the hair. If (when ye have pluckt them) they be clean & white at the root, then he is well & sound: but if they seem at the root bloodie or spottie, it is to be noted he is not then well within his body.

Likewise hogs are subject oft to the disease of the milk, & <sup>Disease of the</sup> likewise unto the pestilence: which encreaseth by eating <sup>Milk.</sup> of unwholsome meats and drinks, and by unwholsome

times, for their bodies are apt to receive ill aires, & soon corrupt & most of all by their filthy feeding. They are also subject unto fevers & agues, for the which thing they let them blood on the tail. And for the catar or inflammation in y<sup>e</sup> neck, growing with certain kernels, which is thought to be a kind of a leapy or measles, for the which they let them blood under the tongue: if that will not help, then ye must slit it, & use it as ye do for the garget, which is aforesaid.

Catar in Hogs.

Pestilent fevers.

Hogs will have the catar or rheum; it will make their eyes to waite, & a moisture to ascend up into their heads, & it cometh to them commonly by eating of fruit when they fall off from the trees, or when there is great store thereof, & by eating of rotten fruit, which breedeth a corrupt matter nigh unto the plague. And likewise it doth increase catars & inflammations in the body. The remedy is: they do use to give them of old capers in their wash, or other meat, & they use also to put amongst their meat of cole-worts both red & white. And likewise they put of Tamarix, which I take to be the quick Beam-tree, or the herb called Aramantus, which some do call flowers of labe: And for the same to take of Marsh mallows, and mix them among their meat, or for to take libertwort boiled in honied water, and given. All the other aforesaid are very good to stay the rheum or catar.

Hogs will have also a disease in the gall, which is called the flowing of the gall, & is when the gall is so full of choler, that it flows into all parts of the body. And besides, will cause a swelling under the jaws of the swine. The remedy is, to stamp the inner bark of Elder, & strain it with Ale or Beer, & give it warm. Also some take a handfull of gal-wort, stamp & strain it, & give it with honied water. And for the swelling, they do rub & chafe it with beaten salt, & pure wheat-meal mixt together. And some do first cut the skin as aforesaid is mentioned, in cleaving it on both sides, & then rub it all over on both sides with salt, & so let it go, and it will heal again.

Another

Another way to help any hog, if he be not far gone with the meafel: to recover him again, ye shall take your hog & put him in the sty, for a day & a night without any meat or drink. Then take a quart of Ale or old piss, or mens Measels to  
urine, that hath been kept long, & therein put a good hand help.  
full of red earth or oker, made in fine powder, with a quarter of a pound of black sope: then stir & mix it with the piss all well together, & then set it unto the hog: if he make daintie to drink thereof, ye shall put then thereto a quantity of whay; if he will not yet take it, then put in more whay, for so he will take it sooner: if not, force him to take it, & when he hath drunk it all, let him so rest two or three hours after, & then give him some other meat, not much: and so let him rest without any more meat untill the next morning, & then use him so again, & let him have so every morning for a weeks space or more, as ye shall have cause therein, & ye shall see experience good.

How best to feed a Boze in the stall. Some do use to give him of beans or pease & sometimes for change, to give him dry barley, with such like. To feed a Bore.

But if ye will have that your brawn shall see well, & be fair, white & tender, ye shall give him no other thing but fair bzan & whay mixt together somewhat thick, which will both feed your Boze very well, & keep him cool also from being meafled.

How best to ring your hogs in time convenient: & be- Ringing of a  
cause hogs are commonly ravening for their meat, more Hog.  
then other cattel, it is meet therefore to have them ringed, or else they will do much hurt in digging and turning up corn fields, spoiling of meadows, defacing of commons, moping in parks, turning up closes, disordering orchards and gardens, and destroying all fine pasture for all other cattel. And in the most places, for lack of good order & government, one neighbour being negligent and careless spoiles three or four of his neighbours grounds with his hogs, more in a day then can be repaired again in half a year: and the cause is chiefly for lack of ringing in time.

Proverb.

convenient, that they spoyle and turn up much fair commons & pasture grounds, in seeking for worms and roots, having grass and feeding enough beside. One hog (as some do say) will turn up & spoyle as much pasture ground in a day: as will pasture ten beasts ten daies, which is a great loss among pooer men, that have the most feeding for their cattel on the commons, to have so much pasture ground destroyed. Wherefore the common saying is, The hog is never good but when he is in the dish.

Wherefore me thinks it shall not be here unmeet to speak something more of y<sup>e</sup> ringing of them: wherein some men do use to peg them with the pegs of holly, or such like hard wood and horn, but this kind of pegging will not long endure, for they will soon break or wear asunder. And some do ring them with red wier, because they will not stand to any further cost, and that is also soon worn asunder, for red wier is too soft. Others do put rings of iron: some with horn nailes, or strong white wier, in the groin of their mouts, and those are counted much better to indure, and yet for all these rings they will break the ground, if it be any whit soft: therefore it griebeth them smally, as it should seem.

And some other do slit their groin under, but when that is grown whole again, they will also dig notwithstanding, for all these waies do smally prebaile, if they be not looked to from day to day. To cut the gristle asunder is better.

Some do use (in the spring) to ring, & also yoke their hogs at such time, as when they may feed, or have bit of grass, and so let them remain all the Summer, for tearing of hedges, which is thought not unmeet for the safeguard of Corn. Some others do use to ring them at Michaelmas and so let them remain (if it be a year of mault) unto November, December, or killing time, but they do fear hanging in hedges: they do unyoke them soon after Michaelmas. They do also in some places of Germany (as I have seen) ring them from y<sup>e</sup> Spring all y<sup>e</sup> Summer to December or killing time, so that all y<sup>e</sup> Summer long, ye

Hall

shall see no medow ground broken or digged with hogs, except some rings break or wear aunder: ye may there go an hundred miles compa's ere ye shall see so much ground digged and turned up with hogs, as you shall do here in one Common or Parish. & yet their hogs are as fat and fair as ours, & they have no other food but grass, roots, and herbs, in the fallow fields. And I was there taught to ring a hog, that he should never lightly dig, or break any medow ground, though it be light and soft: which is, ye shall take a good big white wyer, and stiffe withal being two or three inches long or more, according to the bigness of the hogs snout, and make it sharp at both ends, and bow it skayle-wise with two corners nigh an inch wide, then make two holes through his snout of the same bigness, and put it through the gristle of his snout, hard unto the bent of the skayle then with a pair of plyers bow and turn the points of the wyer into the holes of his nostrils, like a stams horn. So that whensoever he goeth offer to dig and turn up any thing, the sharp ends of the wyer in turning, will prick him alwayes in the tender holes of his nostrils, and so they shall never dig but still graze on the ground continually from time to time, and shall never offer to dig in any kind of ground, but seek still to graze, and yet to be at all times as fair as ours here in England, with now and then giving them some meat at home in their houses or styes, & somewhat at putting forth in the morning, & also at coming home at night. Thus ye may keep your common Pasturing grounds alwayes whole, untrodded, or turned up, & your hogs to be in as good liking, with a little more pain & charge, as the other unringed. This kind of ringing hogs shall be set in a figure here under, for the more perfect & further knowledge thereof. And this shall be sufficient for the ringing of Hogs in this sort. Also to ring hogs that they dig not, some put a red past wyer under the skin of his snout, an inch from the graine, & an inch broad, then wreath it altogether on the midst of his snout, & it is done. Some use

to cut asunder the sinews on both sides his snout an inch from the groove: & when he would dig, the groove of his nose will fall down.

The Figure of Ringing like the Rams  
Horn.



Here followeth a very good way how to feed  
a Hog for lard.

To feed a Hog  
for lard.

**F**irst ye shall provide planks or thick boards for him to lie on, or else to lie on paving stones or pavement: & ye shall feed him with Barley & Pease, & no Beans & gibe him no other water but the tappings & washings of Hogs' heads, & sometimes ye shall change his meat & gibe him sod Barley, & so change his meat often: & when you see he beginneth to glut, which will be within ten dayes, then, to change his diet, gite him a handfull of crabs, & use him so once in ten dayes. But if ye think it will be a loss or spoyle of meat to gibe him much, ye may gibe him a smaller vessel & a little at once. If you can make him drunk now & then, that will make him to be a notable fat hog within thre months feeding. But after one month some do feed him with Pease, or dough made of Barley-meale, & feed him therewith the space of five or six weeks & nothing else, without any drinke or other moisture, which is counted the chiefest way of feeding. Thus much for the feeding of him.

How

How to kil him is thus: Ye shall stick him and scald him as ye do another hog, & then cut off his head and his feet, and open him in the back, in making a narrow chine: then open him and take forth his inwards, & then with a cloth do away clean all the blood within, & take forth the ribs as ye do a balrib, & cut off the gammons, & salt the fillets in a close vessel, then close & cover it, that no air enter: & in nine daies after ye may not touch or open it: then cut all the rest in pieces as ye shall think best, & salt them in a barrel with fair and dry white salt. When when ye shall need to take forth any piece to occupy or sel, put not the rest ye take forth into the barrel again, for that will fester and hurt the rest: Wherefore take forth no moze then you occupy: & that piece you take forth to occupy wil serbe and endure well thre w<sup>ks</sup> being lapt and covered, with dry salt and ye may keep this lard so in a barrel sweet & good, fife or six years to occupy.

Also the hoggerds say, to help a measeled hog, geve him Meas<sup>eld to</sup> dried pease and beans in the sty, and no drink but mens hel<sup>p</sup>. urine, & using this it will make him clean.

Also hogs will cobet to eat of mens dung, pigeons dung, ill for measeled, and hens or poultry dung, which also is ill for hogs, and will increase a measel among them, & likewise other diseases, and to lye in horse dung is ill for them.

For the staggers in a hog, geve him of the herb called Staggers, Rase-wort, or galwort in milk, & he shall amend.

Pigs that are farrowed with teeth, the males of them Aristot<sup>es say</sup> passing thre years do not well ingender. A hog dieth & ings. pineth away if he lose one eye. A hog will live 16 or 20 years. Hogs have many sicknesses in their heads, & sides, and being sick, they will commonly lye in dirty puddles, and commonly they will lie moze on the right side then on the left. If ye keep them without meat thre daies at the first, they will be fat within forty daies. They love each other, & know each others voice: and if one cry, they wil all cry, and will one help another: they graunt sleeping & waking, if they be fit. And they sleep faster in May, then at

other times: and that cometh of mourning or stopping of the brains in that time, more then in other times. They resolbe in summer many humors, in wasting it by too much heat. And hogs change not their teeth, neither male nor female. A Boar will gender within the first year, or being of eight months old, and the sow at a year old. But those pigs will be weak and feeble: and the first pigs of a sow will be slender of body: and if she be fat, her milk will be more scarce. The Winter pigs are better then Summer pigs: & those of young sows worse then those of old sows. A lusty & fat boar may engender many times, both in the day & the night, but the best time is in the morning. When a sow farroweth she gives to her first pig her foremost teat. And a sow going to the boar again, she will not suffer him to cover her, untill her ears hang downward. To make them go to him or take the boar, it shall be good to give them barley, which will make them to take the boar, and to give them sad barley is the better for her.

Winter pigs.

Diseases in hogs.

Hogs commonly have three evils, one is Brancos. The other is Impostumes in their ears, and Fowl's. And the third is in the feet: and the flesh about those places is most corrupt, and that corruption passeth by some, and some into the flesh neer unto it, and so to his lungs, and stoppeth them and then the hog will die. This evil increaseth suddenly: And therefore hog-herds do cut away the place first infected, which otherwise will not be helped or healed by cutting.

Ach in their heads.

They have also another sickness, which is great ache & heaviness in their heads, & thereby they commonly die. Another sickness they have, which is the flux of the belly, (which I have partly shewed before) & is a disease hard to remedy: for often it killeth them within three daies. Great swine do delight to eat berries as sloes, & black-berries, which doth them good. They also delight to bathe them in warm waters. They are commonly let blood to help the on the vein under the tongue, & they are fattened with divers kinds of meats, but some do make them swell. Some in-

gender

gender flesh, & some grease & fatness, & hogs delight in acorns, which makes them to have good flesh. If a sow being with pig eat much thereof, it maketh her cast her pigs.

For dizziness in their head, chop mouslear, and nightshade, & put it amongst their wash, & they shall mend.

To put and chop of cold herbs all the Summer into their wash, and give it them amongst their meat, as Lettuce, Endive, Succory, Dandelion, Cinkfoyle, Sow-thistle, and such like: Elm leaves in the spring are good to give unto hogs, when there is scant of grasse, or other meat: But to give them much thereof, may bring them into a flux. Cold herbs in Summer.  
Elm leaves for hogs.

Wherefore to use all their meats discreetly, shall be best, and so shall ye keep them long in health. Helion reciteth in History, that hogs & wild Boars eating of Henbane, will suddenly fall into a sound and are in danger to die: if incontinent they be not washed all over with water, and to drink water also, whereupon they will seek water, and to recover again. Against which, wormwood is good to give them, with wine or strong ale. Henbane.

To feed or fat hogs (as some Husbands say) with such things which will alter their grease, as to feed them with barley it will fat and soon puffe them up, but their grease will be soft and wasteful. To feed hogs also with acorns, or beech mast; oates, & fetches, do the like and all other grain, except beans and pease, which will make them to have a hard and fast-hard grease, to be fed only therewith. Hogs grease.

Another proved way to help a mealed boar or hog, is, ye shall first search them before ye put them up to be fed; & then see, if they be not clean take & warm a pint or more of cow milk, and mix therewith so much gray sope as a great tennis ball, and stir it then well altogether, till it be all alike: And being milk warm, give it your Boar or hog with a horn, and make him of force to take it, in striking it down his throat till he have received all, then chase and stir him an hours space after, for fear of casting it up again; use him thus three or four daies or more, until ye

shall see him clean, and then ye may put him up to fat, and he shall do well.

To scowre  
hogs.

And also to make a hog to scowre, they do use to give him of smoaked barley in the straw, as it is also shewed for the methering of a Cow to help.

Also if your hogs be lowse, which will come unto them through poverty, & lack of good keeping in Winter, and so long as they be lowse they will not prosper: the remedy is, ye shall take of quick-silver, & kill it with sallet oyl and fasting-spittle, then mix therewith of fresh grease, or neats-foot oyl, & so anoint them all over. Some melt sope and tar together, with the powder of Stabel-acre, & therewith anoint them: And some other do take but quick silver and sope mixt well together, and so anoint therewith: for lice will soon make them lean.

Moreover, if a hog chance to be bitten of dogs in any part of his body or legs, and therefore do swell and is like to come from an impostume: to avoid the danger thereof, ye shall all to wash the wound betimes with scale, salt, and nettles bruised, or vinegar and mallows boyled together, with some hogs-grease put thereto, and therewithal to bathe the soze: then anoint it with tar and fresh grease mixed well together, and he shall do well: use this as ye shall see cause.

A bath for Swine that have the  
Swine pox.

**T**he swine pox in hogs is in all a soze, for it will run abroad, and is a scab very grievous. They come to hogs sometimes by poverty, sometimes by lice in the skin, and when hogs have them, they will never prosper so long as they be troubled with them. And one will infect another of them. The remedies: some do use to give them the powder of brimstone with scale. A bath to wash them is this: Take parrow, planten, primrose-leaves, hyar-leaves, old oken-leaves of a year, of water betsony, of each two handfule:

handfuls : boyl them in two gallons of running water, till they are tender : and then all to wash your hogs or pigs therewith, and use this once or moze, and it will dry them up; for it is but a corrupt water, being between the flesh and the skin, and so ozaws to a scab.

## How to Spay a Sow.

**Y**e shall first lay her upon some sozm or board, then bind her mouth close with some cord : then lay her on her right side, so that her left side be upward, & then take away your launcet, and strip away the hair two inches long, thzee fingers from the hinder leg, & likewise from the edge of her flank : then with the point of your launcet cut aslope her belly through the skin two inches long and a half so that you may put in your forefinger towards her back, and there you shall feel two kernels as big as Acorns on both sides the birth, and with the top of your finger, hawk or else draw the one to the slit; then cut the string with your knife, & take forth the other likewise. If then ye cannot easily find them, ye shall with your finger draw softly forth with some small tralles, & so ye shall find them, and then cut them off, and put in the tralles with your finger again; then strike away the blood, and stitch up the slit again with a strong thred, but beware her guts : and then anoint with tar, and let her go.

And they do use to geld young boars, holding them between their knees, their rump upward, and resting upon their forefeet, and then put out the right stone, and cut it cross eber the stone in the midst, and so push it forth and cut off the string at the right end : and do likewise with the left stone, and then anoint them with tar thereon, and let them go, and they shall do well.

The manner of spaying of Colts, Sheep, and Sows ;  
whereof I will briefly speak somewhat  
more.

**Y**e shall understand, that Mare-colts are commonly spaid within nine daies after they are foaled : if they be older, it is not so good ; for they say in spaying it will be the harder to reach with your finger, to do that thing well : for in taking forth the birth, if it perish, the colt will die soon after.

Also the spaying of an Ewe is dangerous, if ye hurt the bag of birth, or perish any part of her tallow, she is like to die soon after.

The spaying of a Sow is not so dangerous as the other, but may easily be done, in taking good heed. Also in the spaying of these cattel, when ye have cut the flank toward the hinder ribs two fingers long slope-wise ye shall put a scale with your fore finger on both sides of the bag or birth certain knots like kernels, or clusters like grapes which do cleave to both the sides of the bag or birth under the reins or ramp, which ye shall touch with your fore finger, and lay them down softly to the wound, & so pluck them out, & cut them off, & cast them away, for it is but a small string they hang by.

Thus shall ye do in like manner to the other side of the bag or birth, when they be out ; cut off the string, & it is done : if ye perish the bag or birth, she will soon die after, what beast soever it be. Ye shall note also in the stitching up the wound, if ye stitch the guts withal, she will soon die after (as I have seen) except she be soon ripped & stitched again : which is done by rash spayers of beasts, in stitching the guts & the skin together, and so the beasts will pine away and die within a few daies after. Thus much here I have seen and learned for the spaying of these cattel.

Also

Also the nature and ordering of Hogs.

**A** Sow will have pigs at a year old: & she will continue good six years, & when she is with pig, ye shall put the boar from her for he will hurt the pigs in her belly, and make her to cast them. The boar will bryn at six months old, or at eight months, & after three or four years ye may geld him. A sow should not bryn up above six or eight pigs: to bryn up more will make her soon fail. A Sow great with pig ought to have a sty by her self. If a sow do eat her pigs; it is no wonder for swine can least away with hunger, for they are hot beasts. A Sow should not go abroad in nine or ten daies after her farrowing: & wrinkled tails of hogs is a sign of sound hogs. Also after ye cut or geld, gibe them no drink, & but a little meat. In spaying, look that the skin be sound, just, and close up, and then anoint it with a little fresh grease, and fresh butter. Note also, if ye pluck bristles on the back of a hog, if there be blood in the ends thereof, you may undoubtedly think he is not then in health.

If a hog be sick of a fever, he will hang his head on the one side, and suddenly stay, and be giddy & fall: mark on which side he holds his head, then cut his contrary ear, & let him bleed. Likewise two inches from the rump, let him bleed under the tail, but first with a small wand beat his tail, and then he will bleed the better. Which blood ye shall stop with the bark of willow bound about it, so keep him in the sty a day or two after, & gibe him warm water mixed with barley flower. When a hog is not wel, gibe him pol pody, or carkern roots boyled in beer or ale, for that will purge him of flgm and some choler, which commonly swine are most troubled withall. Against sickness of the lungs, put the root of fetherwoz through their ears, and it will help them against the measles. Some husbandmen do say, if ye nail plates of lead in the bottoms within their troughs, it will preserve and keep them from measles.

measels. Also the common medicine is allum, bzimstone, red oaker, & Wyberries, of each alike and put thereto a handfull of harefoot, beaten altogether with some madder, and put all into a bag, & cast it into their water or wash which they drink & so renew it twice a year.

Moreover, some husbands hold opinion that the measles to hogs comes in not only through the heat in Summer, but chiefly by poverty in Winter: also they say, if a clean boar do bring a meased sow, he shall become meased; so likewise a clean sow being byind with a meased boar, she shall likewise become meased, & all those pigs. The best time to kill a meased boar or hog, is after the change of the Moon: for then the kernels will be the smallest.

Also they do feed hogs in some part of this Realm very fat, only with fig-dust or Dats, which will feed them in short space: some do mix it with warm water, and some with whey, and some do seeth it with water, and make it thick like grout: and in other places husbands do fat their hogs, where scant of feeding is, with pease; and they reserve in leasing their corn after harvest, all the chaffe, darnell, and cockell; which they seeth in water and make it thick, & so feed them therewith. Thus ye may make in fourteen daies good Bacon, of two inches and more thick of fat.

Also there is to be noted (as some good husbands say) if ye do fat your hogs in a closure abroad without housing, it will be long ere they wax fat: for when a rain doth come it doth greatly annoy them, and hinder their fattening, for if a hog doth not ly drie & warm, and also quiet, he will not be fat in a long season.

Therefore when ye intend to fat hogs, put not past two or three together in the sty, for when ye put many together, it will hinder their fattening. Also to keep them as dark in the sty as ye can, for when a hog seeth abroad, he will desire to seek roots, which will also hinder his feeding. Thus much here for the feeding, and ordering, or fattening of hogs in the sty.

A good way to fat Hogs after the manner  
of Dutchland.

**Y**e shall put your hogs into the house, and keep them hungry at the first. Then take the roots of turneps, & boyl them in whey if ye can; if not, in water: and boyl sod barley among them. And when your hogs are used to them, they will eat them as fast as other meat: and will be as soon fat with them, as with any other grain.

To help the garget in a Hog.

**T**he Garget is a disease common among hogs, & it cometh of rankness of blood. The remedy is as aforesaid: but some do counsel to slit him two inches long on both sides of the jaws, and upon the skin a little on both sides the cuts, & all to rub it with bay salt within under the skin, and he shall do well again.

Some husbands to save hogs from the Garget, use to let them blood at Michaelmas, and in April, on the vein under the upper lip.

To preserve Hogs, and save them from  
being measeled.

**Y**e shall mix with their wash (in the month of June) chamber-lye, and so give thereof unto your hogs, & use it now & then, once or twice a week, and it will preserve them from being measeled.

If a Hog be bitten with a mad Dog.

**Y**e shall take of strong Chamberlie, & mix it with bay salt and soot, & put therein an addle egge or two, then beat them altogether, & make it boyl a little, then rub the place that is bit, as hot as he may well suffer for scalding, with a stick and a clout tyed to the end thereof. Use this twice or thrice, and he shall do well.

And this will help likewise for other beasts that are bit with any mad dogs.

## The whole-footed Hogs.

**T**here are a kind of hogs in divers places which have whole claws, not cloven as other hogs be. Which kind is commonly large of body, and greater than other hogs: and the Husbandmen say, they are moze fruitful than the hogs with cloven feet, & will not easily be mealeled. Wherefoze they are in many places much desired rather than the other sort: There is of them about Windsor.

## Brimming of Sows.

**I**t is not good for any Boar to cover a Sow in the night time, as in the day; for they will not be so large pigs, as those which are gotten in the day.

## The cause of some rammish Pigs.

**Y**e shall note, if that ye stall a Boar in any sty, if ye put young pigs into the same sty soon after, all those pigs will tast rammish like to a boar-pig to be eaten.

## To kill Maggots.

**I**f Maggots breed in the ear of a hog or other beast, or in any hollow place under the skin, ye shall take the iuyce of hemlock, & pour it into the hole, and they will die, or aboid: & a rotten egge mixed with the said iuyce, will do the like, or the egge alone beaten & poured in, or ye shall take but oyl & put in that place, and all the Maggots will there die, or else aboid incontinent, if they live. Well proved.

## The stagger, or staring disease.

**H**ogs wil have a disease called the stagger; he wil reel & fall with his hinder legs, and will put his head some times ober his trough in eating his meat: if he have not soon help, he will die thereof. The remedy: we shall see a bare knob in the roof of his mouth, cut it & let it bleed: then take the powder of loam, and salt, and rub it therewith, then gibe him a little piss, and he wil amend.

To

To shew some order for  
the taking of Moules.



Asomuch as I have heretofore shewed the order and government of hogs, I will not here let passe, but somewhat I will shew of the taking of Moules, which is a beast that annoyeth the grounds of husbandmen very much; and having the property to dig and cast within the ground as the other hogs on the ground, and thereby may be called a kind of hogs, which may be eaten also: These kind be so hurtfull to grounds, that they will in short space deface and spoile any fair meddow or other ground, if they be let alone, in casting up hils both in meads and all pasture grounds. And likewise in your Corn fields in raising the arable and sowed grounds, that your corn can take no root in those places, and in seeding also on the said roots of corn, and making therewith their nests in the spring time as I have seen. There is no ground void, but they will soon find it out, although it be compassed with water, for they will swim as well as other hogs over the water; and come into gardens, orchards & houses. And because that husbands with many other that have the government of such grounds do not well know the order and taking of them whereby many are hurt in their grounds, and greatly hindered by them in lacking the knowledge thereof how to take them: Therefore I have here taken upon me to shew somewhat of the order and taking of them, so far as I have known & understood by others, as shall appear in their places.

To take Moules casting in Plains.

**V**V Hereas Moules do cast commonly in Plains, Meads, & such like: if ye should take them in trenches, ye should spil much ground by breaking the upper part thereof. Wherefore as some say, the better way is, where ye see them cast, go thereunto lightly and very softly, but go not on the windy side betwixen them & the wind: for they will soon hear & hear if ye stamp on the ground: in coming softly, be ready with your moule staffe to strike at the first or second putting up of the earth, & strike it with your fine down right, & mark which way the earth falls most: if she casts towards you, then strike somewhat over; if she cast up toward your right hand then strike somewhat on the left, & so on the other contrary to her casting up. And by this means ye shall be alwaies the moze likely to strike her. In plain ground strike down right & when ye have so stricken down with the fines of your staffe, ye shall so let them remain in y<sup>e</sup> earth. Then pluck out the tongue in the staffe that holds the grains, & then take of your staffe, & with the spittle or flat end thereof, dig round about your grains unto the ends thereof, and there ye shall see if ye have stricken her or not: but if ye have mist her, leaue the hole open, & go a little aside, and possibly she will come again to stop the said hole, & then strike at her again, for a Moule lothes not greatly the air. Or else as soon as ye have stricken, & mist her, if her hole go downward, ye shall powre into the hole a gallon of water by & by, & thereby sometimes she wil come out against the water for fear of drowning, & so ye may take them alive or kill them. By this means ye may take many the sooner, & save your grounds from spoyling in taking a little pains in watching the time of their going forth in the morning to seed, & also at other times coming home when they have sed.

How

How to take Moules after the plough.

**T**O take Moules after the plough, some husbandmen do teach us thus: we must prepare a sled or dray, with a great vessel full of water thereon, & have it at your lands ends where ye plough, and then let one go eber after the plough; & where ye see any Moule holes newly cast being opened with a plough ye shall pounce therein your pitchers of water, & by & by ye shall see the Moule (if she cannot lie) come out against the water, and so ye may then kil them. And thus ye may also destroy many Moules in your arable lands, which being let alone will do you much harm, both in eating the roots & stalks of your tender corn, & to make their nests therewith in the spring time. Also when as the Moules do cast in your corn lands, in the spring time, or at other times, the best way is then to make your trenches, and so take them, as after shall be shewed more plainly.

How to take Moules that run shallow  
in the ground.

**T**O take them when they run shallow, is commonly in the spring time, & at other times of the year after a rain, when the ground is soft, but in the spring time specially, as in March & April, when the Moules will run most abode, and dig very shallow in the ground: and will work so long a space, by banks sides, and in the roots of Carts: & where ye shall see any such newly wrought, ye shall but tread it down all along softly, & then watch at her accustomed hours when she cometh abroad, & ye shall see her work & stir up the earth in the said trench. Thus he may go from trench to trench. They will commonly work early in the morning, and in the spring between six of the clock and eight, and at eleven; and in the af-

ter noon about thre or four, and sometimes at seven of the clock.

Then must ye watch diligently and hearken, and ye shall either hear her work in the ground, or else ye shall see her move the earth in the trench where she goeth and cometh, then shall ye chop down the broad end of your staffe cross the hole behind her, & with your foot before her, so stop the way behind with your staffe, & before with your foot, & to take her up with your spittle: For if ye stop not first her way behind, she will suddenly run as fast backward as she will forward, and so will passe out at the end she came in, if it be open, she will bolt out thereat, and in at another, and so ye may chance to lose her.

Therefore some do think it better to do thus, that when ye shall see her in any such hollow trench, being troden down, then ye must make still her way forward: then look where ye see her, suffer her to come forward well in the trench before ye stop her way: then do no more but chop your Moule-spade cross behind your staffe with your foot, and then take and cast her up.

How to take the Moules in bush grounds, and also other grounds, as Forrests, Parks, and such like.

**T**he best taking of Moules in rough grounds, & most surest way is to make trenches, & to take them therein, as thus: Where ye do see any Moule hath newly cast ye shall there make a trench four inches broad, and so long as ye think good, and there open the earth on both sides, & cast it up so deep as she hath gone. When make it fine and chop it small, and put thereof in again, and tread it down softly with your foot in the trench, but not too hard upon it, for so may you cause her to forsake the said trench,

trench, when it is troden down too hard, & she will then take some other way. Thus you must use your trenches in making so many as ye shall think good, in what ground ye wil: ye may take your trenches what length ye list, from a foot, to four foot long. So done, then must ye take some pains (as aforesaid) in watching their hours when they come abroad, which (as I have said) is commonly in the morning by Sun-rising, or soon upon: and in March and April they wil be coming home by eight or nine of the clock, and sometimes about eleben of the clock, and they wil come abroad again at thre or four of the clock at afternoon. Thus ye must watch and mark in each ground, what time they do use to come and go.

And in dry and hot weather a Moule wil seldom come abroad but in the morning, & so remain till the next morning: But against moist weather, or after a rain, they wil come most abroad twice a day, before & after noon: and they wil work very much if the ground be not too moist, & in frosty weather, they cannot work abroad, but they work under the roots of trees, & also in thick hedges and bushes.

#### How to know their succors,

**I**n winter & wet times, they wil lie most in wet banks of edges, in hills, & under roots of trees, & wil come from thence every morning, to feed & go abroad (if it be day) ten or twelve score off from their holes: & when they have fed an hour or two, they wil return home again: Then must ye mark where they have been, & there make your trenches, or chop the earth down with your spittle or broad end of your Moule-staffe, which she hath raised before & passed through: there tread it down with your f. of in your trenches, so long as they be, or so far as she hath raised the earth & the longer you make your trenches, the longer she wil be in passing through when she comes into it. Ye may make & place your trenches where ye shall think best

best in the ground. If ye make your trench nigh their holes it shall be best to take them in going out, or coming home, for there you shall be most sure to have them. If a field be eight or ten acres, ye may make therein so many trenches as ye shall see good, along by the hedges side, or nigh the banks & roots of trees shall be best, for there shall ye soonest take them.

Also, where you make your trenches far asunder, while perhaps ye go to one, they will pass through another, and so for that time escape; if ye have no help but your self, ye shall so lose many. The best way therefore is, when ye have troden down your trenches with your foot softly, then ye shall prick small white twigs at the ends of your said trenches & prick them so small that they may fall by a little moving of the earth when the Moule is in the trench, and by those falling ye shall see (being a good way off) when she is in the trench. When you may come softly (on the lie side) and chop down your moule-spade cross behind her, & thrust down the earth with your foot then behind your spade, & then take your moule-spade & cast her up: for sometimes she will lie still, when she sees she cannot go away. If your trenches be short, you may prick a wand in the midst thereof, which will shew when she is half through, which wands are called watches, for they will tell you when she is in the trench. This way ye may take them most sure in trenches in all places where you shall think good. When tread down your trench again, and so ye may take others, one after another in one trench.

How to know in the Spring, the neasts where  
Moules do breed.

**Y**e shall understand (as some Farmers do say) Moules do breed but once a year, & that is in the Spring, about March and April they go to buck, and commonly about S. Marks day they do kindle, and will have young ones.

Therefore from mid-March, you shall view your ground,

which

Where ye may see any great & high hills, for commonly there they will breed, which hills ye shall see both old and new cast: & commonly they that are new cast, they make their nests in the midst thereof very low, much like the field mouse, & some will make them in the hedge sides, & in bushes: some in plain fields eight score from a bush or hedge, casting a great hill as big as two barrowfuls. And if ye then let them alone till the end of Aprill, soon after St. Mark's day, ye may then easily take all the young in the nest, & then after ye may watch the trench for their Dam, for she will come unto them to seek them.

Also ye may trench for y female about her nest a pretty way off, & so ye may easily take her in coming & going to her nest, before she doth kindle: for if ye spoile her nest before she hath kindled, she will then go far off, & breed in some other place which ye shall hardly find, or come to take her: & then when she hath young she will be very subtil, & will not suffer them to bolt, nor yet work shallow: therefore it will be the more hard to take them; & she will commonly have at a time, six or seven young ones.

Likewise all the winter they will cast against moist weather very much, both in November & December, being wet & warm withall: & because the daies are short, & the nights long, they will be stirring very early in the morning, sometimes before day light, & late toward night: therefore ye must watch their times accordingly, when they go out and come home again.

Moules to be driven from place to place.

**T**here be some which have said ye may drive Moules out of one ground to another, & then take them, which is: Ye shall open their holes where they have newly cast, & then ye shall have stamp'd garlick ready wrapt in clouts of linnen, & so put into their holes, made of the bigness of a walnut, & put so into the holes at both the open ends there.

of, & cover the holes again, & the strong savor thereof will cause the Moules to void from those places: and by such means (in using the holes as aforesaid) ye may drive them from one ground to another, & from place to place. Some do use Tar, some Laurel, some Calwozt, or Elder stamp, some Galbanum fumed in holes, or any such strong thing of savor, which will cause them to flee from them, or those places so fumed, & over where ye see her work, fill fume that place, & so ye shall soon drive them away.

How to take Moules in pots set in the earth.

**T**hey do teach also how to take Moules in pots of earth. Which pots ye shall set within the ground in their traces or holes where they have gone before so that your pots brink must be set that it be even with the nether part of the trench or trace of the Moule. Some do leave the pots brim uncovered the breadth of her trace in the trench, or two inches. Some do use to put alive Moule into those pots, or into each put one: For when they gender in the Spring, the Bucks will hunt after the Does, & the Does will seek them, & then they will run about on the ground one after y other. And the Moules which are in the pots & cannot get out will cry, & the rest will hear, & wind them, & so fall unto them in the pots, & there they will cry & fight together.

Again some do counsell in the gendering time to lead or draw a bitch Moule with a string about the ground where buck Moules will find her out by the trace, & so take in the said pots: but ye must not tread nigh her trace, for then they will not follow her: & by this means ye may take many in the Spring time with pots.

And to know which way a Moule hath gone, ye shall open her trench a foot or more, & then tread it light down with your foot, & in the midst of her trench ye shall set down a small stick to the bottom of the trench, & let your stick be three inches without the earth or more. If the

come in, the top of the stick wil fall backward, & if she go out the stick wil fall inward: Thus ye may know which way she is gone. Again, I have heard in a Garden where the earth is soft, that when the Moule doth cast, at the second putting up he wil thrust in his bare hand, & so take them up. Also, whereas ye shal see Moules to make their passage under the earth in woods & rough grounds, in crossing foot-paths, or between bushes, banks, and such like, where ye shal see any earth cast up, there commonly they haunt to go and come daily, wherein you shal do no more but tread the earth softly down with your foot, or chop it down softly again, and make your trench so long as ye may feel easily her passage. For the longer it is trod down, the longer they wil be in passing through: so there ye need make no other trenches to take them in but the e, for this order shal do as well as need to be, if ye watch their times.

Thus ye may destroy them in woods & rough grounds in a small time, with taking some pain. And when a Moule is in the trench & doth work, if it be hard trod down, she will go back, & come again once or twice, & perhaps forsake it. But let her come a good way in the trench then clap your staffe, or chop your heel behind her quickly, & then cast her up, for they wil lightly turn back if they wind you, or hear you stamp. Moreover, if you can bring up a cur to go with you when ye take them & nuzzle him therewith, he wil then take pleasure in killing them, & he wil find in any ground three Moules to your one. For he wil smel, & tell you where the Moule is, which thing I have seen going by the way side. There is also a trap to take Moules in coming or going at all times: which engine ye may see in my Book of Traps and Engines. Thus much for the taking of Moules in all grounds.



Forasmuch as the Dog is a very necessary Beast for the Husbandman, as well as others, some to profit him, others to disprofit him, as mad Dogs and others; I will therefore speak somewhat briefly thereof, and so make an end.



**A** Hounds and Dogs which fall mad, the cause is, that black choler hath the mastery in his body: which choler-vein once rosted in them through vehement heat it overcometh the body, and maketh him to run mad. For the black choler which is so strong, infecteth his brain, and so from thence goeth to all the other members, and maketh them venomous.

Wherefore if any dog be bit with a mad dog, it is the venomous spittle of the dogs heat that doth infect; and the venom of him that doth bite, is drawn to the like place wherewith he biteth, which is the brain & there it worketh, and maketh the dog run mad; and if he bite any other person it maketh him mad also, and such venom is perilous. For in some persons it is a year hid ere it be known, and lightly about the same day it was bitten, the same day twelve month it cometh to his head, and there with he goeth mad: and commonly hounds will bark at a mad dog, for they perceive and will rather flee him then come to him: and this madness amongst dogs chanceth and falleth most in harvest and canicular daies, and daies of heat.

His tongue is so venomous, that it maketh him to reel and stagger, & to run about gaping and dribeling, in holding

ding down his tail alwayes, & hanging out his tongue. If this dzibeling fall into any water, it infecteth the same & who so dzinketh thereof is in great danger of being mad.

And the signs after the biting of a mad dog in a man is; they shall have in their sleep fearful dreams & sights, & anger without cause, & they will seem to bark like a dog & fear to be seen of other, & they fear water most, & be very dantp in all things, which are doubtful signs to cure. For of him that is bitten, the venom goes from the bitten place to the heart, and from thence to the head, and so to all the members, as aforesaid: & the humour is moist & perillous; & it is also dangerous to touch those bodies infected; because of the vaporation of the vehemency of the venom; and they will corrupt all things near unto them.

Note also, that if venoms be taken by meats, or dzinks, these signs do follow: the cramp follows strongly, with swelling in the fingers & nailes, which is a deadly sign; or if he also gape & dribel, his lips do smart & tingle, or feel a heat in his tongue without any swelling, and being bered straightly about the heart, his eyes wax dim & dark: when these signs are, it is time to make haste, or death cometh soon after. The general remedy is, to vomit, or to take a glister to bring it down. When take treacle and wine that soltthistle is sod in: then must he be purged & bathed, & let blood at the last. And his diet shal be fat meats, with filbirds & small nuts, with dry figs, which are also good to draw consume, & wast venom. Balsamum with womans milk, helpeth against the burning and soze ache thereof. Treacle fortiffeth the body, and wasteth venom. If treacle cannot be gotten, then take garlick sod in broth with a fat hen, & dzink thereof, for garlick is contrary to venom, and doth assuage the inner burning thereof; and therefore it is called the husbandmans treacle.

Also, if one be bitten with a mad dog, take a cock or a hen and kill him and slit him straight, and all hot clasp it to the place and it will suck and draw out the venom. The drawers of venom are these; The flesh of the Snake or Adder

cut & lay to straight. Also Calamint, the seed of wilde  
tares called Dzabank. Sea-onions, water Cresses, Her-  
begrace, salt, Aristolochia, nuts eat with Rue, the roots  
of Asperage, & the seed also, Balsamum, vinegar, & the milk  
of an Asse, a Childes piss, the stones of a Hedge-hog, the  
stones of a Stag or an Asse dried & drunk: also Castoreum,  
garlick, gentian, mint, dittany. All these aforesaid are  
good against venom, & other without number: & because  
the danger of venom cometh many & sundry waies, there-  
fore God of his goodness hath provided sundry helps & re-  
medies. A good way to help the biting of any beast, sheep,  
or other, with a mad dog or other venomous beast, which  
is; We shal cut the wound, & make it bleed, that the venom  
with the blood may thereby come forth. Some do use to  
put to leech-wozms, to suck out the blood, & to cup or box  
it, & to gibe them treacle, & lay to the wounds plaisters as  
nuts mixt with garlick, rue, & salt altogether, & also nuts  
alone chewed & laid to the place, & also treacle with wa-  
ter, or crevice of the ribber made in powder, & drunk: or  
the ashes of the said crevice with gentian, is a singular re-  
medy against the biting of a mad dog. Likewise the ioyce  
of Caprisolum called woodbine: also the leaves of the wild  
fig-tree, onions & salt, or mint stamp likewise with salt,  
& laid to: every one of these aforesaid laid to, & mixt with  
vinegar or honey, are sufficient to help against the biting  
of a mad dog, or stinging of other venomous wozms: but  
a perfect remedy is, the oyl wherein a Scorpion hath  
been drowned, & therein also is sod, & a piece thereof laid  
to the place infected, doth help.

Other remedies against the biting of a mad dog. A sin-  
gular remedy, which is to burn the flowers of honyuckles  
or thre leaved grass, mix it with old grease, & lay it to:  
Or beat the said flowers with old white wine, & gibe it  
him. Also the roots of eglantine made into powder, & laid  
thereon: or to make him a drink with good old white wine.  
Another, the berries of elder, or the ioyce of the leaves to  
be giben with wine luke-warm. Also the ioyce of planten  
giben

hen to drinke oz stamp with salt & laid so. Or the root of the great Bur bruised with a little salt & laid to, doth destroy venom incontinent. Again, the strong nettle bruised with salt, & laid thereunto, ozcelandine drunk with wine, & stamp with salt, & laid to, oz the leaves of horehound stamp & laid to with salt: All these are special good against the biting of a mad dog: If a mad dog do bite either hounds oz hogs, ye shall geve them the iuyce of Plantain, & let them blood, & it will help them: but mix it with a little milk, and so geve it.

Remedies and medicines to help mangy dogs, as well in their ears, as also other parts of their bodies.

**I**n Summer commonly the ears of dogs are soze troubled with ulcers, scabs, & fleas, that many are marr'd thereby. The remedy is, against the scabbiness in the ear, anoint it with oil of bitter almonds, & it will heal it, oz to rub his ears with bitter almonds. Small beaten: but if his ears are soze within ye shall then mix therewith Tar, & Hogs-grease, & with the same anoint, & ye shall make the ticks, & lice to fall, if ye touch them therewith: ye must not scratch them with your hand for fear ye make an ulcer rise thereof.

If a dog have fleas, the remedy is: take of beaten cummin, with as much elebory, & mix them together with water, & wash him therewith: oz with the iuyce of wild Cucumbers: if ye have none thereof, then anoint all ower his body with the lees oz old dregs of oyl olive.

But if he be mangy & broken forth, ye must beat the leaves of mellilot & cecamine in like portion mingled with Tar, & so anoint: & this they say is good for men also that are scabbed: & if the scabs be yet more vehement ye may heal it with the iuyce of Cedar: Also rue with a cozn oz two of salt, & beat them together, then take butter oz oyl & put thereto, & stir them well together, then strain it all out, & anoint therewith: oz seeth the gran rocks of Cle-  
campane

campane in running water, and make it strong of the roots in lething long, and put some sope and salt thereunto, and wash your dog therewith warm thre or four daies together, and it will heal very well.

Also another: some take green grass, & beat it into fine powder, and mix it with the powder of brimstone finely beaten together, then mix all well with fresh grease, and then made hot therewith anoint. Also, another very perfect and good medicine is: ye shall take an oat-sheaf as it comes from the field with his asses thereon, & burn them to ashes, & with those ashes make lee and therewith wash your mangy dogs twice or thrice a day, and so let him bleed on the Camerell-betw behind, and it will help: often proved.

Also another very excellent medicine to kill any itch, either in man or dog, which is, ye shall take a portion of oyl of flower-de-luce, with a good quantity of brimstone beaten to a fine powder, and the like quantity of Elecampane roots dyed in an oven, and beaten into fine powder, with a quantity of bay salt, dyed & beaten to a fine powder: then mix all these aforesaid powders with the said oyl, and then warm it over the fire and anoint therewith. But if ye scratch or make the skin first to bleed or water, and then anoint, it will do the better: well and often proved.

Another for a mangy dog: Take quick silver, berdegrease, wool-oil, brimstone powder; then mix all well together, and therewith anoint the dog twice a day. Thus much for the biting of mad dogs in helping the same: and also helps for mangy dogs.

A Bitch goeth with whelp four score daies, & her whelps are seven daies blind, not of perfect sight till twelve daies: and a Grayhound bitch goeth six weeks with whelp; her whelps are blind twelve daies.



The applying of Husbandry to the  
severall Countries of this Kingdom,  
wherein is shewed the office and duty  
of the Carter and Plough-man.



It is to be understood, that husbandry doth  
vary according to the nature & climates  
of Countries: not one rule observed in all  
places, nor one place to be governed and  
directed by one rule; but according as the  
earth, the aire, the much or litle heat,  
moisture or cold doth increase or diminish, so must the  
skillful husbandman alter his seasons, labours, and instru-  
ments: for in stiffe clayes as are all the fruitful Vallies of  
the Kingdom, of which I must needs speak woꝝ bily and  
freely as also Huntingdon-shire, Bedford-shire, Cambridg-  
shire, and many other of the like nature; all manner of  
Arable woꝝks must be begun at early seasons, and be-  
times in the year, and the Ploughs and Instruments  
must be of large size and strong Timbers, and the labour  
great and painful: so also in mixt soyls that are good and  
fruitful, as Dorsethampton-shire, Warkeford-shire, most part  
of Kent, Essex, Warkshire, and Countries of like nature,  
all Arable soyls, would begin at latter seasons, and the  
ploughs and instruments would be of middle size and in-  
different timbers, and the labour somewhat les than the  
other: but the light sandy grounds which have also a cer-  
tain natural fruitfulness in them, as in Dorset. Suff-  
olk, most part of Lincoln-shire, Hamp-shire, Surrey &  
Countries of that nature, all Arable soyls, would begin  
at the latest seasons, and the ploughs and instruments  
would

would be of the smallest & lightest size & of the least Timbers, and the labour of all other is most easie.

Lastly, for the barren & unfruitful earths (of which only I here write in this Book) as in Devonshire, Cornwall, many parts of Wales, Derbyshire, Lancashire, Cheshire, Yorkshire, and many other like or worse than they, the Arable soyles would have certain set time or fit season of the year, but only according to the temperateness of the year: which if it happen early, then you must begin your labours early, but if it fall lower in the year, then you must begin your labours at latter seasons, & for your Plow or Instruments, they must not keep any certain proportion, but be framed ever according unto the ground; the strong and the stiffer ground, having ever the strong & large Plow, with Instruments of the like kind; and the lighter and more easie earth, the Plow and Instruments of more easie substance. As for the labour, it must be such and no other than that which hath been already declared in this Book.

The Carters  
Office.

And hence it comes that the office & duty of every skillfull Plowman and Carter, is, first to look to the nature of the earth next to the seasons of the year, then to the customs and fashions of the place wherein he liveth: which customs, although they be held as second natures amongst us, and that the best reasons of the best workmen commonly are, that thus I do, because thus they do; yet would I wish no man to bind himself more strictly to custom, then the discourse of reason should be his warrant, and as I would not have him too prejudicate in his own opinion, so I would not have him too great a slave to other mens traditions, but standing upon the ground of reason, made good by experience, I would ever have him profit in his own judgment. Now of these matters, I have written sufficient both in this Book, and in many former, and also for the election, ordering, tempering, and making of all sorts of Plows, or Plow irons, together with the Teams, draughts, and other advantages, of which

Whosoever is ignorant, let him look into the English Husbandman, and he may be satisfied: Now the further office and duty of y<sup>e</sup> Husbandman is, with great care & diligence to respect in what sort or fashion to plow his ground, for although it hath formerly been shewed how he shall lay his furrows, what depth he shall plough them, and how he shall be able to raise and gain the greatest store of mould; yet is there another consideration to be had, no less profitable to the Husbandman, then any of the former, and that is how to lay your Lands best for your own profit and ease, as also the ease of your Cattel, which shall ozain within your draught, as thus for instance: If your Arable Land shall lye against the side of any steep or Mountainous high hill (as for the most part all the barren earths do) if then you shall plow such land directly against the Hill, beginning below, and so ascending straight upward, and so down again, and up again, this very labour and topling against the hill, will breed such a bitter wearisomeness to the Cattel, and such a discouragement, that you shall not be able to compass one half part of your labour, besides the danger of over-heating and surfeiting of your beasts, whence will spring many mortall diseases. Wherefore when you shall plow any such ground, be sure ever to plow it side-wates overthwart the hill, where your beasts may ever tread on the lebell ground, and never directly up and down, so shall your Cattel be better able to endure the draught, and you with much ease and comfort be able to compass and finish your labours. Besides, the compass and manure which you shall lay upon the ground, shall not be so soon washed away from the top or upper part of the ground, because the furrows not lying straight down in an even and direct descent, but turned cross wates upward against the hill, it must necessarily hold the soyle within it, and not let it wash away as it were through liberall channels, as I have oft seen in divers places, where the Cozn hath been as rank as might be at the bottom, and not any growing at the top, only for want of wel ordering the

Lands and knowledge how to prepare, both for a mans own ease and his Castels.

Of Cattel for draught.

Again, it is the office & duty of every good ploughman to know what Cattel are meetest for his draught, as whether Oxen or Horses, or both Oxen & Horse: wherein is to be understood, that although of all draughts whatsoever within this Kingdom there is none so good to plough withall, both in respect of strength, stability, indurance, & fitness for labour as the Oxen are, in whom there is seldom or never any loss; because whensoever his service faileth in the draught, his flesh will be of good price in the shambles: yet notwithstanding in this case a man must necessarily bind himself much to the custom of the Country and fashion of his neighbours; for if ye shall live in a place where fuel is scarce, and far to be fetched, as commonly it is in all barren Countries, which for the most part are Stony Champains, or cold Mountains; and your neighbours as well for the speed of your journeyes as for the length, keep Horse draughts: in this case, ye must also do ye like, or else you shall want their companies in your journey, which is both discomfort & disprofit if any mischance or casualty shall happen, or being inforced to drive your Oxen as fast as they do their Horse you shall not only overheat, tire, bruise and spoile them, but also utterly unfit them either for feeding or labouring: and therefore if your estate be mean, & that ye have no more but what necessity requires, then ye shall sort your Plough or Team according to the fashion of your Countrey, & the use of your neighbours: but if God hath blest you with great plenty, then it shall not be amiss for you to have ever an Ox draught or two to till your Land, & a Horse-draught to do all your forraie & abroad businesses: so shall your work at home ever go constantly forward, & your outward necessary provisions never be wanting.

Now for the mixture of Oxen and Horse together, it falleth out often times, that the Plowman must of force be provided with cattel of both kinds, as if he happen to live

in a Mountainous & Rocky Countrey, where the steepness of the hills, and narrowness of the waies will suffer neither Cart, Wain, nor Tumbrell to passe, in this case you shall keep Oxen for the Plow to till the ground with, and Horses to carry pots or hooks: the first to carry forth your manure, and the other to bring home your Hay & Corn harvest, your felwel and other provisions which are needfull for your family, as they do both in Cornwall, and all other Mountainous Countries, where Carts, & Wains, and such like draughts have no possible passage,

Again, it is the office and duty of every good Plowman to know his severall labours, for every severall Month through the whole year, whereby no day nor hour may be mispent, but every time and season employed according as his nature requireth, as thus for example.

In the month of January, the painfull Plowman if he be in fertile and good soyles, as amongst rich, stiffe, simple clayes: he shall first break up, or plough up his Pease earth, because it must lie to take bait before it be sown: but if he live in fruitfull well mixt soyles, then in this month he shall begin to fallow the field he will lay to rest the year following, but if he live upon hard barren earths (of which chiefly I write) then in this month he shall water his meadows and pasture grounds, and he shall drain and make dry his arable grounds, especially where he intends to sow Pease, Oats, or Barley, the seed time following.

Also he shall stub & root up all such rough grounds as he intends to sow the year following: in this month you shall manure and trim up your garden moulds, you shall comfort with manure, sand, or lime, or all three mixed together, the roots of all barren fruit trees: & also you may cut down all such Timber as you would not have shrink or rine, but hold firm and close together, only there will be loss in the bark; for the time is something too early for it to rise.

Lastly, you may transplant all sort of fruit trees, the

weather being open and the ground easy: you may rear Calves, remove Bees, and for your own health, keep your body warm, let good diet and wholesome be your Physitian, and rather with exercise then sauce increase your appetite.

February.

In the month of February, either set or sow all sorts of Beans, Pease, and Pulse: and if stiffer your ground is, the sooner begin your work, prepare your Garden mould, and make it easy & tender, prune & trim all sorts of Fruit-trees from moss, cankers, and all superfluous branches, plash your hedges, and lay your quicksets close and entire together; plant Roses, Goose-berries, and any fruit that grows upon small bushes; graft at the latter end of this Month upon young & tender stocks, but by all means overlade not the stock: Inaugurate in this Month or any other, as soon as the bark will rise; & also set any Slips, Branches, or young Sprouts.

Lastly, for your health, take heed of cold, forbear meats that are flegmatick; & if need require, Purge, Bathe, or Bleed, as Art shall direct you.

March.

In the month of March, make an end of sowing of all sorts of small Pulse, & begin to sow Oats, Barley, & Rye, which is called March-Rye, graft all sorts of Fruit-trees, & with young Plants & Sprouts replenish your Nursery, cover the roots of all trees that are bared, & with fat earth lay them close & warm; if any tree grow barren, bore holes in his roots, & drive hard wedges or pins of Oak-wood therein, & that will bring fruitfulness; transplant all sorts of Summer Flowers, & give new comfort of manure & earth to all early Dutch flowers, especially to the Crown Imperiall, Tulippes, Hyacinth, & Narcissus of all Shapes & colours; cut down under-wood or felwell, or fencing, & look well to your Cows, for then is the principal time of Caring. And lastly, bathe often; bleed not but upon extremity; purge not without good Counsell, & let your diet be cool & temperate.

April.

In the month of April, finish up all your Barley seed  
and

and begin to sow your Hemp & Flax, Sow your garden seeds, & plant all sorts of herbs, finish grafting in the stock, but begin your principal inauguration, for then the rinde is most pliant & gentle: open your hives & give the Bees free liberty & leaue to succour them with food, & let them labour for their living: Now cut down all great Oak-timber, for now the bark will rise & be in season for the Tanner. Now scoure your ditches, & gather such manure as you do make in the streets and high waies into great heaps together, lay your meadows, sleight your Cozngrounds, gather away stones, repaire your high-waies, set Dyvers & Willows, & cast up the banks and mounds of all decayed fences.

Lastly, for your health, either purge, bathe, or bleed, if you shall have occasion, and use all wholesome recreation; for than moderate exercise, in this month, there is no better Physick.

In the month of May, sow Barley upon all light sands and burning grounds, so likewise do your Hemp & Flax, & also all sorts of tender garden seeds, as are Cucumbers and Mellons, and all kind of sweet smelling herbs and flowers. Fallow your stiffe clay. Summer stir your mixt earths, and soyl all light and loose hot sands. In this month begin to prepare all barren earths, for Wheat & Rie, Bournbait, stub Gozse, or Furs, and root out Worm and fearn; begin to fold your Sheep, lead forth manure, and bring home felwell and fencing, weed your winter Cozn, fallow your common works, and put all sorts of Cattel to grass, either in Pasture or Weather, put your Mares to the Horse, let nothing be wanting to furnish the Dairy: and now put off all your winter-fed fat Cattel, for now they are scarcest and dearest; put young Steers and dry kine now to feed at fresh grass, and away with all Weale-fed sheep, for the sweetness of grass mutton will pull down their prices.

Lastly, for your health, use drinke that will cool and purge the blood, and other such Physicall precepts as  
true.

May

true Art shall prescribe you but beware of Mountebanks and old-wives-tales; the latter hath no ground, and the other no truth, but apparant colenage.

June.

In the month of June, carry Sand, Marle, Lime, and Manure of what kind soever to your Land, bring home your coals, and other necessary felwel fetcht far off; shear early fat sheep, sow all sorts of tender herbs cut rancie meadows, make the first return of your fat cattel, gather early Summer-fruits, till all sorts of plants and herbes w<sup>th</sup> as soever.

And lastly for your health, use much exercise, thin diet, and chaste thoughts.

July.

In the month of July apply your hay-barbest; for a day flack is many pounds lost, chiefly when the weather is unconstant; shear all manner of fild-sheep, in summer; till rich stiffe ground, soyl all mixt earths, and latter soyl all loose hot landes; let herbes you would preserve now run to seed, cut off the stalks of outlandish flowers, and cover the roots with new earth, so well mixt with Manure as may be; sell all such Lambs as you feed for the Butchers, and till lead forth sand, marle, lime, and other Manure; fence up your Coples, gaze your elder under-woods, and bring home all your field-timber.

And lastly, for your health, abstain from all Physick, bleed not but upon violent occasion, and neither meddle with Wine, Women, or wantonness.

August.

In the month of August apply your Cozn-Barbest, shear down your Wheat and Rie, mow your Barley and Oats, and make the second return of your fat sheep and cattel, gather all your summer greater fruit, as Plums, Apples, and Pears; make your summer or sweet Perry and Cider, set slips and sciens of all sorts of Gilly-flowers, and other flowers, and transplant them that were set the spring before, and at the end of this month begin to winter-ridge all fruttful soyls whatsoever, geld your Lambs carry Manure from your Dove-coats, and put your swine to the early or first mast.

And

And lastly, for your health, shun feasts & banquets, let Physick alone, hate wine, & only take delight in drinks that are cool & temperate.

In the month of September reap your Pease, Beans, September, and all other Pulse, making a small end of your Harbest; now bestow on your Wheat land your principall manure, & now sow your Wheat & Rye, both in rich & barren climates: now put your Swine to mast of all hands, gather your Winter fruit, and make sale of your Wool, & other Summer commodities; now put off those flocks of Bees you mean to sell or take for your own use; close thatch, and dawb warm all the surbiving hives, & look that no Moans, Mice, nor other vermine be in or about them, now thatch your stacks & reeks, thrash your seed Rye and Wheat, & make an end with your Cart of all forrain journeyes.

Lastly, for your health, in this month use Physick, but moderately; forbear fruits that are too pleasant or rotten, & as death, shun riot & surfeit.

In the month of October, finish up your Wheat seed, October, scowre Ditches & Ponds, plash & lay Hedges & Quickset, transplant, remove, or set all manner of Fruit-trees of what nature or quality soever, make your Winter Cider and Perry, spare your private pastures, & eat up the Corn-fields & Commons, & now make an end of winter-riding, draw furrows to drain and keep drie your new sown Corn, follow hard the making of your malt, rear all such Calves as shall fall, and wean those Foals from your draught-mares, which in Spring before were foaled; now sell all such Sheep as you will not winter, give over folding, and separate Lambs from the Ewes which you purpose to keep for your own flock.

Lastly, for your health refuse not any needfull Physick at the hands of the learned Physitian, use all moderate sports: for, any thing now is very good which rebibeth the spirits.

November.

In the month of November, you may sow either Wheat or Rye in exceeding hot soyls; you may then remove all sorts of fruit-trees, & plant great trees, either for shelter or shadow; now cut down all sorts of Timber, for Ploughs, Carts, & yeltrées, Paves, Harrows, & other Husbandly offices; make now y<sup>e</sup> last return of your grasse, feed Cattel, bring your Swine from y<sup>e</sup> Pasture & feed them for slaughter, rear what Calves soever fall, & break up all such Hemp & Flax as you intend to spin in the Winter season.

Lastly for your health, eat wholesome & strong meats well spiced & dressed free from raveness; drink sweet wines; & for digestion, ever before chace prefer good & moderate exercise.

December.

In the month of December, put your Sheep & Swine to the pease racks, & fat them for the slaughter & market; now kill your small Porks, & large Bacon; lop Hedges & Trees, saw out your Timber for building, & lay it to season. & if your land be exceeding stiff, & rise up in an extraordinary furrow, then in this month begin to plough up that ground whereon you mean to sow clean Beans only: now cover your dainty fruit-trees all over with canvas, & hide all your best flowers from frosts & hoarings with rott'n old Horse litter, now drain all your Corn-fields, & as occasion shall serve, to water & keep moist your Meadows; Now become the Fowler with Piece, Nets, & all manner of engines, for in this month no Fowle is out of season: Now fish for the Carpe, the Bream, Pike, Tench, Barbell, Peal and Salmon.

And lastly for your health, eat meats that are hot & nourishing; drink good wine that is neat, sprightly, and lusty, keep the body well clad, & the house warm; forsake what soever is slegmatick, and banish all care from thy heart; for nothing is now more unwholsome then a troubled spirit.

all sorts of grounds.

307

Many other observations belong unto the office of our  
skilful Plough-man or Farmer: but since they may be  
imagined too curious, too needless, or too tedious, I wil  
stay my Pen with these already rehearsed, and think to  
have written sufficient touching the application of  
grounds, and office of the Plow-man.

Q m 2

The



The Table following, to find out any  
thing in this Book, as touching Hogs and  
Moules: and to find out alwayes remedies  
against the biting of mad Dogs, and help  
for mangy Dogs.

<b>A</b>		<b>G</b>	
Ch in hogs heads to help		All flowing to help	
Acorns to feed hogs	274	Garget in hogs to help	267
Aristotles sayings	258	Gelding of pigs	
<b>B</b>		Gelding of hogs	
Biting of a mad Dog to help		Government of hogs	
Bitings of hogs		<b>H</b>	
Biting, another	276	Herbs ill for hogs	
Boars one sufficient for ten Sows		Herbs good for hogs	267
Blood-letting in hogs		Herbs to cool them in Summer	271
Brimming of Sows		Whole-footed hogs	
<b>C</b>		Hogs being sick to know	269
Catharre to help	266	Hogs sick to help	262
Chasing of hogs		Hog-herd to be watchful	257
Covering of Sows	259	Henbane	273
<b>D</b>		Hogs grease to harden	
Dogs are necessary, and also		Hogs to flower	
hurtful		<b>I</b>	
Dizziness in hogs		Impostumation under the	
Of mad Dogs		throat to help	261
Dogs mangy to help		<b>L</b>	
<b>E</b>		Asks in hogs to stop	265
Elm-leaves are good for hogs	278	Leanness by sickness in hogs	
<b>F</b>		to help	260
Fattening with what meat	269	Lethargy in hogs to help	260
Fever in hogs to help	259	Lice to kill in hogs	274
Feeding a hog fat	264	<b>M</b>	
Feeding a Boar best		Maggots to kill	
Feeding a hog for lard		Mangy in Dogs to help	
Figure how best to ring a hog		Marking your pig,	287
Flowing of the Gall		Measles in hogs to help	
		Measles	

## The Table:

Measel, to save them from it	265	Ringling of Hogs	269
Measel to help, another	269	Ringling double	272
Measel to preserve hogs	275	Roots good for Hogs	260
Measel to help, another way	264		
Measel to help, another	273	<b>S</b>	
Measel things evil for it	273	Sick hogs to help	266
Measel, and causes thereof	265	Signs after the biting of a	
Milt pained to help	263	mad dog.	
Mustard ill for hogs	266	Sows good Breeders	260
Milt pained to help	269	Sows going with pigs	259
Mice in hog-sties to kill	166	Sows unnatural	260
Moles to take	238	Spayed Sow	256
		Sows great with pig, how to keep	
<b>P</b>			259
Pestilent fever to help	268	Staggers in hogs to help	282
Pigs weaning		Styes for your Hogs	
Pigs how to mark		Stying your Hogs	258
Proverb of the hogs goodness	270		
Pigs, winter-pigs	274	<b>T</b>	
Pox in hogs to help		Tongues of mad dogs are ve-	
		nomous,	
<b>R</b>		<b>V</b>	
Rammish pigs		Venom taken by meat	
Remedy against the biting		Venom to stay in hogs	262
of mad dogs	281	Vomit to provoke in hogs	ibid.

---

The applying of Husbandry to the severall Countries of this Kingdom, wherein is shewed the office and duty of the Carter and Plowman, Fol. 297.

---

F I N I S.

---



